Comprehensive Latin Course
For Schools and Colleges
The Subjunctive Mood
Fourth Declension
The Fifth Declension
Some Irregular Verbs

PART TWO
Application of Latin to English
Latin idioms, phrases & Proverbs; Biblical quotes

PART THREE Ancient Greece and Rome
Great ancient stories ever told
The story of Hercules
The story of Theseus and the Minotaur
The story of Tantalus
The story of Midas and the Golden Touch
The story of Phaethon
The disaster of the Caudine Forks
The story of Niobe
Perseus and Gorgon Medusa
Ceres and Proserpina
The Argonauts and the Golden Fleece:
Phrixus and Helle
The Poet Phaedrus & His Fables
The Three Small Pigs
The wolf and the lamb
Famous Greek and Roman Poets
Ovid & Virgil
The Aeneid
Homer: “The Iliad”, “The Odyssey”
The Trojan War
History of Rome

PART FOUR: ORAL LATIN EXERCISES
Introduction
The Rosary
Readings from Latin Bible
Ordo Missae
Ancient Britain and Gallic Wars

PART FIVE: Genera Revision, Latin Certificate Examination
PART SIX: Latin-English;
English – Latin Vocabulary
GUIDE TO ILLUSTRATIONS

(1) The Forum & Colosseum: The Colosseum in Rome, also known as the Flavian Amphitheater was used for staged battles between lions and Christians as well as gladiatorial combats, among other spectacles. Before the Colosseum was built, gladiatorial contests sometimes took place in the Forum. “Retiarius” versus “Secutor” Combat used to be one of the gladiatorial contests in the Colosseum. The “Retiarius” (“Catcher” – gladiator who fought with a net and trident) , is matched with the “Secutor” (“Chaser”, armed with a sword and a shield usually fought to death for the entertainment of the spectators. (152 – 153)

(2) Jupiter: The greatest of the gods, worshipped as the lord of heaven and regarded as the special protector of Rome. Jupiter was the ruler of the Roman pantheon. Jupiter exhibited the characteristics of his Greek equivalent, Zeus. Jupiter whose name means “Shining Father” in Latin fathered many of the other Roman gods, goddesses and heroes, including Apollo, Minerva and Hercules. (147)

(3) Pluto: The god of the Lower World and of the shades of the dead was hard and inexorable. Black sheep were sacred to him. In his right hand he holds the key of the infernal regions; at his feet is the dog Cerberus. (148)

(4) Juno: The queen of the gods and the wife of Jupiter; goddess of marriage. Women prayed to her in times of trouble and anxiety. (148)

(5) Minerva: goddess of wisdom, patroness of arts and trades, especially of agriculture. (149)

(6) Mercury: the messenger of the gods and also the god of commerce. (149)

(7) Diana and Apollo: They were brother and sister and the children of Latona. Diana was the goddess of hunting; and also identified with the moon. Apollo was the patron of musicians and also identified with the sun. (145)

(8) Mars: god of war and next to Jupiter was the most honored of the Roman gods. (147)

(9) Venus: the goddess of love, beauty and happiness. (147)
Neptune: He was the god of the sea. His symbol of power, the trident, is generally seen in the god’s hand. (149)

“The Judgment of Paris” - There were many versions of the legendary accounts of the Trojan War. One has to do with ‘beauty competition’: Who was the most beautiful of the gods? Another: The award of the “Golden Apple” to Aphrodite (Venus) by Paris is one of the versions said to have brought about the Trojan War. (201)

Tantalus in the Lower World: Punished by the gods for being treacherous (unfaithful, untrustworthy, disloyal.) What a terrible punishment! For Tantalus had always big thirst, but could never drink because water always receded from the treacherous young man. And again Tantalus always had great hunger, was never able to eat because food always receded from the treacherous youth. (163)

Ceres: goddess of crops and of all growth, and mother of Proserpina.

Proserpina: Daughter of Ceres kidnapped by Pluto and taken to the Lower World. In the picture we see Pluto taking Proserpina to the Lower World.

Virgil: Virgil - the Roman poet and author of the masterpiece the Aeneid, the most influential work of literature produced in ancient Rome. Virgil was thoroughly educated in Greek and Roman literature, rhetoric, and philosophy. In the Aeneid, a mythological epic in 12 books Virgil described the seven-year wanderings of the hero Aeneas from the fall of Troy (see Trojan War) to his military victory in Italy. (198)

The Trojan Horse: The wooden horse outside the walls of Troy (see the "The Trojan War"). Troy was made famous by the Greek poet Homer, who wrote the Iliad and the Odyssey and by Virgil, the Roman poet, who wrote the Aeneid. (Front Cover)

Phrixus and Helle: The Flight of Phrixus and Helle. (See the ‘Golden Fleece’.) (187)

Tres Parvi Porci – The Three Small Pigs: Lupus flabat, et flabat sed frustra. (194)

When the three decided to build houses for themselves, the first used straw, the second used twigs (bush wood). The third pig however built his house with big strong bricks. When their
enemy, the wolf attacked, the three small pigs took refuge in the house strongly built with bricks!

(20) Romulus and Remus led and fed by the wolf.

(21) Andromeda rescued by Perseus: According to the Greek mythology Perseus rescued the princess Andromeda just before she was to be sacrificed to the sea monster. (181)

(22) Niobe's children: Punished for her pride, Niobe suffered the loss of her children at the hands of the gods. The engraving (picture, drawing) shows a distressed Niobe before she turned into stone forever dampened with her own tears.

Julius Caesar: Roman general, statesman, historian, and brilliant military strategist, Caesar conquered all of the ancient western European territories of Gaul by 51 BC.

(23) Medusa: Greek mythology tells of three Gorgons or monstrous dragon-like sisters with snakes for hair, who were shunned because they turned all who looked at them to stone. The young hero, Perseus killed and severed the head of Medusa, the only mortal of the three the monsters. (180)

(24) Ancient city of Rome, showing many domes and Churches. For over 2000 years Rome has been an urban center and the city's architecture reflects the many historical changes. (219)

(25) The Roman Forum: A dilapidated Roman Forum as it appears today.

(26) A Roman Soldier: The Romans fought many wars to become powerful in ancient times. Miles, militis, c, a soldier, is a very familiar word in the Latin vocabulary. (241)

(27) A Roman School: “Magister et Discipuli” – “The Schoolmaster and pupils” is a regular expression encountered in Latin studies

(28) Villa, -ae, f, a country house, a residence: The Villa of a wealthy Roman. (151)

(29) The slave market: (Servus, -i, slave, captive). In ancient and modern times slaves and slave markets existed. For many reasons slaves were sold and bought. Sources of supply were wars, raids and piracy. The Romans had many slaves that undertook a lot of public and domestic work. It is said that Aemilius Paulus, a famous Roman general of the second century B.C., after one of his victories, sold 150,000 captives, while Julius Caesar himself records that on one occasion he sold 53,000 slaves or captives.
Comparison of Adjectives: Canis est *magnus* - The dog is big. Equus est *maior* - The horse is bigger. Elephantus est *maximus* - The Elephant is the biggest. Feles est *parvus* – The cat is small. Mus est *minor*. Culex est *minimus* – The mosquito is the smallest.

Marcus Camillus & The School Master of Falerii:
"Falerii, -orum, m, pl, Falerii, a city of Etruria (Tuscany); Falisci, -orum, m, pl, Falsci – people of Faleri. Marcus Furius amillus, a famous general of the 4th century B.C. "The School Master of Falerii" is the story of a treacherous schoolmaster who tried to betray the town by handing over to the Romans the pupils under his charge. The story was told by the historian Livy and the event took place in 394 B.C., while the Roman general Camillus was besieging Falerii, an Etruscan town. (192)

The Roman Army – The Roman Soldier: The Roman army right from ancient times had been respected for its courage, endurance and discipline. The Roman army played a very important role in the establishment and maintenance of the greatest empire known in ancient times. The main unit of the army was the *Legion*, at full strength numbering 6000 soldiers. Each legion was commanded by a *legatus*, the equivalent perhaps of a brigadier in the army of today, and six officers known as *tribunes* of the soldiers (*tribuni militum*). The mainstay of the legion, however, was the *centurions* (the sergeants and sergeant-majors of more modern days). They controlled the ordinary soldiers and enforced discipline. The legion was divided into ten *cohorts*, each of which was further sub-divided into three *maniples*. A maniple consisted of two *centuries*, and so in a legion there were sixty centuries and sixty centurions. Attached to each legion was a *squadron* of three hundred *cavalry* who fought on the flanks, charging in close order.

Roman Magistrates: From 753 to 510 B.C. the Romans were governed by kings, of whom there were seven. The last of these Tarquinius Superbus, was expelled from Rome because of his harsh and arrogant behaviour. After his expulsion, the Romans set about establishing a new form of government based on the annul e
INTRODUCTION

A DEAD LANGUAGE!

Latin was once the language of the ancient world. Most of the modern European languages, including English, Italian, Spanish, French, German and Portuguese no doubt owe a lot to the ancient Romans, precisely to LATIUM, once a small district south of the River Tiber, in which Rome was situated and to which Latin was originally confined. As the Romans conquered and occupied many territories, they continued to spread their language. Latin thus became the language used not only throughout Italy, but also in France and Spain and other countries near the Mediterranean.

Today most of the known modern languages have undergone some changes, but there is no doubt that they show direct descent from Latin. They are referred to as “Romance Languages” because they are derived from the language of the Romans.

Unfortunately, this hitherto famous language of the Romans, the official language of the Roman Church, has for sometime now been dubbed ‘a dead language’ worldwide. Its study in schools was abandoned in foreign countries where Latin was once cherished as an important language in many professions including Religion, Law, Engineering and Education.
In Nigeria the study of Latin was quickly abandoned in most prestigious High Schools and was replaced with French as far back as the early sixties. Proliferation of French, Italian, German and Spanish language schools started in Nigeria in the late sixties. Nigerians who want to study in Germany today know about “Goethe Institute”, German Language School for foreign students. Such schools are located in many major Nigerian cities including Abuja and Lagos. Most of us would agree with Mason D. Gray and Thornton Jenkins (Latin for Today, Book 2) in their observation about the declining importance and use of Latin in the modern times. The majority of students who today study Latin do not proceed with the subject beyond the School Certificate stage. They will have no direct need for it in their after school life. Unless their limited experience of Latin can give these students something of lasting value, its study would have contributed nothing to their education. Many of them will later swell the ranks of those who contend that, except for the selected few Latin should be eliminated from the curriculum. This is nothing far from the truth!

A Renaissance!

Today, however, there seems to be a revived interest in the study of the ancient Roman language called Latin. At least priests of the Roman Catholic Church must have some smattering knowledge of Latin as most official documents of the Catholic Church still appear in Latin! Latin may not after all be a ‘dead language’. Most Nigerian professionals and students who struggle with English Grammar today believe that lack of knowledge of Latin has contributed to low and poor standard of written and spoken English among our students; just as they attribute the fallen moral standard in the world today to ignorance of Religion and moral instructions in public schools. Nigerians and most Africans cherish high-sounding English words and phrases, most of which are derived from Latin!

Today most people all over the world, as well as Nigerians who cherish high quality education send their kids to the most prestigious High Schools. They want their children to become ‘genuine’ engineers, great teachers, medical doctors and lawyers. The knowledge of Latin is no doubt important. The call for the revival of Latin and French in Nigerian seminaries has been on for quite a long time. Priests cannot be ignorant of Latin; hence this attempt to produce a standard Latin textbook suitable for students in Nigerian Secondary Schools, Colleges and Seminaries.
Whatever the case maybe “Latin remains the main official language of the Holy See. Up until the 1960s (and still later in Roman colleges like the Gregorian) Roman Catholic priests studied theology using Latin textbooks, and the language of instruction in many seminaries was also Latin. Although the use of Latin in pedagogy and in theological research has since declined, nevertheless, Church law requirements that seminar formation provide for a thorough training in Latin still remain. Latin was still spoken in recent international gatherings of Roman Catholic leaders, such as the Second Vatican Council, and is still used at conclaves to elect a new Pope. The Tenth Ordinary General Assembly of the Synod of Bishops in 2004 was the most recent to have a Latin language group for discussions.” (Catholic Encyclopedia)

Not dead really!

The Holy See has no obligation to use Latin as its official language and, in theory, could change its practice. However, such a change appears unlikely in the foreseeable future. As a language no longer in common use (a dead language?) though some would dispute whether it should be called "dead"), Latin has the advantage that the meaning of its words is less likely to change radically from century to century. This helps to ensure theological precision and to safeguard orthodoxy. Since Latin is spoken as a native language by no modern community, the language is thought to be a universal, internally consistent means of communication without regional bias. Accordingly, recent Popes have reaffirmed the importance of Latin for the Church and in particular for those undertaking ecclesiastical studies. Especially since the Second Vatican Council of 1962–1965, the Church no longer uses Latin as the exclusive language of the Roman and Ambrosian liturgies of the Latin Rite of the Catholic Church. The Church still produces its official liturgical texts in Latin, which provide a single clear point of reference for translations into all other languages. The same holds for the official texts of canon law. (ibd).

METHOD OF STUDY

Perhaps language experts, writers and teachers knew that the importance of Latin as a spoken and written language would sometime decline; hence few new methods of approach to learning and teaching the difficult language, like in other modern languages have evolved. Surely modern technology has had great impact on the improved methods of learning
new languages within a short period of time. Such ‘ads’ like “Master German, French, Italian, Spanish and even Chinese or Japanese in one week or month” are not rare in the language markets and shops. There are so many language tapes, CDs and accessories everywhere. As the world becomes a global village the taste for quicker methods of mastering new languages has continued to grow. Unfortunately very few new approaches or methods of learning Latin have evolved since Latin was declared “a dead language” for quite a long time now.

There is however need to introduce some new methods of studying Latin in Nigerian high Schools and colleges. To give something of value to our students and at the same time challenge a few potential scholars and future teachers of Latin in Nigeria each stage in the learning process must have its definite objective with content that is worthwhile in itself. Our textbook - Latin Comprehensive Course - therefore aims at relating the study of Latin closely to English; each subject can gain from the other.

We will however not abandon the old ‘traditional method’ of learning by heart the Conjugation of “Amo” or the Declension of “Mensa”. But slow and steady we are sure to arrive at a comprehensive Latin textbook which can at least help our Nigerian Seminarians studying for the priesthood to pass their “Latin Diploma Exam”, and as well be able to read out Latin texts at Mass.

“The written Latin of today, as used for Church purposes, does not differ radically from classical Latin. Study of the language of Cicero and Virgil suffices adequately for understanding Church Latin. However, those interested only in ecclesiastical texts may prefer to limit the time they devote to ancient authors, whose vocabulary covers matters that, though of importance in that period, appear less frequently in Church documents.” (Catholic Encyclopedia). But there is more to this. As Mason D. Gray recommended too there is need to pay particular attention to method of teaching the subject to ensure that suitable future Latin teachers emerge at the end of the full course. Most important is that the few teachers of Latin we have today in our seminaries must endeavor to ‘produce’ younger generation of students who can replace them and teach Latin in our schools otherwise the language will die a natural death.

Acknowledgements

I wish also to express my gratitude to the following authors, whose books I consulted during the course of this work: H.E. Gould & J. L. Whitely: A New Latin Course, London: McMillan & Co. Ltd, 1965. William W.


I thank Doris Nwakaego Eke, Ifeoma Igbokwe, and Perpetua Chinwe Nnoruka for helping out in the typesetting and proofreading of the entire book. The contributions of Rev. Frs. Zeph Uzoma, Val Ihim, Christopher Ihenetu and Merce Okonkwo - Latin teachers and formators at St. Mary’s Seminary, Umuowa, Orlu, Sir Anthony Onyeneke, veteran Latin teacher at St Peter Claver Seminary Okpala, Owerri, Chief/Sir Anthony Chiahulamiro, also a veteran Latin teacher at Immaculate Conception Seminary, Ahiaeke, Umuahia to the successful publication of our Latin textbook can never be underestimated. Perhaps only a few people like these may be in the position to assess or appreciate the amount of sweat that went into the production of this book. In a special way I wish to thank immensely the Rectors of Minor Seminaries, together with the Coordinators of Latin Association of Owerri Ecclesiastical Province of Nigeria for their invaluable encouragement and support. The Rectors Conference actually mandated this study and the publication of Comprehensive Latin Course for Schools and Colleges.

All the graphics and illustrations in the book were produced by St. Mary’s Seminary Umuowa artists – Odume Kizito, Mbagwu Emmanuel and a young university student artist, Chukwu Obioma C. Hy-Kenny Productions – 08065165570

How the Book is divided
Comprehensive Latin Course for Schools and Colleges is divided into Six Parts:

**Part 1** is grammar. We have tried to accommodate most of the basic grammatical details our students would need and be able to attempt questions in Latin Tests and Exams in WAEC, NECO and GCE, including the Latin Diploma Exams, after completing a 5-6-year course in Latin.

**Part 2:** Application of Latin to English language. Student’s good knowledge of Latin, no doubt affects positively his English – oral and written. Many English words we use today come from Latin. We have also included in this part many Latin ‘quotes’ - phrases, expressions, proverbs and idioms, most of which help to embellish our “everyday oral and written English”

**Part 3:** we examined ‘Ancient Greece and Rome’ as far as their stories help to highlight the importance and relevance of Latin in the ancient and modern times. Serious students of Latin must be conversant with ancient history of Greece and Rome, together with stories, myths and realities that shaped human actions and events in those ancient times.

**Part 4:** In this part our interest in the language is pushed further to the Oral Latin. Students should be able to read out Latin sentences and passages without stumbling. “Practice”, they say, “makes perfect”. Most of the passages included in this part come from familiar “Caesar Gallic War” themes and Church (Ecclesiastical) Latin Readings from the Bible, code of canon law, including familiar Church Prayers.

**Part 5:** General Revision & Samples of standard High School Latin questions.

**Part 6:** General Vocabulary. This may not be ‘comprehensive’ or ‘advanced’. Students should purchase Latin School Dictionary to complement the Latin to English and English to Latin vocabularies provided here.
PART ONE

RECAPITULATION – ENGLISH TO LATIN GRAMMAR

To help our students and Latin teachers we are using a lot of English Grammar illustrations. This might make it easier for them to understand and appreciate. Lack of knowledge of English language syntax, principal parts, tenses, mood, voice etc will make the study of Latin difficult. Hence a thorough ‘revision’ of some English grammar is imperative. It may not be possible to talk about Tenses, together with the Indicative, Imperative or Subjunctive mood in Latin without knowing what these are all about in English. Students should know what person or number stand for. What are regular and irregular verbs? Therefore it is necessary for Latin teachers to begin each chapter or section of this book with the ‘revision’ (recap) of English grammar relevant to the Latin studies as we have arranged them. Where students are already aware of this predicament and have these necessary ‘tools’ as they begin the study of Latin these ‘recaps’ can be skipped.

THE VERB

The Verb: A verb expresses action or being. The verb gives meaning to a sentence.

The infinitive – any verb that has the word ‘to’ before it; e.g. to come, to go, to eat, to write, to make. “I want to drink water. He wished to join our group.

Finite verb – any verb in any tense that can be fully conjugated, that has no ‘to’ before it; eat, went, wrote, will come, has eaten.

Regular and irregular verbs – Regular verbs form their simple past by adding the suffix “ed.” or “d,” or “t.” Work – worked; learn – learnt. Irregular verbs form their simple past by other means, e.g. come – came; eat – ate; write – wrote.

Transitive verbs and intransitive verbs

**Intransitive verbs:** Intransitive verbs do not take direct objects. They are mostly verbs of movement. He walks slowly. They are moving cautiously. The baby sleeps well. The little boy cries always. My uncle reads slowly.

**Exercises**
Classify the verbs in the following sentences into transitive and intransitive.

1. Chukwudi ate the mangoes.
2. The children are playing in the field
3. My mother is cooking rice and beans.
4. My aunt visited us yesterday.
5. The boys are running into the field.
6. Our teacher gave us many assignments.
7. The car fell into a ditch.
8. We drove to the stadium.
9. I wrote two letters to my uncle
10. My brother left for Germany last week.

**Active and Passive voice**

**Active voice:** A verb is in the active voice when the subject performs the action. Dr. John Chikwendu wrote the country’s National Anthem. The prefect read the opening address.

**Passive voice:** A verb is in the passive voice when the subject receives the action. Our flag is admired by many people.

**Examples**

[**Active voice**] The hunter killed a lion.
[**Passive voice**] The lion was killed by the hunter.
[**Active voice**] The principal expelled the naughty student.
[**Passive voice**] The disobedient student was expelled by the principal.
[**Active voice**] The boy stole the money
[**Passive voice**] The money was stolen by the boy.[
[**Active voice**] The artist drew the pictures.
[**Passive voice**] The pictures were drawn by the artist.

**The tenses of the active and passive voice**

1. **Simple Present tense:** The mother teaches her children at home.
   The children are taught at home by their mother.
2. **Future tense:** The boys will visit the old lady tomorrow. The old lady will be visited by the boys tomorrow.

3. **Present continuous:** The teacher is flogging the students. The students are being flogged by the teacher.

4. **Simple past:** France defeated Italy in the 1996 World Cup. Italy was defeated by France in the 1996 World Cup.

5. **Past continuous:** The boys were writing the essay when the principal entered the classroom. The essay was being written by the boys when the principal entered the classroom.

6. **Perfect tense:** The prefect has locked all the windows. All the windows have been locked by the prefect.

**Auxiliary verbs:** They are verbs that help other verbs to express their full meaning, e.g. used to, need, ought, must, can, may, would, should etc.

1. We **used to** learn computer science once a week.
2. The boys **must** study hard in order to pass their exams.
3. We **need to** obey our parents and teachers.
4. I **cannot** finish the food alone. The boy will not **be able** to finish the work alone.

**TENSES**

Tenses refer to time. The time expressed by the verb is called its tense. It is a device employed by the verb to indicate time of action. The six tenses of the verb are formed from its principal parts – Present – Future – Past – Perfect – I write – I will write – I wrote – I have written

1. The **present tense** expresses an action taking place now
   [Simple present]– I write. She sings (Everyday)
   [Present continuous] - I am writing (Now)

2. The **Past tense** expresses action that took place in the past – I wrote (Yesterday)

3. The **Future tense** expresses an action that will occur in the future.
   It is formed by adding the helping verb will or shall to the present – I will visit him (Tomorrow)

4. The **present perfect tense** expresses an action that occurred at an indefinite time in the past and may still be going on. It is formed with the helping verb have or has and the past participle of the verb – I have written the letters (Already)

5. The **future perfect tense** expresses an action that will be completed before a definite time in the future. It is formed with “will have or shall have” and the past participle. By the end of the term they will have learned to write formal and informal letters.
6. The **past perfect tense** expresses an action that occurred before another past action. It is formed with the helping verb “had” and the past participle – Before they watched the movie, they had discussed it with their teacher in class.

**Simple past**
- I was
- You were
- He, She, It was
- We were
- You were
- They were

**Perfect tense**
- I have been (to Abuja), You have been to etc

**Conjugation of the verb “to have”**

**Present tense**
- I have
- You have
- He, She, It has (NOT “He have!”)
- We have
- You have
- They have

**Past tense**
- I had
- You had
- He, She, It had
- We had
- You had
- They had

**Perfect tense**
- I have had (my bathe)
- You have had (your bitter lesson)
- He has had a bottle of beer.
- We have had (our Mathematics lesson) etc
- They have had some drinks

**Conjugation of the verb “talk” (Example of a Regular Verb)**
Present Tense
First person singular – I talk
Second person singular – You talk
Third person singular – He, She, It talks
First person plural – We talk
Second person plural – You talk
Third person plural – They talk

Past Tense
First person singular – I talked
Second person singular – you talked
Third person singular – He, She, It talked
First person plural – We talked
Second person plural – You talked
Third person plural – They talked

Future Tense
First person singular – I will (shall) talk
Second person singular – You will talk
Third person singular – He, She, It will talk
First person plural – We will talk
Second person plural – You will talk
Third person plural – They will talk

Present perfect tense
First person singular – I have talked
Second person singular – You have talked
Third person singular – He, She, it has talked
First person plural – We have talked
Second person plural – You have talked
Third person plural – They have talked

Past perfect tense
First person singular – I had talked
Second person singular – You had talked
Third person singular – He, She, It had talked
First person plural – We had talked
Second person plural – You had talked
Third person plural – They had talked

Future perfect tense
First person singular – I will (shall) have talked
Second person singular – You will have talked
Third person singular – He, She, It will have talked
First person plural – We will have talked
Second person plural – You will have talked
Third person plural – They will have talked

**Irregular verbs**

Irregular verbs do not form their principal parts by adding -ed. However, many irregular verbs do follow other patterns.

Draw a table of the strong or irregular verbs which, the students must learn by heart. The irregular verbs must take more attention and time as most of them are frequently used in everyday English.

Some irregular verbs form their past participle by adding -n to the past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present participle</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breaking</td>
<td>Break</td>
<td>Broke</td>
<td>Broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choosing</td>
<td>Choose</td>
<td>Chose</td>
<td>Chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td>Speak</td>
<td>Spoke</td>
<td>Spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stealing</td>
<td>Steal</td>
<td>Stole</td>
<td>Stolen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Some form the past participle from the present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present participle</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drawing</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>Drew</td>
<td>Drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving</td>
<td>Drive</td>
<td>Drove</td>
<td>Driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eating</td>
<td>Eat</td>
<td>Ate</td>
<td>Eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falling</td>
<td>Fall</td>
<td>Fell</td>
<td>Fallen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Some have the same past and past participle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present participle</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Catching</td>
<td>Catch</td>
<td>Caught</td>
<td>Caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Having</td>
<td>Have</td>
<td>Had</td>
<td>Had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leaving</td>
<td>Leave</td>
<td>Left</td>
<td>Left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thinking</td>
<td>Think</td>
<td>Thought</td>
<td>Thought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Some have the same present, past and past participle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present participle</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bursting</td>
<td>Burst</td>
<td>Burst</td>
<td>Burst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notice that some irregular verbs follow patterns, and others do not. Learn the forms of these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present-continuous (Now)</th>
<th>Simple Present (Everyday)</th>
<th>Simple Past (Yesterday)</th>
<th>Perfect Tense (Already)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am writing</td>
<td>I write</td>
<td>I wrote</td>
<td>have written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td>Read</td>
<td>Read</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I was</td>
<td>I have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Having</td>
<td>Have</td>
<td>Had</td>
<td>Have had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eating</td>
<td>Eat</td>
<td>Ate</td>
<td>Eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singing</td>
<td>Sing</td>
<td>Sang</td>
<td>Sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forgetting</td>
<td>Forget</td>
<td>Forgot</td>
<td>Forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Getting</td>
<td>Get</td>
<td>Got</td>
<td>Got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beginning</td>
<td>Begin</td>
<td>Began</td>
<td>Begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taking</td>
<td>Take</td>
<td>Took</td>
<td>Taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching</td>
<td>Teach</td>
<td>Taught</td>
<td>Taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thinking</td>
<td>Think</td>
<td>Thought</td>
<td>Thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doing</td>
<td>Do</td>
<td>Did</td>
<td>Done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telling</td>
<td>Tell</td>
<td>Told</td>
<td>Told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standing</td>
<td>Stand</td>
<td>Stood</td>
<td>Stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saying</td>
<td>Say</td>
<td>Said</td>
<td>Said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seeing</td>
<td>See</td>
<td>Saw</td>
<td>Seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paying</td>
<td>Pay</td>
<td>Paid</td>
<td>Paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Losing</td>
<td>Lose</td>
<td>Lost</td>
<td>Lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winning</td>
<td>Win</td>
<td>Won</td>
<td>Won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keeping</td>
<td>Keep</td>
<td>Kept</td>
<td>Kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giving</td>
<td>Give</td>
<td>Gave</td>
<td>Given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting</td>
<td>Meet</td>
<td>Met</td>
<td>Met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digging</td>
<td>Dig</td>
<td>Dug</td>
<td>Dug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coming</td>
<td>Come</td>
<td>Came</td>
<td>Come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cutting</td>
<td>Cut</td>
<td>Cut</td>
<td>Cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinking</td>
<td>Drink</td>
<td>Drank</td>
<td>Drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running</td>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Ran</td>
<td>Run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building</td>
<td>Build</td>
<td>Built</td>
<td>Built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Past Participle</td>
<td>Present Participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buying</td>
<td>Buy</td>
<td>Bought</td>
<td>Bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bringing</td>
<td>Bring</td>
<td>Brought</td>
<td>Brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Killing</td>
<td>Kill</td>
<td>Killed</td>
<td>Killed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working</td>
<td>Work</td>
<td>Worked</td>
<td>Worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking</td>
<td>Walk</td>
<td>Walked</td>
<td>Walked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dancing</td>
<td>Dance</td>
<td>Danced</td>
<td>Danced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing</td>
<td>Draw</td>
<td>Drew</td>
<td>Drawn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISES:**

Make sentences with the following verbs to show the correct use of the tenses. Name their tenses, e.g. present, past, past participle, future etc.

1. Driven, begun, sang, hid, known, hidden, broke, spoke, spoken
2. Drew, drank, done, eaten, ate, eat, fell, forgot, gave, wrote, ran
3. Written, went, wrote, shook, tore, fallen, know, drunk, chose
4. Came, did, come, torn, sing, draw, see, seen, read, swept

**Use the correct parts of the verbs in the blank spaces:**

1. (go) Our teacher ____________ for a walk
2. (see) We ____________ her mother yesterday
3. (dream) The boy ________ about thieves last night.
4. (drink) We ________ tea early in the morning yesterday.
5. (give) Ngozi ________ Mary the parcel already.
6. (fall) The tree ________ across the road.
7. (throw) The boy ________ away his books.
8. (ring) The bell ________ at noon.
9. (write) President Obama ________ three letters to his ministers.
10. (eat) The children ________ meat and fish at the feeding centre.
11. (write) I have just ________ three letters.
12. (take) Obinna ________ my “Things Fall Apart.”
13. (forget) Our teacher has ________ my name.
14. (eat) Why have you ________ my apples.
15. (fell) Our cat has ________ into a pit.

**Use the following pairs of verbs in sentences, present or past:**

(a) buy/read (b) see/buy (c) kill/sell (d) give/eat (e) write/post (f) draw/paint (g) write/read (h) take/go (i) work/harvest (j) give/drink (k) get/keep (l) cut/paste (m) buy/build (n) begin/sing (o) run/win (p) stand/look (q) tell/forget (r) dig/cover (s) see/lose
THE LATIN VERB

THE PROPERTIES OF A VERB

A verb has 5 main properties, namely voice, mood, tense, person and number.

Voice: A verb is in the active voice when the subject does something. “The teacher praises his pupils.” It is in the passive voice when the subject is the recipient of the action or has something done to it. “The pupils are praised by the teacher”.

Mood: A verb is in the indicative mood when it states a fact or asks a question. “Marcus studies.” “Why does Marcus study?” It is in the imperative mood when it expresses a command. “Sit down there!” “Keep quiet!”

Tense: A verb has 6 tenses (see below).

Person: A verb has 3 persons in the singular and plural. A verb is in the first person when its subject is the person speaking. “I call.” “We praise”. It is in the second person when its subject is the person spoken to. “You call”. It is in the third person when the subject is the person or thing spoken of. “He praises.” “They praise.”

INFLECTION

Inflection is a change in the form of a word to indicate a change in its meaning or use. The inflection of a noun, pronoun, or adjective is called declension. The inflection of a verb is its conjugation. Adjectives have also an inflection called ‘comparison’.

CONJUGATION

To conjugate means to give the forms of a verb, including the number and tense. Latin verbs are divided into four classes or groups called Conjugations. Conjugation specifies what each person (singular and plural) does. Each class has its own verb stem, which is that part of the verb that remains when the endings are added or removed. The conjugation of a verb is recognized either by its present infinitive or by the appropriate number (1, 2, 3, 4 – First, Second, Third, Fourth
**Conjugation** after the verb. Students must know the conjugation to which any Latin verb learnt belongs. Traditional examples are given here as well as their present indicative tense. Other tenses of each conjugation will be given as we proceed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>4th</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am-o</td>
<td>Mone-o</td>
<td>Reg-o</td>
<td>Aud-o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-s</td>
<td>Mone-s</td>
<td>Reg-s</td>
<td>Aud-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-t</td>
<td>Mone-t</td>
<td>Reg-t</td>
<td>Aud-t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-mus</td>
<td>Mone-mus</td>
<td>Reg-mus</td>
<td>Aud-mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-tis</td>
<td>Mone-tis</td>
<td>Reg-tis</td>
<td>Aud-tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-nt</td>
<td>Mone-nt</td>
<td>Reg-nt</td>
<td>Aud-nt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love</td>
<td>I advise</td>
<td>I rule</td>
<td>I hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amo: I love, you love (sing), He, She, It loves, We love, You love (plu), They love
Moneo: I advise, I warn etc
Rego: I rule etc
Audio: I hear, listen etc.

**Bird's-eye-view of the Four Conjugations – Active and Passive**

Laudare, to praise; Monere, to warn, advice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Laudo</th>
<th>I praise</th>
<th>Moneo</th>
<th>I warn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laudas</td>
<td>You praise</td>
<td>Mones</td>
<td>You warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laudat</td>
<td>He (she, it) praises</td>
<td>Monet</td>
<td>He warns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudamus</td>
<td>We praise</td>
<td>monemus</td>
<td>We warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudatis</td>
<td>You praise</td>
<td>monetis</td>
<td>You warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudant</td>
<td>They praise</td>
<td>moment</td>
<td>They warn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ducere, to lead; audire, to hear

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Duco</th>
<th>I lead</th>
<th>Audio</th>
<th>I hear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ducis</td>
<td>You lead</td>
<td>Audis</td>
<td>You hear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ducit | He leads | Audit | He hears
---|---|---|---
Ducimus | We lead | Audimus | We hear
Ducitis | You lead | Auditis | You hear
Ducunt | They lead | Audiunt | They hear

**PASSIVE VOICE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Laudor</th>
<th>I am praised</th>
<th>Moneor</th>
<th>I am warned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laudaris</td>
<td>You are praised</td>
<td>Moneris</td>
<td>You are warned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laudatur</td>
<td>He (she, it) is praised</td>
<td>Monetur</td>
<td>He is warned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laudamur</td>
<td>We are praised</td>
<td>Monemur</td>
<td>We are warned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laudamini</td>
<td>You are praised</td>
<td>Monemini</td>
<td>You are warned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laudantur</td>
<td>They are praised</td>
<td>Monentur</td>
<td>They are warned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ducor</th>
<th>I am led</th>
<th>Audior</th>
<th>I am heard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dueris</td>
<td>You are led</td>
<td>Audiris</td>
<td>You are heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducitur</td>
<td>He is led</td>
<td>Auditur</td>
<td>He is heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducimur</td>
<td>We are led</td>
<td>Audimur</td>
<td>We are heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducimini</td>
<td>You are led</td>
<td>Audimini</td>
<td>You are heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ducuntur</td>
<td>They are led</td>
<td>Audiuntur</td>
<td>They are heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB**

During the good days when Latin was a revered secondary school subject in Nigeria, it used to be an impeccable sign of proficiency in Latin if a student could name the four principal parts of most irregular verbs. The same importance is placed on the knowledge of the tenses of the irregular verbs in English language. As pointed out above these have to be memorized. [Now – I am writing; Everyday - I write; Tomorrow – I will write; Yesterday – I wrote; Already – I have written,] these showing the tenses – present, future, imperfect and perfect. This same knowledge will help us as we proceed in mastering Latin verbs and tenses. Students should endeavor to ‘master’ the four principal parts of every new verb they meet in this Latin study. The ‘strange’ and the irregular ones must be committed to memory right away!

**Amo – amare – amavi – amatum – to love**

1st Principal Part - Amo – Present Indicative
2nd Principal Part – Amare – Present Infinitive
3rd Principal Part – Amavi – Perfect Indicative
4th Principal Part – Amatum – Supine
Some verbs with their four Principal Parts

**Respond** – respondere - respondi – responsum – answer  
**Intellego** – intellegere – intellexi – intellectum – understand  
**Mitto** – mittere – misi – missum – send  
**Defendo** – defendere – defendi – defensum – defend  
**Cogo** – cogere – coegi – coactum – compel  
**Incipio** – incipere – incepi – inceptum – begin  
**Venio** – venire – veni – ventum – come  
**Promitto** – promitere – promisi – promissum – promise  
**Video** – videre – vidi – visum - see  
**Ago** – agere – ego – actum - act

Practice – Application

The teacher should write out some irregular Latin verbs (familiar and unfamiliar ones) with their English meaning and allow the students to name their 4 principal parts and as well encourage them to commit the parts to memory. Some examples: lead, kill, run, conquer, write, buy, sell, sit etc.

**FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS**

Amō – amāre – amāvi – amātum (1)  
[long ‘ā’ -āre verbs]  
Laudo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum – to praise

Generally the Latin vowel has two sounds according to whether it is long, as indicated by the ‘macron’ (the sign ‘—’, or ‘a dash’ on top of ‘a’; e.g, amāre) or short, as indicated by the absence of any marks.

Also written this way: Amo, -are, -avi, -atum. Add –re, -vi, -tum to the verb stem “ama”. The number – 1, 2, 3, 4 – after the verb indicates its conjugation. The regular 1st conjugation verbs are usually recognized by their present infinitive -are

1. **Amo** – is the present indicative tense – I love  
2. **Amare** – is the present infinitive. (‘to love’)  
3. **Amavi** – is the past tense (Perfect tense) – I have loved.
4. **Amatum** – is the ‘Supine’. This 4\textsuperscript{th} principal part usually ends in – um. Later we shall learn the uses of the *supine*.

We use the verb “amo” – I love to complete the conjugation of the various tenses of the first conjugation verbs.

**Amo – amare – amavi – amatum, love – Active Voice**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amo, I love</td>
<td>Amabo</td>
<td>amabam</td>
<td>amavi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amas, You love</td>
<td>Amabis</td>
<td>amabas</td>
<td>amavisti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amat, He loves</td>
<td>Amabit</td>
<td>amabat</td>
<td>amavit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amamus, We love</td>
<td>Amabimus</td>
<td>amabamus</td>
<td>amavimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amatis, You love</td>
<td>Amabitis</td>
<td>amabatis</td>
<td>amavistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amant, They love</td>
<td>Amabunt</td>
<td>amabant</td>
<td>amaverunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love......</td>
<td>I will love...</td>
<td>I loved</td>
<td>I have loved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect Indicative Active**
Amavero – amaveris – amaverit – amaverimus – amaveritis –amaverint: I will have loved......

**Pluperfect Indicative Active**
Amaveram– amaveras, amaverat, amaveramus – amaveratis – amaverant: I had loved........

**PASSIVE VOICE ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amor</td>
<td>Amabor</td>
<td>amabar</td>
<td>amatus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaris</td>
<td>Amaberis</td>
<td>amabaris</td>
<td>amatus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amatur</td>
<td>Amabitur</td>
<td>amabatur</td>
<td>Amatus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amamur</td>
<td>Amabimir</td>
<td>amabamur</td>
<td>amati sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amamini</td>
<td>Amabimini</td>
<td>amabamini</td>
<td>amati estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amantur</td>
<td>Amabuntur</td>
<td>Amabuntur</td>
<td>amati sunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| I am loved..... | I will be loved.. | I was loved..... | I have been ...

**Infinitive**
Present Active - amare
Present Passive – amari
Perfect Active – amavisse
Perfect Passive – amatus esse  
Future Active – amaturus esse  
Future Passive –amaturus iri  

**SOME FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS**

We have to learn some simpler ones we can use in simple sentences right away.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amo</td>
<td>I love</td>
<td>Porto</td>
<td>I carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavo</td>
<td>I wash</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>I give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laudo</td>
<td>I praise</td>
<td>Monstro</td>
<td>I show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paro</td>
<td>I prepare</td>
<td>Veto</td>
<td>I forbid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aedifico</td>
<td>I build</td>
<td>Voco</td>
<td>I call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambulo</td>
<td>I walk</td>
<td>Remigo</td>
<td>I row</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specto</td>
<td>I look at</td>
<td>iuvo</td>
<td>I help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narro</td>
<td>I narrate</td>
<td>Intro</td>
<td>I enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puto</td>
<td>I think</td>
<td>Supero</td>
<td>I overcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creo</td>
<td>I elect</td>
<td>Culpo</td>
<td>I blame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Libero</td>
<td>I set free</td>
<td>Navigo</td>
<td>I sail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulnero</td>
<td>I wound</td>
<td>Vigilo</td>
<td>I keep watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clamo</td>
<td>I shout</td>
<td>Appropinquo</td>
<td>I approach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numero</td>
<td>I count</td>
<td>Sto</td>
<td>I stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboro</td>
<td>I work</td>
<td>iuvo</td>
<td>I aid, help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saluto</td>
<td>I salute</td>
<td>Habito</td>
<td>I live in, dwell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aro</td>
<td>I plough</td>
<td>Opto</td>
<td>I seek, I desire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Probo</td>
<td>I prove</td>
<td>Pugno</td>
<td>I fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rogo</td>
<td>I ask</td>
<td>Revoco</td>
<td>I recall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Some of the verbs with their principal parts**

Voco – vocāre – vocāvī – vocātum - I call, I invite  
Ambulo –ambulare – ambulavi – ambulatum -I walk  
Specto – spectare – spectavi – spectatum - I look at, I inspect  
Remigo – remigare – remigavi – remigatum - I row  
iuvo – iuvare – iuvi – iutum - I help  
Narro – narare – naravi – naratum - I narrate, I relate  
Intro – intrare – intravi – intratum - I enter  
Habito – habitare – habitavi – habitatum - I live in  
Colloco – collocare – collocavi – collocatum - I place, I draw up  
Vasto – vastare – vastavi – vastatum - I lay waste, I ravage
Sto – stare – steti – statum - I stand
Firmo – firmare – firmavi – firmatum - I strengthen, I make firm
Resto –are –vi –atum - I remain, rest
Supero –are –avi –atum - I overcome, I surpass
Creo –are – avi –atum - I elect, I appoint
Appropinquo –are –avi –atum - I approach
Servo –are - avi –atum - I save
Occupo –are –avi –atum - I seize, occupy
Appello –are –avi –atum - I name, I call
Orno –are –avi –atum - I adorn
Exclamo –are –avi –atum - I exclaim
Vindico –are –avi –atum - I claim
Despero –are –avi –atum - I despair
Laudo –are –avi –atum - I praise

Exercises
Give the meaning of each of the following - Translate
(a.) Monemus, ducere, laudat, audiunt, audior, ducuntur, laudamini, monentur, moneris, ducitur
(b.) We are heard. I am led. He warns. You (sing) hear. She praises. He is heard.

Give the four principal parts and meaning of each of the following verbs:

(c.) Laudo, libero, clamo, sto, porto, aedifico, porto, do.

Translate into Latin
(1.) What did you see?
(2) They are building.
(3) We are carrying.
(4) She is working.
(5) They have prepared.
(6) They will ask
(7) He had counted.
(8) We have seen.
(9) They shall have praised.
(10) We have washed.
(11) I am praised
(12) You (sing) are warned
(13) He is led
SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS
Monēo – monēre – monui – monitum (2)
[-ēre verbs : long ē]

As we have already observed, the Latin vowel has two sounds according to whether it is long, as indicated by the ‘macron’ or short, as indicated by the absence of any marks.

The number – 1, 2, 3, 4 – after the verb indicates its conjugation. The regular 2nd conjugation verbs are usually recognized by their present infinitive –ere

1. Moneo – is the present indicative tense – I advise
2. Monere – is the present infinitive. (‘to advise’)
3. Monui – is the past tense (Perfect tense) – I have advised.
4. Monitum – is the ‘Supine’. This 4th principal part usually ends in –um. Later we shall learn the uses of the supine.

We use the verb “Moneo” – I advise to complete the conjugation of the various tenses of the second conjugation verbs

Mone-o –monere – monui – monitum, advise – Active Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moneo</td>
<td>Monebo</td>
<td>monebam</td>
<td>monui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mones</td>
<td>Monebis</td>
<td>monebas</td>
<td>monuisti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monet</td>
<td>Monebit</td>
<td>monebat</td>
<td>monuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monemus</td>
<td>Monebimus</td>
<td>monebamus</td>
<td>monuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetis</td>
<td>Monebitis</td>
<td>monebatis</td>
<td>monuistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I advise......</td>
<td>I will advise...</td>
<td>I advised</td>
<td>I have advised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect Indicative Active
Monuerō – monueris – monuerit – monuerimus – monueritis – monuerint: I will have advised......

Pluperfect Indicative Active
monueram– monueras, monuerat, monueramus – monueratis – monuerintt: I had advised.......

PASSIVE VOICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moneor</td>
<td>Monebor</td>
<td>monebar</td>
<td>monitus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneris</td>
<td>Moneberis</td>
<td>monebaris</td>
<td>monitus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monetur</td>
<td>Monebitur</td>
<td>monebatur</td>
<td>monitus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monemur</td>
<td>Monebimur</td>
<td>monebamur</td>
<td>monitum sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monemini</td>
<td>Monebimini</td>
<td>monebamini</td>
<td>monitum est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monentur</td>
<td>Monebuntur</td>
<td>monebuntur</td>
<td>monitum sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am advised</td>
<td>I will be</td>
<td>I was</td>
<td>I have been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>advised.....</td>
<td>advised.....</td>
<td>advised.....</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive

Present Active - monere
Present Passive – moneri
Perfect Active – monuisse
Perfect Passive – monitus esse
Future Active – moniturus esse
Future Passive – monitum iri

SOME SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Habeo</td>
<td>I have</td>
<td>Deleo</td>
<td>I destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terreo</td>
<td>I frighten</td>
<td>Timeo</td>
<td>I fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respondeo</td>
<td>I answer</td>
<td>Taceo</td>
<td>I keep quiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adhibeo</td>
<td>I use</td>
<td>Teneo</td>
<td>Hold, keep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maneo</td>
<td>I remain</td>
<td>Compleo</td>
<td>I fill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fleo</td>
<td>I weep</td>
<td>Moveo</td>
<td>I move</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placeo</td>
<td>I please</td>
<td>Displaceo</td>
<td>I displease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pareo</td>
<td>I obey</td>
<td>Noceo</td>
<td>I Injure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeo</td>
<td>I fear</td>
<td>Doceo</td>
<td>I teach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some 2nd conjugation verbs with their 4 principal parts

Timeo – timère – timui – (missing) - I fear
Respondeo – respondère – respondi – responsum - I answer
Moveo – movere – movi – motum - I move
Contineo – continere – continui – contentum - I hold together
Sustineo – sustainere – sustinui – sustentum - I sustain
Terreo – terrere – terrui – territum - I frighten
Taceo – tacere – tacui – tacitum - I keep quiet
Hab eo – habere – habui – habitum - I have
Moneo – monere – monui – monitum – I warn, I advise
Debeo – debere – debui – debitum - owe, to be indebted
Maneo – manere – mansi – mansum – I remain
Sed eo – sedere - sessi – sessum – I sit
Teneo – tenere – tenui – tentum – I hold
Video – videre – visi – visum – I see

Exercises
1. Conjugate the following verbs in both singular and plural:
   Respondeo, fleo, timeo, habeo, placeo, maneo, videre
2. Translate into Latin: Did you see the boys? The boys are sitting down, but the girls are running. My friends fear horses. The girls were weeping. They have kept quiet. We obey My friends are moving the tables.

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS

Duco – ducere – duxi – ductum (3)
[short ‘e’ -ere verbs, short] no ‘macro’. 

Third conjugation verbs have short sound as indicated by the absence of any ‘macro’ marks. The number – 1, 2, 3, 4 – after the verb indicates its conjugation. The regular 3rd conjugation verbs are usually recognized by their present infinitive - ere

1. Duco – is the present indicative tense – I lead
2. Ducere – is the present infinitive. (‘to lead’)
3. Duxi – is the past tense (Perfect tense) – I have led.
4. Ductum – is the ‘Supine’. This 4th principal part usually ends in – um. Later we shall learn the uses of the supine.

We use the verb rego – I rule to complete the conjugation of the various tenses of the third conjugation verbs

Rego – regere – rexi – rectum, rule – Active Voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rego</td>
<td>Regam</td>
<td>Regebam</td>
<td>rexi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regis</td>
<td>Reges</td>
<td>Regebas</td>
<td>rexisti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participles</td>
<td>Future Participles</td>
<td>Imperfect Participles</td>
<td>Perfect Participles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regit</td>
<td>Reget</td>
<td>Regebat</td>
<td>rexit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimus</td>
<td>Regemus</td>
<td>regebamus</td>
<td>reximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regitis</td>
<td>Regetis</td>
<td>regebatis</td>
<td>rexistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regunt</td>
<td>Regent</td>
<td>regebant</td>
<td>rexerunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I rule...</td>
<td>I will rule...</td>
<td>I ruled</td>
<td>I have ruled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect Indicative Active**
Rexero – rexeris – rexerit – rexerimus – rexeritis – rexerint:
I will have ruled.......

**Pluperfect Indicative Active**
Rexeram – rexeras, rexerat, rexeramus – rexeratis – rexerant:
I had ruled.......**

**PASSIVE VOICE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regor</td>
<td>Regar</td>
<td>Regebar</td>
<td>rectus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regeris</td>
<td>Regeris</td>
<td>regebaris</td>
<td>rectus es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regitur</td>
<td>Regetur</td>
<td>regebatur</td>
<td>rectus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimur</td>
<td>Regemur</td>
<td>regebamur</td>
<td>recti sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimini</td>
<td>Regemini</td>
<td>regebamini</td>
<td>recti estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reguntur</td>
<td>Regentur</td>
<td>regebantur</td>
<td>recti sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am ruled.</td>
<td>I will be ruled</td>
<td>I was ruled</td>
<td>I have been ..</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SOME THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abduco</td>
<td>take away, abduct,</td>
<td>pergo</td>
<td>continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abripio</td>
<td>snatch away</td>
<td>praedico</td>
<td>predict, warn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abscedo</td>
<td>go away</td>
<td>procedo</td>
<td>proceed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accedo</td>
<td>Approach</td>
<td>protego</td>
<td>protect, cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accendo</td>
<td>set fire</td>
<td>requiesco</td>
<td>rest, repose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accipio</td>
<td>take away</td>
<td>rado</td>
<td>shave, scrape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cado</td>
<td>Fall</td>
<td>Rapio, rapto</td>
<td>Seize, kidnap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caedo</td>
<td>cut, fell</td>
<td>recipio</td>
<td>withdraw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capio</td>
<td>take, seize</td>
<td>recurro</td>
<td>run back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cogo</td>
<td>bring, collect</td>
<td>refugio</td>
<td>escape, avoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conscribo</td>
<td>Enroll</td>
<td>rego</td>
<td>guide, direct</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some important third conjugations verbs and their principal parts.

Most third conjugation verbs have very irregular parts. Students should endeavour to commit all the parts to memory!

Averto, avertere, averti, aversum (3) – remove, divert
Cano, canere, cecini, cantum – sing [see also Canto, cantare, cantavi, cantatum (1), i.e First Conjugation verb – sing
Cappio, capere, cepi, captum (3) – take, seize
Carpo, carpere, carpsi, carp tum – seize, pluck
Cingo, cingere, cinxi, cinctum – surround, encircle
Circumduco. Circumdúcere, circumdúxi, circumdúctum – move around
Claudo, cludere, clausi, clausum, shut down, close, make inaccessible.
Clepo, clepere, clepsi, cleptum – steal. (see clepo), to conceal self
Coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptum – begin, commence
Cogo, coegere, coegi, coactum – bring, drive
Collido, collidere, collisi, collisum – to strike together, collide.
Colludo, colludere, collusi, collusum – to play with, collude
Comitto, comittere, comissi, comissum – to unite, combine
Como, comere, compsi, comptum – to place together in order, arrange, adorn
Compello, compellere, compulsi, compulsum – force, compel
Comprimo, comprere, compressi, compressum – squeeze together, compress
Compromitto, compromittere, compromisi, compromissum – agree, compromise
Concedo, concedere, concessi, concessum – withdraw, cease, submit
Concido, concidere, concidi, concisum – overthrow, to bear severely
Concludo, concludere, conclusi, conclusum – shut up, inclose, confine.
Conduco, conducere, conduxi, conductum – bring together, unite
Conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum – finish, accomplish
Configo, configure, confixi, confixum – fasten together, nail together.
Confundo, confudere, confusi, confusum – mingle, join together, , confuse, throw into disorder.
Contemno, contemptuere, contempsi, contemptum – think meanfully, despise, ridicule.
Contraho, contrahere, contraxi, contractum – collect, unite.
Convinco, convincere, convici, convictum – to convict of crime,
Coquo, coquere, coxi, coctum – cook, prepare food.
Curro, currere, cucurri, cursum – run, hasten
Decipio, decipere, decepi, deceptum – cheat, deceive
Defugio, defugere, defugi, _-_ flee away, avoid (war)
Deficio, deficere, defeci, defectum – rebel, defeat, go over
Deicio, deicere, deici, deictum – throw, cast away, hurl down
Delinquo, delinquere, deliqui, delictum – to fall, be wanting, commit crime
Deludo, deludere, deluci, delusum – mock, cheat, deceive
Dimitto, dimittere, dimissi, dimisum – send down, lower down
Demo, demere, dempsi, demptum – take away
Interpone, interponere, interposui, interpositum – insert, interpose
Lego, legere, legi, lectum – read, recite,
Lingo, lingere, linxi, linctum – lick
Lino, linere, livi, litum – smear upon, anoint, rub
Ludo, ludere, lusi, lusum – play, sport, amuse, dance
Maledico, maledicere, maledixi, maledictum, curse, wish evil
Malefacio, malefacere, malefeci, malefactum – injure
Mando, mandere, mandi, mansum – masticate, eat, consume
Mitto, mittere, misi, misum – send, let go
Necto, nectere, nexi, nexum – tie, fasten
Negligo, negligere, neglexi, neglectum – tie, fasten
Nosco, noscere, novi, notum – to become acquainted with, to know, to recognize
Obsideo, obsidere, obsedi, obsessum – sit down, remain anywhere
Obsido, obsidere, obsedi, obsessum – besiege, blockade
Occiso, occidere, occidi, occisum – kill, knock down
Occulo, occulere, occulti, occultum – cover, hide
Occurro, occurrere, occurrum – run to meet, hasten to meet.
Officio, officere, offici, officium – impede, hinder, injure
Offigo, offigere, offixi, offixum – fix in, fasten
Offacio, officare, offici, officatum – to smell, scent out, detect
Omitto, omitere, omisi, omissum – to let go, give, omit, cease
Oppono, opponere, opposui, oppositum – to oppose, contrast
Opprimo, opprimere, oppressi, oppressum – suppress, conceal.
Ostendo, ostendere, ostendi, ostentum – to show, exhibit.
Pando, pandere, panxi, pancecum – fasten, fix, drive in
Perdo, perdere, perdidi, perditum – destroy, ruin, waste, squander.
**Perficio**, perficere, perfeci, perfectum – accomplish, complete, finish, perfect.

**Vinco**, vincere, vici, victum – conquer, defeat

**Peto**, petere, petivi, petitum – seek, look for

**Flecto**, fletere, flexi, flexum – turn, bend

**Relinquuo**, relinquere, reliqui, relictum – leave, abandon

**Excedo**, excedere, excessi, excessum – to depart, go out from.

---

**Some verbs of the third Conjugation ending in –io**

**Cupio**, cupere, cupivi, cupitum – to wish, desire

**Facio**, facere, feci, factum – make, do

**Includo**, includere, inclusi, inclusum – shut in, confine

**Iacio**, iacere, ieci, iactum – throw

**Perspicio**, perscipere, perspexi, perspectum – see, perceive

**Expicio**, excipere, excepî, exceptum – receive

**Accipio**, accipere, accepi, acceptum – receive

**Constituo**, constituere, constitui, constitutum – determine

**Fugio**, fugere, fugi, fugitum – flee, take to flight

**Sapio**, sapere, sapii (sapivi) (supine missing) – be wise

**Rapio**, rapere, rapui, raptum – seize, snatch, kidnap

**Pario**, parere, peperi, partum – produce

**Interficio**, interficere, intereci, interfectum – to kill

---

**FOURTH CONJUGATION VERBS**

Audio, aud-ire, aud-ivi, aud-itum (4) (-ire verbs). Fourth conjugation verbs have ‘long’ sound, as indicated by the presence of the ‘macro’ - audiō, audīre, audīvi, audītum

The number – 1, 2, 3, 4 – after the verb indicates its conjugation. The regular 4th conjugation verbs are usually recognized by their present infinitive -ire

1. Audiō – is the **present indicate tense** – I hear
2. Audīre – is the **present infinitive.** (‘to hear’)
3. Audīvi – is the past tense (**Perfect tense**) – I have heard.
4. Audītum – is the ‘**Supine**’. This 4th principal part usually ends in – um. Later we shall learn the uses of the **supine**.
We use the verb audio – I hear to complete the conjugation of the various tenses of the fourth conjugation verbs

**Audio – audire – audivi – auditum – Active Voice**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio</td>
<td>Audiam</td>
<td>audiebam</td>
<td>Audivi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audis</td>
<td>Audies</td>
<td>audiebas</td>
<td>audivisti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit</td>
<td>Audiet</td>
<td>audiebat</td>
<td>audivit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audimus</td>
<td>Audiemus</td>
<td>audiebamus</td>
<td>audivimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditis</td>
<td>Audietis</td>
<td>audiebatis</td>
<td>audivistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audiunt</td>
<td>Audient</td>
<td>audiebant</td>
<td>audiverunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hear...</td>
<td>I will hear...</td>
<td>I will hear</td>
<td>I have heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect Indicative Active**
audivero – audiveris – audiverit – audiverimus – audiverit: I will have heard......

**Pluperfect Indicative Active**
audiveram – audiveras, audiverat, audiveramus – audiveratis – audiverant: I had heard.......
Some fourth conjugation verbs and their principal parts.

Venio, venire, veni, ventum – to come
Aperio, aperire, aperui, apertum – to open
Invenio, invenire, inveni, inventum – to find
Sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum – to notice
Desilio, desilire, desilui, desultum – to jump down
Munio, munire, munivi, munitum – to fortify, defend
Condio, condire, condivi (-ii), conditum – preserve, season, embalm
Convenio, convenire, conveni, conventum – to come together
Cooperio, cooperire, cooperrui, coopertum – cover, envelop
Intervenio, intervenire, interveni, interventum – intervene, interrupt
Lenio, lenire, lenivi (-ii), lenitum – relieve, alleviate
Nequeo, nequire, nequivi, nequitum – to be unable
Nescio, nescire, nescivi, nescitum – not to know, be ignorant of
Nutrio, nutrire, nutrivi, nutritum – suckle, nourish, tend
Obeo, obiri, obivi, obitum – go (to meet), go against
Operio, operire, operui, opertum – bury, cover, conceal, close
Perio, perire, perii (perivi), peritum – to pass away, perish, disappear
Provenio, provenire, proveni, proventum – to come forth, progress
Sancio, sancire, sanxi, sanctum – make sacred, sanction
Sacio, sacire, sarsi, sartum – patch, repair
Scio, scire, scivi, scitum – to know
Abio, abire, abii,abitum – I go away
Adeo, adire, adii, aditum – I approach
Exeo, exire, exii, exitum – I go out
Redeo, redire, redii, reditum – I return
Subeo, subire, subii, subitum – I undergo

Exercises
Translate into Latin
1. My mother’s friend has a daughter.
2. I love my sister.
3. The slaves are working in the garden today.
4. We called the friends and listened to the story.
5. The Romans did not like their slaves.
6. We were seen by the girls.
7. The story was told by the lady.
8. The farmers were advised by the lord.
9. The sailors heard the story.
10. The messengers were sent by the soldier.
Translate into English
1. Milites multas urbes deleverunt.
2. Ego octo servos cibum ad templum cras portare iubebo.
3. Num milites nostri percuniam et cibum ad Graecos mittent?
4. Quotiens Romani castra sua contra Companos piratasque defendere poterunt?
5. Cur Campani (Campanus, citizens of Capua) oppidi in viis hodie sunt, domine?
6. Pueri nostri Publius ducem creaverunt.
7. Quis vocem tuam audivit?
8. Nonne lucem vides?
10. Mox ad Italiam nos navigabimus.

Give the four principal parts of: lego, mitto, occido, curro, capio, facio, aperio.

Give the person, number, voice, and meaning of the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delectamini</td>
<td>moveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Docetur</td>
<td>navigat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intramus</td>
<td>portor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratis</td>
<td>probat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pugnamus</td>
<td>timentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrantur</td>
<td>moventur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GENDER IN ENGLISH AND LATIN

In English a noun denoting a male is in the **masculine gender**: as man, boy; a noun denoting a female is in the **feminine gender**: as woman, girl; and a noun denoting a ‘sexless’ object is in the **neuter**: as war, battle, word. English nouns are said to be of ‘natural’ gender.

Latin nouns on the other hand have what can be described as **grammatical gender**. Their gender is largely determined by the ending, rather than by the meaning of the word. Nouns of **first declension**, which end in –a, are **feminine**: e.g., femina, puella; nouns of **second declension**, ending in –us, -ius, -ir, and –er are **masculine**: e.g., amicus, locus, filius, vir, puer: and nouns of **second declension** ending in –um and –ium, are **neuter**: as, bellum, proelium.
Note: An adjective agrees with its noun in number, **gender** and case. (see adjectives)

**PARSING**

The importance of “Parsing” in any language including Latin must always be emphasized. Parsing a word means giving its ‘particulars’. Describing a word grammatically, which includes the function it is performing in the sentence and pointing out how words of a sentence are related, means parsing. Any part of speech can be parsed. Parsing a **verb** for example includes naming the following details:

1. **Person** – 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup>, or 3<sup>rd</sup> person: I, You, He etc.
2. **Number** – Singular or plural
3. **Tense** – present, future, perfect indicative etc.
4. **Voice** – Active or passive voice.
5. **Gender** – Mascl, Fem or neuter
6. **Mood** – indicative, imperative, subjunctive.
7. **The four principal parts of the verb** – e.g. amo – amare – amavi – amatum

Other examples:
- **Noun**: Is the word (noun) personal, proper, common noun? What is its gender? Etc.
- **Adjective**: Is it demonstrative or? What is its Number? Degree? (comparative or superlative?)
- **Pronoun**: Personal or Relative?
- **An article?** Definite or indefinite (a, an, the?) etc.

The ability to parse any given word is a sure sign of progress and good performance in Latin studies. Students should be able to ‘parse’ any given word, any part of speech – Verb, Noun, Pronoun, Adjective, Adverb, Preposition etc.

Editors of English **dictionaries** do not fail to give us most important ‘particulars’ of words we are looking up for. For example; when we find the word we are looking for in the dictionary, we find next to the word; (1) The **phonetic symbols** showing how the word is pronounced (2) the **part of speech**, a noun, verb etc (3) the **meaning(s)** of the word, often followed by numerous examples of its usage and adaptations. This is a type of parsing.
Exercises: Parse the underlined words. (Mat: 1 – 8)

1. Cum ergo natus esset Iesus in Bethleem Iudaeae in diebus Herodis regis ecce magi ab oriente venerunt Hierosolymam 2. dicentes ubi est qui natus est rex Iudaeorum vidimus enim stellam eius in oriente et venimus adorare eum 3. audiens autem Herodes rex turbatus est et omnis Hierosolyma cum illo 4. et congregans omnes principes sacerdotum et scribas populi sciscitabatur ab eis ubi Christus nascetur 5. at illi dixerunt ei in Bethleem Iudaeae sic enim scriptum est per prophetam 6. et tu Bethleem terra Iuda nequaquam minima es in principibus Iuda ex te enim exiet dux qui reget populum meum Israel 7. tunc Herodes clam vocat magis diligenter didicit ab eis tempus stellae quae apparuit eis 8. et mittens illos in Bethleem dixit ite et interrogate diligenter de puero et cum inveneritis renuntiate mihi ut et ego veniens adorem eum.

Direct and Indirect Questions in Latin

Latin writes its question words at the beginning of the sentence. To make a statement or a question negative we just use ‘non’ – ‘not’.

Take note of the following question words.


Question particles

To indicate a question in Latin the following question particles are also used:
‘Ne’: Add –ne to the end of the first word in the sentence, preferably a verb. Example: Ambulabantne pueri ad templum? – Will the boys walk to the tempule? Audisne? Are you listening? Laudabantne milites decem? Did the soldiers praise the leader?
‘None’: None like ‘ne’ is put first word in a sentence which expects the answer ‘yes’. E.g. You are afraid, aren’t you? (Answer expected, yes.) Nonne venis? You are coming, aren’t you? (Yes).
‘Num’: With num the expected answer is, ‘no’. You are not hungry, are you? Num venis? You aren’t coming, are you? (No).
Exercises

(1) Responde Latine:
1. Unde venit Marcus?
2. Qui cum Marco venerunt?
3. Quando ad oppidum venerunt?
4. Quando milites ab nave discesserunt?
5. Quae (what things) Marcus et Aemilia per ferias faciebant?
6. Cur per noctem bene dormiebant?
7. Cur Marcus non diu in urbe manebit?
8. Quis cras discedet? Quid ibi faciet?
9. Cur laetus Marcus hodie?
10. Quid facis?

(1) Parse all words in **bold** letters and give the four principal parts of the underlined words. Then translate into correct English.

Quis **viam videt**? Viam, amici, **videmus**. Turba prope (near) viam templum **aedificat**. Quid ad templum **portatis**? Quo **exceditis**? Ad silvam **currimus**, amici, sed non ibi **sedemus**. Cur non ibi sedetis? **Saxa** ad templum portamus. **Amici** taurum subito vident! Sed Taurus amicos non videt. Amici non ibi manent sed ad oppidum currunt. Ad templum non **currit**. Taurus **turbam** amat.

**THE VERB “TO BE” - I AM - (EGO) SUM**

The Principal Parts are – **Sum** – **Esse** – **Fui** (I am, to be – I was)
Learn the conjugation of the verb “to be,” **I am, Sum** in the Present, Future, Imperfect, Perfect, Future Perfect and Pluperfect indicative tenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sum, I am</td>
<td>Sum, I am</td>
<td>Ero, I will be</td>
<td>Eram, I was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Es, you are (sing)</td>
<td>Eris, You will be</td>
<td>Eras, You were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Est, He is</td>
<td>Erit, He will be</td>
<td>Erat, He was</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sumus, We are</td>
<td>Sumus, We are</td>
<td>Erimus, We will be</td>
<td>Eramus, We were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estis, you are (plu)</td>
<td>Estis, You will be</td>
<td>Eratis, You were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunt, They are</td>
<td>Sunt, They will be</td>
<td>Erant, They were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fu-i</td>
<td>Fu-i</td>
<td>Fu-ero</td>
<td>Fu-eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fu-isti</td>
<td>Fu-isti</td>
<td>Fu-eris</td>
<td>Fu-eras</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I was, I have been; I shall have been; I had been

The verb “Sum”, “I am” is not followed by an object. The Noun or Adjective that completes the meaning is called the complement and is the subject and is equally put in the nominative case. In English it is correct to say “Who is he?” and never “Who is him”. “It is I”. Do not fear. Never “it is me”. Do not fear. Re- “Ego Sum; qui Sum” (I am; who am)

**POSSUM – I CAN ; I AM ABLE**

**Possum – posse – potui (no supine) – I can, I am able**

Possum means I can, I am able and is always followed by an infinitive. Learn the conjugation. Possum – I am able. **Posse – to be able. Potui – I have been able. (No supine?)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Possum</td>
<td>Potero</td>
<td>Poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potes</td>
<td>Poteris</td>
<td>poteras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potest</td>
<td>Poterit</td>
<td>poterat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possumus</td>
<td>Poterimus</td>
<td>poteramus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potestis</td>
<td>Poteritis</td>
<td>poteratis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possunt</td>
<td>Poterunt</td>
<td>poterant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am able</td>
<td>I shall be able</td>
<td>I could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potui</td>
<td>Potuero</td>
<td>Potueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potuist</td>
<td>Potueris</td>
<td>Potueras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potuit</td>
<td>Potuerit</td>
<td>Potuerat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potuitus</td>
<td>Potuerimus</td>
<td>Potueramus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potuistis</td>
<td>Potueritis</td>
<td>Potueratis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potuerunt</td>
<td>Potuerint</td>
<td>potuerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have been able</td>
<td>I shall have been...</td>
<td>I had been...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**
Translate to English

1. For ten years the Greeks could not defeat the Trojans.
2. The master will not be able to write the letters.
3. The slaves could not find the school children in the garden.
4. At last the Greeks were able to build a wooden horse.
5. The soldiers were able to drag the monster into the city of Troy.
6. The small girl is afraid. She cannot read the words of the master.
7. The rich man cannot read and write.

THE INFINITIVE

Present Infinitive: In English ‘to,’ placed before a verb is a sign of the infinitive (to come, to go, to eat etc). The infinitive cannot be used as a main verb in both English and Latin. It depends on the main verb to complete its sense. “I wish to go”. “He likes to visit friends”. All infinitives are regarded as neuter gender. The present infinitive in Latin is formed by adding –re to various verb stems. Ama-re; rege-re;

Perfect Infinitive: The Perfect Infinitive is formed by adding –isse, to the perfect stem (e.g amav-) of any verb. Amav-isse - to have liked; monu-isse, to have advised; Rex-isse, to have ruled; Audivisse, to have heard. The same with the verbs ‘sum’ and ‘possum’, potu-isse – to have been able. Sum – esse – fui; fu-isse – to have been.

Prolative Infinitive: There are certain verbs which need an infinitive to complete their sense. This infinitive is called prolative, and the verb on which it depends is known as indeterminate verb. The sense is not complete without another verb.

(a) I wish to finish the work soon. Desidero mox laborem finire.
(b) My mother has decided to buy the book for me. Mater mea librum mihi emere in animo habuit (constituerat).
(c) To work is to pray. Laborare est orare.
(d) To neglect work is foolish. Neglegere opus stultum est.

The following verbs are followed by prolative infinitive.

| Possum | Posse | Potui | ------ | be able, can |
Exercises

**Translate into Latin**

(1.) We are unable to carry the statue. (2) Marcus and Sextus cannot fight. (3) We wish to help the slaves. (4) Why can’t you call the master? (5) I will not be able to come. (6) I have decided to carry the stone. (7) The master compelled the boys to sit down. (8) We ought to listen. (9) The queen wished to see the girls. (10) We have begun to read our books.

**THE IMPERATIVE**

By omitting the word ‘to’ from the present infinitive we are left with the imperative; for example, like, rule, advise, hear. The imperative is used to give command. The singular is formed by the use of the different verb stems – without any additional endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ama – like</td>
<td>Ama-te – like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mone – advise</td>
<td>Mone-te – advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rege – rule</td>
<td>Regi-te – rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audi – hear</td>
<td>Audi-te – hear, listen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When an order has to be given to more than one person, the plural of the imperative is needed. This is formed by adding –te to the singular. All ‘rego’ verbs change the final ‘e’ of the singular to ‘i’. **Dico** (say) and **duco** (lead) shorten in the singular of the imperative to **dic** and **duc** respectively.

**Exercises:**

**Write down the imperative singular and plural of** dormire, intellegere, iubere, portare.

**Translate:** veta, adhibete, constituere, emite, occide, duc.
Translate: stand up (sing), sit down (plu), praise the Lord (plu), write (plu), flee (plu), translate into latin (sing) sing & plu.

**DECLENSIONS: CASES**

Latin nouns are divided into five classes or groups called **declensions**. “He couldn’t even **decline** ‘mensa’ and claimed he made Grade ‘A’ in Latin Diploma exam”, is a familiar expression denoting complete ignorance of Latin. **Declension** (naming the cases of a word points to changes in the form of a noun, pronoun or adjective showing its relation to another word. Just as the Latin verb uses ‘endings’ to distinguish the ‘persons’ and ‘numbers’, so also the Latin noun makes use of endings called ‘CASES’ to express its most important relations to other words.

These cases are called respectively **Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Ablative**.

- Nominative case is used when the Noun is the Subject of the sentence.
- Vocative case is used in **exclamation** remarks, commands.
- Accusative case is used when the Noun is the **Direct Object** of the sentence.
- Genitive case is used to express **Possession** (of, ‘s, s’ – apostrophy ‘s’, or ‘s’ apostrophy.)
- Dative case is used for the **Indirect Object (to or for)**.
- Ablative case is used for ‘by’, ‘with’, or ‘from’.

As with the verbs, the stem remains unchanged. Only the ending changes. The first and second declensions contain nouns of all three genders – Masculine, Feminine, Neuter.

**FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS**

**Mensa - singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Mens-a</td>
<td>Table (as Subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>Mens-a</td>
<td>Oh Table! Interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Mens-am</td>
<td>Table (as Object)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Mens-ae</td>
<td>Of Table, Table’s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Mens-ae</td>
<td>‘to’ or ‘for’ Table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>Mens-a</td>
<td>‘by’, ‘with’ or ‘from’ Table</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mensae - plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Mens-ae</td>
<td>Tables (as Subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>Mens-ae</td>
<td>Oh Tables! Interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Mens-as</td>
<td>Tables (as Object)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Mens-arum</td>
<td>Of Tables, Tables’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Mens-is</td>
<td>‘to’ or ‘for’ Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>Mens-is</td>
<td>‘by’, ‘with’ or ‘from’ Tables</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another familiar and traditional first declension noun is “Insula” – Island. Learn the declension too.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Insula</td>
<td>insulae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc</td>
<td>Insula</td>
<td>insulae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Insulam</td>
<td>insulas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Insulae</td>
<td>insularum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Insulae</td>
<td>insulis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Insula</td>
<td>insulis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take note of the following nouns, which have the same endings as ‘mensa’ and ‘insula’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Patria</td>
<td>Fatherland</td>
<td>Aqua</td>
<td>Water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nauta</td>
<td>Sailor</td>
<td>Tunica</td>
<td>Tunic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puella</td>
<td>Girl</td>
<td>Scapha</td>
<td>Boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agricola</td>
<td>Farmer</td>
<td>Ancilla</td>
<td>Maid servant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vacca</td>
<td>Cow</td>
<td>Villa</td>
<td>Country house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herba</td>
<td>Grass</td>
<td>Filia</td>
<td>Girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pecunia</td>
<td>Money</td>
<td>Domina</td>
<td>lady, mistress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incola</td>
<td>Inhabitant</td>
<td>Advena</td>
<td>Stranger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insula</td>
<td>Island</td>
<td>Conviva</td>
<td>Guest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procella</td>
<td>Storm</td>
<td>Unda</td>
<td>Wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urna</td>
<td>Pitcher</td>
<td>Via</td>
<td>way, road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regina</td>
<td>Queen</td>
<td>Tabula</td>
<td>Picture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roma</td>
<td>Rome</td>
<td>Ripa</td>
<td>river bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epistula</td>
<td>Letter</td>
<td>Hasta</td>
<td>Spear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sapientia</td>
<td>Wisdom</td>
<td>Regia</td>
<td>Palace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aquila</td>
<td>Eagle</td>
<td>Galea</td>
<td>Helmet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Terra The earth Cathedra Chair
Matrona Lady Sella Stool
Statua Statue Fabula Story
Lucerna Lamp Taberna Shop
Via Way Femina Woman

Important notes

(1) Most first declension nouns are feminine in gender, except a few like *agricola*, a farmer, and *nauta*, a sailor, are masculine by meaning; *incola*, an inhabitant, is common.

(2) Important list of “question/answer” words: We must learn these words now to be able to translate some simple sentences into Latin or English

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quid</td>
<td>What?</td>
<td>Quot</td>
<td>How many?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quis</td>
<td>Who?</td>
<td>Quia</td>
<td>Because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cur</td>
<td>Why?</td>
<td>Quidem</td>
<td>Indeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quo</td>
<td>Whither?</td>
<td>Quam</td>
<td>How?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quando</td>
<td>When?</td>
<td>Quamdiu</td>
<td>How long?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quoquo</td>
<td>Also</td>
<td>Quamquam</td>
<td>Although</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotiens</td>
<td>How often?</td>
<td>Non</td>
<td>Not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subito</td>
<td>Suddenly</td>
<td>Ad (+ acc)</td>
<td>Towards, to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sed</td>
<td>But</td>
<td>Prope (+acc)</td>
<td>Near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibi</td>
<td>There</td>
<td>Hic</td>
<td>Here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mox</td>
<td>Soon</td>
<td>Ubi</td>
<td>Where? When?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trans (+acc)</td>
<td>Across</td>
<td>Et</td>
<td>And</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextra</td>
<td>On the right</td>
<td>Eheu</td>
<td>Alas!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinistra</td>
<td>On the left</td>
<td>In (+acc)</td>
<td>Into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procul</td>
<td>Afar</td>
<td>Bene</td>
<td>Well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certe</td>
<td>Certainly</td>
<td>Ante (+acc)</td>
<td>Before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per (+acc)</td>
<td>Through</td>
<td>Circum (+acc)</td>
<td>Around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iam</td>
<td>Now, already</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISES AND REVISION
Students should try to master the words we have so far introduced. When translating from Latin to English always check the verb ending first.

**Exercise 1:** Dictation exercise using the lists of words we are already familiar with.
**Exercise 2:** Conjugation of lists of verbs of all Conjugations above and many more from the general vocabulary.
**Exercise 3:** Decelension of nouns already learnt.
**Exercise 4:** Parsing of some chosen words.
**Exercise 5:** Simple translation of phrases, e.g., of the boys, from the queen, to the master, etc
**Exercise 6:** Translation of sentences proper.

**Translate into English**

(1) Agricola vaccae herbam dat.
(2) Domina ancillae pecuniam dat.
(3) Villam dominae aedificamus
(4) Agricola nautae dominae villam monstrat.
(5) Cur Regina puellam amat?
(6) Quid non videmus?
(7) Cur nautas Laudavimus?
(8) Reginam semper laudavimus.
(9) In villam erant.
(10) Nautae filia scapham lavabat.

**Translate into Latin**

(1) The queen loves the island
(2) The girls are praising the sailors.
(3) The farmer likes water and money
(4) The inhabitants of the island gave water to the ladies.
(5) The maidservants are carrying water to the cows.
(6) The queen’s daughter is praising the sailors.
(7) The girls loved the sailors’ boats.
(8) The lady’s daughter is giving money to the girls.
(9) The maid is decorating the country-house of the mistress.
(10) The girls were carrying water to the country house.

**SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS**

**Important note:** Most second declension nouns end in –us and are masculine. Some others that end in –um, are neuter
### Declension of ‘Dominus’ – Lord – Master

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>domin-us</td>
<td>Domin-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc</td>
<td>domin-e</td>
<td>Domin-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>domin-um</td>
<td>Domin-os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>domin-i</td>
<td>Domin-orum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>domin-o</td>
<td>Domin-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>domin-o</td>
<td>Domin-is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Some Second declension nouns ending in –us. They are declined like “dominus’ in singular and plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amicus</td>
<td>Friend</td>
<td>Equus</td>
<td>Horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucus</td>
<td>Game, school</td>
<td>Hortus</td>
<td>Garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taurus</td>
<td>Bull</td>
<td>Fluvius</td>
<td>River</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circus</td>
<td>Circus</td>
<td>Dominus</td>
<td>lord, master</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuntius</td>
<td>Messenger</td>
<td>Lupus</td>
<td>Wolf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolus</td>
<td>Trick</td>
<td>Servus</td>
<td>Slave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legatus</td>
<td>Ambassador</td>
<td>oculus</td>
<td>Eye</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Second Declension Nouns ending in –um – Word

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Verb-um</td>
<td>Verb-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc</td>
<td>Verb-um</td>
<td>Verb-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Verb-um</td>
<td>Verb-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Verb-i</td>
<td>Verb-orum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Verb-o</td>
<td>Verb-is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Verb-o</td>
<td>Verb-is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Some Second Declesion Nouns ending in –um
They are neuter in gender

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oppidum</td>
<td>Town</td>
<td>Templum</td>
<td>Temple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vinum</td>
<td>Wine</td>
<td>Saxum</td>
<td>Rock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>Forum</td>
<td>Theatrum</td>
<td>Theatre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aurum</td>
<td>Gold</td>
<td>Argentum</td>
<td>Silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bellum</td>
<td>War</td>
<td>Monstrum</td>
<td>Monster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proelium</td>
<td>Battle</td>
<td>Auxilium</td>
<td>Help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telum</td>
<td>Weapon</td>
<td>Perculum</td>
<td>Danger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Frumentum  corn, food  plumbum  Lead, tin

**Second Declension Nouns ending in ‘er’**
Apart from second declension nouns ending in ‘-us’ and ‘-um’, there are some others that end in ‘-er’. Some are declined like ‘puer’ and retain the ‘e’, while others declined like ‘magister’ drop the ‘e’. They are all **masculine** in gender.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Puer</td>
<td>Pueri</td>
<td>Magister</td>
<td>Magistri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puer</td>
<td>Pueri</td>
<td>Magister</td>
<td>Magistri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerum</td>
<td>Pueros</td>
<td>Magistrum</td>
<td>magistros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pueri</td>
<td>Puerorum</td>
<td>Magistri</td>
<td>magistrorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerus</td>
<td>Pueris</td>
<td>Magistro</td>
<td>magistris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerus</td>
<td>Pueris</td>
<td>Magistro</td>
<td>magistris</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**A list of some second declension nouns and adjectives ending in –er**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Puer</td>
<td>Boy</td>
<td>Magister</td>
<td>Master</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ager</td>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Liber</td>
<td>Book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niger</td>
<td>Black</td>
<td>Ager</td>
<td>sick, ill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sacer</td>
<td>Sacred</td>
<td>Impiger</td>
<td>Active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulcher</td>
<td>Beautiful</td>
<td>Noster</td>
<td>Our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vester</td>
<td>Your</td>
<td>Miser</td>
<td>miserable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacer</td>
<td>Lacerated</td>
<td>Piger</td>
<td>Lazy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Practice/Application**

**Translate into Latin**
(1) The farmers have fields and gardens.
(2) The master will teach the pupils to listen and obey.
(3) The Romans were praising the women.
(4) The boys heard the words of the master.
(5) The sailors were freightening the farmers.

**ADJECTIVES**

**RECAP – ENGLISH GRAMMAR**
An adjective is a word, which qualifies or modifies a noun or a pronoun, e.g. good man, big pot, sweet orange. Students should enumerate many
adjectives they know, and show how they qualify or tell us more about the noun or pronoun:

**Proper adjective**
A proper adjective is formed from a proper noun.
- March winds
- Nigerian pilots

**Predicate adjective:**
A predicate adjective follows a linking verb and describes the subject of the sentence: The paratroopers were **brave** in the face of danger.

**Demonstrative adjective:**
When the words **this, these, that and those** modify nouns, they are called demonstrative adjectives. A demonstrative adjective points out a specific person, place, or thing. Don't confuse demonstrative adjectives and demonstrative pronouns: This book is Chika's. (demonstrative adjective)
This is Mary's mother. (Demonstrative pronoun)

**Adjectival phrases and clauses.**
Adjective can also be a group of words – phrases or clause – telling us more about the noun or pronoun. E.g. The boy sitting in the middle of the class, got the correct answer (**Adjectival phrase**). My brother, who is an engineer, is the chairman of the Construction Company. (**Adjectival clause**) The place, where the dead man is buried is near the thick forest. (**Adjectival clause**)

**Comparison of Adjectives**
Note that there are two degrees of comparison – namely **“Comparative” and “Superlative”** – e.g. (tall) – taller – tallest. Some adjectives are regular – e.g. big – bigger – biggest. Others are irregular, e.g. good – better – best; bad – worse – worst; difficult – more difficult – most difficult

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Better</td>
<td>Best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big</td>
<td>Bigger</td>
<td>Biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old</td>
<td>Older</td>
<td>Oldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Smaller</td>
<td>Smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short</td>
<td>Shorter</td>
<td>Shortest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rich</td>
<td>Richer</td>
<td>Richest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dark</td>
<td>Darker</td>
<td>Darkest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beautiful</td>
<td>More beautiful</td>
<td>Most beautiful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clever       Cleverer       Cleverest
Fast         Faster        Fastest

**Exercises**
Give the comparatives and superlatives of the following
1. Many, hot, bad, famous, little
2. Beautiful, tall, good, fast, easy
3. Handsome, much, thin, pretty
4. Long, great, clever, careful, narrow, large

**LATIN ADJECTIVES**

In Latin adjectives agree with their nouns in number (singular or plural); gender (masculine, feminine or neuter), in case (nominative, accusative etc). Generally adjectives come after the nouns they qualify. Students should always remember the three genders of each adjective. E.g. bonus – bona – bonum (bonus – a – um)

Adjectives ending in –us (bonus) are declined like ‘dominus’ and are masculine. Those ending in –a and –um are declined like ‘mensa’ and ‘verbum’ respectively and are feminine and neuter.

Adjectives can be grouped as follows:
(a) Adjectives ending in –a
(b) Adjectives ending in –us
(c) Adjectives ending in –um
(d) Adjectives ending in –er
(e) Adjectives with endings of 3rd declension nouns

(1) Adjectives ending in –a, -us, -um

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bonus</td>
<td>Bona</td>
<td>Bonum</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malus</td>
<td>Mala</td>
<td>Malum</td>
<td>Bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarus</td>
<td>Clara</td>
<td>Clarum</td>
<td>Famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fidus</td>
<td>Fida</td>
<td>Fidum</td>
<td>Faithful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gratus</td>
<td>Grata</td>
<td>Gratum</td>
<td>Pleasing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ligneus</td>
<td>Lignea</td>
<td>Ligneum</td>
<td>Wooden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latus</td>
<td>Lata</td>
<td>Latum</td>
<td>Wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Densus</td>
<td>Densa</td>
<td>Densum</td>
<td>Thick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stultus</td>
<td>Stulta</td>
<td>Stultum</td>
<td>Foolish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tutus | Tuta | Tutum | Safe
--- | --- | --- | ---
Multus | Multa | Multum | Many
Magnus | Magna | Magnum | Big

(2) Adjectives ending in –er.
Some retain the –e; others drop their –e in their declension as in second
declension nouns (puer, magister). Those declined like puer, retain
their –e. Others like ‘magister’ drop the –e.

Some adjectives declined like ‘puer’ include the following: tener
– tenera – tenerum – young, tender
miser – misera – miserum – wretched, miserable
liber – libera – liberum – free
lacer – lacera – lacerum – torn
asper – aspera – asperum – rough
tener – tenera – tenerum - tender

Adjectives declined like ‘magister’, drop their –e.
Niger – nigra – nigrum – black
Aeger – aegra – aegrum – sick, ill
Pulcher – pulchra – pulchrum – beautiful
Piger – pigra – pigrum – lazy
Impiger – impigra – impigrum – active
Sacer – sacra – sacrum – sacred
Noster – nostra – nostrum – our
Vester – vestra – vestrum - your

(3) Adjectives with endings of 3rd declension nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Felix</th>
<th>Felic-is</th>
<th>happy,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ingens</td>
<td>Ingent-is</td>
<td>Huge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Velox</td>
<td>veloc-is</td>
<td>Swift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simplex</td>
<td>simplic-is</td>
<td>Simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audax</td>
<td>Audac-is</td>
<td>Bold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sapiens</td>
<td>sapient-is</td>
<td>Wise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dives</td>
<td>Divit-is</td>
<td>Rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tristis</td>
<td>Trist-is</td>
<td>Sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omnis</td>
<td>Omnis</td>
<td>All, every</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brevis</td>
<td>Brevis</td>
<td>Short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facilis</td>
<td>Facilis</td>
<td>Easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortis</td>
<td>Fortis</td>
<td>brave, strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dificilis</td>
<td>Dificilis</td>
<td>Difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acer</td>
<td>Acris</td>
<td>keen, eager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celeber</td>
<td>Celebris</td>
<td>Famous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celer</td>
<td>Celeris</td>
<td>quick, swift</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Full Declension of felix, felic-is and ingens, ingent-is**

**Singular**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felix</td>
<td>Felix</td>
<td>Felix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felix</td>
<td>Felix</td>
<td>Felix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felicem</td>
<td>Felicem</td>
<td>Felix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felcis</td>
<td>Felic-is</td>
<td>Felcis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felici</td>
<td>Felici</td>
<td>Felici</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felici</td>
<td>Felici</td>
<td>Felici</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felices</td>
<td>Felices</td>
<td>Felicia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felices</td>
<td>Felices</td>
<td>Felicia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felices</td>
<td>Felices</td>
<td>Felicia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felicium</td>
<td>Felicium</td>
<td>felicium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felicibus</td>
<td>Felicibus</td>
<td>Felicibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felicibus</td>
<td>Felicibus</td>
<td>felicibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ingens, ingentis – huge**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingens</td>
<td>Ingens</td>
<td>Ingens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingens</td>
<td>Ingens</td>
<td>ingens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentem</td>
<td>Ingentem</td>
<td>ingens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentis</td>
<td>Ingentis</td>
<td>ingentis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingenti</td>
<td>Ingenti</td>
<td>ingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingenti</td>
<td>Ingenti</td>
<td>ingenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentes</td>
<td>Ingentes</td>
<td>Ingentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentes</td>
<td>Ingentes</td>
<td>Ingentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentes</td>
<td>Ingentes</td>
<td>Ingentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentium</td>
<td>Ingentium</td>
<td>ingentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentibus</td>
<td>Ingentibus</td>
<td>ingentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingentibus</td>
<td>Ingentibus</td>
<td>ingentibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Agreement of adjectives with nouns

Students should take note of the following rules.
(1) An adjective agrees with its noun in number, gender and case.
(2) When a sentence contains two or more subjects of different genders, the adjective agrees with the masculine rather than the feminine, and with the feminine rather than the neuter: Puer et puella boni sunt. The boy and the girl are good. (masc and nominative plural). Rex noster et regina divites sunt. Our king and queen are rich.

Person of the verb
(1) When a sentence contains two or more subjects of different persons, the verb agrees with the first rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third person. The verb is always plural.
(2) Of two or more subjects, ego is always put first. Ego et tu insulam amamus. You and I love the island. In English ‘I’ comes second.
(3) When several third person subjects are united, the verb may be written in the singular agreeing with one subject only. Nunc nec castra nec milites nec oppidum me custodit. Now neither camp, nor soldiers, not (even) the town protect me.

Exercises
(1) Decline together in full, singular and plural: beautiful girl, small boy, black horse, good master, wooden picture, our town, sacred temple, huge temple, happy girl, wise lord, swift horse, simple way, famous school master, happy boy.
(2) Translate into Latin: Our teacher loves beautiful girls. The girl showed the way to the sailor. The boy has carried the big table to the queen. Little boys fear big horses.

Possessive Adjectives
Meus – mea – meum – my, mine
Tuus – tua – tuum – your, yours
Suus – sua – suum – his, hers, its, their
Noster – nostra – nostrum – our, ours
Vester – vestra – vestrum – your, yours
The possessive adjective is usually placed after its noun e.g “Pater Noster” - Our Father

**Rule (1): Suus** can only be used when it refers to the subject of the clause in which it occurs. The king prises his soldiers – *Rex milites suos laudat*. The father praises his son – *Pater suum filium laudat*.

**Rule (2):** When his, her, its or theirs do not stand for the subject of the sentence, the words *eius, eorum, earum* are used. I praise her daughters. *Eius filias laudo*. Caesar and his friends. *Caesar et eius amicus*.

**Rule (3):** To find out whether *suus* or *eius* would apply; if the possessive adjective would mean ‘that person’s (thing), use *eius*. E.g. Praise her daughter = “that woman’s ... ‘eius’

**Exercises**
**Give the correct endings to the words in brackets:**

1. Via est (longus) et (rectus)
2. Incolae sunt (asper) (harsh, rough)
3. Quando eritis (paratus), puellae?
4. Caelum est (niger).
5. Puella est (pulcher).
7. Quem spectas? (Nauta) specto.
8. Trans (fluvius) liberi ambulant.
10. Graeci (equus magnus) in oppido portabant.

**Translate into English and comment on the bold words.**
1. Pueri matrem suam laudant.
2. Puella aegra est; eius mater tristis est.
3. Dux milites laudat; liberi eorum pecuniam dat.
4. In horto sunt multae arbores; earum fructus bonus est.
5. Dux suos laudat.
6. Homo stultissimus sua semper laudat.
7. Insula est magna; incolae eius sunt nautae.
8. Stulti verba sua amant.

**Translate into Latin**
1. My brothers always praise their friends.
2. The girl loves her mother and her father.
3. The hunter wounds the lion with his spear.
4. The slave loves his children.
5. The boys and their companions are bold and brave.
6. The master wants to punish his pupils.
7. The general desires to overcome Caesar’s forces.
8. The Romans defeated their enemies in the battle.
The Pronominal Adjectives – Alius and Alter

Alius, Alia, Aluid, other

Singular & Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>alia</th>
<th>aluid</th>
<th>Alii</th>
<th>aliae</th>
<th>alia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>Alius</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>Alios</td>
<td>alias</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alii</td>
<td>alii</td>
<td>alii</td>
<td>Alii</td>
<td>alii</td>
<td>alia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alio</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alio</td>
<td>Aliis</td>
<td>alii</td>
<td>alis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like alius are declined: -

Ullus, ulla, ullum – any
Nonnullus, nonnulla, nonnullum – some, several
Nullus, nulla, nullum – none, no
Solus, sola, solum – sole, alone
Totus, tota, totum – whole
Unus, una, unum – one

Notes: (1) Alius, other, implies ‘any other’: alii = others.
(2) Reliqui or ceteri are used to express the others, i.e. definite people or things. In enumeration alii...alii, some ......others. Example: Alii Romam, alii Carthaginem, alii Athenas navigabant. Some were sailing to Rome, some to Carthage, and others to Athens.
(3) There is important expression (idiom); alii alia dicunt – some say one thing, some another, i.e., different people say different things.

Alter, altera, alterum, the other (of two things)
Singular (the plural is rare)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Altera</th>
<th>alterum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alter</td>
<td>Altera</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alterum</td>
<td>Alteram</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alterius</td>
<td>Alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alteri</td>
<td>Alteri</td>
<td>alteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altero</td>
<td>Altera</td>
<td>altero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like ‘alter’ are declined

Neuter, neutra, neutrum – neither (of two)
Uter, utra, utrum – which? (of two)
Uterque, utraque, utrumque - both
Alter venit, alter excedit – The one comes; the other goes
Uter rex veniet – Which of the two kings will come?
Utraque puella excessit – Both the girls have gone.

COMPARISON OF LATIN ADJECTIVES

As in English, Latin uses three degrees of comparison, Positive, Comparative and Superlative. Both English and Latin employ three methods of forming comparisons.

Type 1: by addition of suffix –ior, issimus
Longus – longior – longissimus - long
Long – longer - longest

Type 2: by addition of adverbs, magis – more; maxime, most
Idoneus – magis idoneus – maxime idoneus
Suitable – more suitable – most suitable

Type 3; by changing the form of the positive into another word (Irregular comparison)
Bonus – melior – optimus - Good – better – best
Magnus – maior – maximus – Big – bigger – biggest
mūrus est altus
domus est altior
templum est altissimum

domus est altior quam mūrus.
templum est altius quam domus.
templum est altissimum omnium.

Marcī harundō est longa.
Sextī harundō est longior.
Aemiliī harundō est longissima.

Sextus harundinem longiorēm habet quam Marcus.
Aemilius harundinem longiorem habet quam Sextus.
Sextī harundō longior est quam Marci.
Aemiliī harundō longior est quam Sextī.
Aemilius harundinem longissimam habet.

Hylax est acer et celer.
Lacō est acerius et celerius
Vēlōx est acerissimus et celerissimus.
Some Irregular comparisons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magnus</td>
<td>Great</td>
<td>Maior</td>
<td>Maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parvus</td>
<td>Small</td>
<td>Minor</td>
<td>Minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bonus</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Melior</td>
<td>Optimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malus</td>
<td>Bad</td>
<td>Peior</td>
<td>Pessimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multus</td>
<td>Much</td>
<td>Plus</td>
<td>Plurimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi</td>
<td>Many</td>
<td>Plures</td>
<td>Plurimi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some mixed comparisons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clarus</th>
<th>Famous</th>
<th>Clarior</th>
<th>Clarissimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fortis</td>
<td>Brave</td>
<td>Fortior</td>
<td>Fortissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audax</td>
<td>Bold</td>
<td>Audacior</td>
<td>Audacissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acer</td>
<td>Keen</td>
<td>Acrior</td>
<td>Acerrimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celer</td>
<td>Swift</td>
<td>Celerior</td>
<td>Celerrimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficils</td>
<td>Difficult</td>
<td>Difficillior</td>
<td>Difficillimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiquus</td>
<td>Old</td>
<td>Antiquior</td>
<td>Antiquissimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vetus</td>
<td>Old</td>
<td>Vetustior</td>
<td>Veterrimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recapitulation

Translation of the comparative and superlative

**Comparative:** By the addition of the suffix **–er** to the English Positive, by the use of more, or a change of word.

**Superlative:** By the addition of the suffix **–est** to the English Positive, or by the Adverbs **most, very** etc.

Sometimes, especially when an Adjective is used to accompany a proper noun in English, the superlative is written in Latin e.g. **Caesar, vir fortissimos, Gallos vicit.** Brave Caesar has conquered the Gauls.
DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

The comparative is declined as follows, with the exception of plus.

**Melior – better** - sing & plu

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc, Fem</th>
<th>Neut</th>
<th>Masc, Fem</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

domains Galli est bonus. Gallus dominum bonum habet.
dominus Lydi est melior. Lydus dominum meliorem habet.
dominus Syri est optimus. Syrus dominum optimum habet.
servus Valerii est malus. Valerius servum malum habet.
servus Corneli est peior. Cornelius servum peiorum habet.
servus Aemili est pessimus. Aemilius servum pessimum habet.

Sextus celeriter currit.
Publius celerius currit. celerius currit quam Sextus.
Marcus celerimus currit. celerius currit quam Publius et Sextus.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Melior</th>
<th>Melius</th>
<th>Meliores</th>
<th>Meliora</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meliorem</td>
<td>Melius</td>
<td>Meliores</td>
<td>Meliora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melioris</td>
<td>Melioris</td>
<td>Meliorum</td>
<td>Meliorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meliori</td>
<td>Meliori</td>
<td>Melioribus</td>
<td>Melioribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meliore</td>
<td>Meliore</td>
<td>Melioribus</td>
<td>Melioribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Declension of Plus – More**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masc &amp; Fem</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus</td>
<td>Plures</td>
<td>Plura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus</td>
<td>Plures</td>
<td>Plura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluris</td>
<td>Plurium</td>
<td>Plurium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>Pluribus</td>
<td>Pluribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plure</td>
<td>Pluribus</td>
<td>Pluribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

In the singular plus is a noun and its gender is neuter. In the plural plus is an adjective with all three genders.

**Use of Plus – Partitive Genitive**

When the words **much, more, most** (meaning **quantity, food, money etc**), are used with a noun, in the singular number, the neuter nouns **multum, plus, plurimum** are used, with the dependent noun in the **genitive**. Much money – **multum pecuniae**. The genitive used with words of this kind is called **Partitive Genitive** because it means a part of the thing spoken of.

With plural nouns the words **many, more, most**, are treated as adjectives agreeing with their nouns in every way. More bravery – **plus fortitudo**. More daughters – **Plures filiae**. Mihi **plus cibi da**. Give me more food. The partitive genitive is also used after the following indeclinable words: **satis - enough; nimis - too much; parum – too little**. In the plural plus agrees with its noun in number, gender and case, e.g. **Plures milites video**. I see more soldiers.

**Exercises**

(1) Give the comparative of: brevis, latus, celeber, sapiens, pulcher.
(2) Give the superlative of: antiquus, audax, fortis, felix, dives.
(3) Compare in full, with the English of the positive: celer, miser, longus, similes, nobilis.
(4) Decline together in the singular only: animal velocius. Decline together in the plural only: urbs pulcherrima.
(5) Translate: (a) He has too little wisdom. (b) We shall have more books tomorrow. (c) Very many sailors. (d) More flowers (e) Many islands (f) Much wisdom.

**NUMERALS - ROMAN - ARABIC**

**Cardinal** numerals tell how many, e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4.... **Ordinals** tell in which order as 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th.....

Memorize the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SR</th>
<th>Roman</th>
<th>Cardinals</th>
<th>Ordinals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Unus</td>
<td>Primus –a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Duo</td>
<td>Secundus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Tres</td>
<td>Tertius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Quattuor</td>
<td>Quartus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Quinque</td>
<td>Quintus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Sex</td>
<td>Sextus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>VII</td>
<td>Septem</td>
<td>Septimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>Octo</td>
<td>Octavus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>IX</td>
<td>Novem</td>
<td>Nonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Decem</td>
<td>Decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>XI</td>
<td>Undecim</td>
<td>Undecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>XII</td>
<td>Duodecim</td>
<td>Duodecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>XIII</td>
<td>Tredecim</td>
<td>Tertius decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>XIV</td>
<td>Quattuordecim</td>
<td>Quartus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>XV</td>
<td>Quindecim</td>
<td>Quintus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>XVI</td>
<td>Sedecim</td>
<td>Sextus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>XVII</td>
<td>Septendecim</td>
<td>Septimus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>XVIII</td>
<td>Duodeviginti</td>
<td>Duodevicesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>XIX</td>
<td>Undeviginti</td>
<td>Undevicesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>Viginti</td>
<td>Vicesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>XXX</td>
<td>Triginta</td>
<td>Tricesimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>XL</td>
<td>Quadraginta</td>
<td>Quadragensimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Quinquaginta</td>
<td>Quinquagensimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>LX</td>
<td>Sexaginta</td>
<td>Sexagensimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Students should take further note of the following Roman/Arabic numerals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>One</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Forty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Fifty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>One hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Five hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>One thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Three hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Three hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Two hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XL</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Forty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Fifty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>One hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Five hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>One thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXX</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Seventy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LXXX</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Eighty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XC</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>Ninety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>One hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCC</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Three hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCCC</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Six hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>Six hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC</td>
<td>700</td>
<td>Seven hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCCC</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>Nine hundred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>One thousand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Two thousand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In modern Latin studies, students should be able to ‘translate’ into Arabic numerals (or ‘decode’) the dates and old inscriptions in Roman numerals which are still found on stones, epitaphs, Church documents and marbles. Some of these are still familiar to us.

Examples

VIII = 8
XIII = 13
XV = 15
LX = 60
LXV = 65
XC = 90
XCV = 95
XCII = 92
IC = 99
D = 500
DC = 600
XXXIX = 39
DCCCC OR CM = 900
M = 1000
MC = 1100
MCD = 1400
MDC = 1600
MDCLXVI = 1666
MDCCCLXXXVIII = 1888
MDCCCXCIX = 1899
MCM = 1900
MCMLXXVI = 1976
MM = 2000
MMX = 2010

Mathematical Approach to “reading” the figures

(a.) [Addition] A letter placed after another letter of greater value, adds. Example: VI = 5 + 1 = 6
(b.) [Subtraction] A letter placed before a letter of greater value, subtracts. Example: IV = 5 – 1 = 4

Write out in Roman figures (showing work, mathematically), the following numbers

(a) 256
200 = CC
50 = L
6 = VI
Therefore 256 = CCLVI

(b.) 1785
1000 = M
700 = 500 + 200 = DCC
80 = 50 + 30 = LXXX
5 = V
Therefore 1785 = MDCCCLXXXV

(c.) 2010

2000 = MM
10 = X

Therefore 2010 = MMX

Write out the following Roman figures in Arabic

(1.) MC  (2) MCD  (3) MDC  (4) MDCLXVI  (5) MDCCCLXXXVIII  
(6) MCM  (7) MCMLXXVI  (8) MM

What is MDCCCLXXXVII? Show work!

M = 1000
D = 500
CCC = 300
L = 50
XXX = 30
V = 5
II = 2

Add up: 1000 + 500 + 300 + 50 + 30 + 5 + 2 = 1887

What is MDCLVXVI?
1000 + 500 + 100 + 55 + V + 1 = 1671

Exercises [A]

(1) What are the following dates in Roman figures (1) 1956 (2) 1879 (3) 1734 (4) 2015 (5) 1298 (6) 1946?
(2) Saint Mary’s Seminary Umuowa, Orlu was established in 1961. Write this date of the foundation of the seminary in Roman numeral.
(3) The seminary clocked 50 years in 2011! What are these figures in Roman numerals?
(4) Saint Peter Claver Seminary Okpala was founded in the year 1942. What is this date in Roman numerals?

[B]
(1) The oldest Catholic Church East of the Niger was built in the year MDCCCXC. What does this stand for?
(2) Our rector was ordained priest in Rome by His Holiness Pope Paul VI in the year MCMLXXV. “Translate” these figures for an ordinary parishioner.
(3) Saint Joseph's Catholic Church was dedicated by the Bishop, the Local Ordinary in the early two thousand. One finds this inscription MMIV on the marble stone of the Church. In what year was that Church dedicated?

Notes:
(1) Milia is a neuter noun of the 3rd declension, meaning thousands. Its declension is milia, milia, milium, milibus, milibus
(2) Mille is an indeclinable adjective meaning a thousand.
(3) Milia, being a noun, must be followed by a genitive. As it means ‘thousands’, it can only be used to denote a number larger than one thousand. For example: Tria millia passuum – Three miles (literally, three thousands of paces). Mille milites – A thousand soldiers. Quattuor milia militum – four thousand soldiers.
(4) In compound numbers above one hundred, the larger one comes first with or without et: ducenti et tres, or ducenti tres – two hundred and three.

Exercises
Translate into English
(1) Tria milia hostium illa nocte, qua e castris nostris profecti sumus, aut fugerunt aut a nos in deditionem accepti sunt.
(2) Nostri, postquam eorum castris potiti sunt, trecentos et quinquaginta obsides postulaverunt.

ADVERBS

Recap: English Grammar
An adverb is a word, which modifies (describes) or adds meaning to a verb. For example: slowly, quickly, loudly, gradually. The children are singing loudly. The old man is walking slowly. The athlete is running quickly. Sometimes adverbs modify adjectives or other adverbs – The house is very (adverb) dirty (adjective). The pupil recited the poem quite (adverb) easily (adverb).
Most adverbs are formed from corresponding Adjectives by adding ‘ly’ – happy - happily, serious - seriously, angry - angrily, bold – boldly.

We can easily identify adverbs in sentences by asking the question - how, when or where a thing happened. Examples: When did he return? Yesterday. Where will he keep the book? There! How did it rain? Heavily.

Kinds of adverbs

1. **Time** – now, then, yesterday, last week, tomorrow
2. **Place** – here, there, inside, outside
3. **Manner** – quickly, happily, rudely, easily, well
4. **Degree** – very, much, so much, rather, almost, only
5. **Result or reason** – so that, therefore, hence
6. **Number** – once, twice, thrice.
7. **Adverbs of affirmation** – yes, certainly
8. **Adverbs of negation** – no, not

Adverbs modifying verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERBS</th>
<th>ADVERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wait</td>
<td>Patiently, anxiously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep</td>
<td>Soundly, noisily, loudly, softly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Act</td>
<td>Quickly, suddenly,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answered</td>
<td>Correctly, immediately,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat</td>
<td>Hungrily, greedily, quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bow</td>
<td>Humbly, respectfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charge</td>
<td>Furiously, desperately, bravely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleed</td>
<td>Profusely, slightly,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creep</td>
<td>Quietly, softly, silently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain</td>
<td>Briefly, clearly, vaguely, concisely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smile</td>
<td>Broadly. Happily, mournfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spend</td>
<td>Foolishly, recklessly, freely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speak</td>
<td>Distinctly, loudly, clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ponder</td>
<td>Deeply, seriously, thoughtfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mumble</td>
<td>Angrily, inaudibly, indistinctly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pull</td>
<td>Hastily, strongly, vigorously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring</td>
<td>Quickly, suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stagger</td>
<td>Awkwardly, drunkenly, weakly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremble</td>
<td>Fearfully, frightfully, visibly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frown</td>
<td>Angrily, worriedly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing</td>
<td>Sweetly, loudly, softly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shout</td>
<td>Loudly, jubilantly, joyfully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remember</td>
<td>Clearly, faintly, distinctly,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Hurriedly, quickly, rapidly, slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flog</td>
<td>Brutally, cruelly, mercilessly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creep</td>
<td>Quietly, softly, silently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fight</td>
<td>Bravely, gallantly, furiously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warn</td>
<td>Sternly, harshly, strictly, severely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scold</td>
<td>Severely, cruelly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reprimand</td>
<td>Harshly, sternly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injure</td>
<td>Fatally, seriously, slightly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lose</td>
<td>Badly, heavily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listen</td>
<td>Attentively, carefully, anxiously</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**EXERCISES**

Complete the following sentences with the **most suitable** adverb.

1. The boy who lost his money wept ..........
2. The women quarrelled ......................
3. The children listened ...................to the story
4. The mother warned the children ...........
5. The baby slept ....when the mother was away
6. The greedy boy ate..........................
7. The choir sang..............................
8. The pastor preached.......................
9. The orator spoke...........to the audience
10. The injured player walked out of the field........
11. The teacher spoke ......to the boy who broke the windows and doors.
12. The master listened ...to the long and boring story.
13. The child crept .....................towards the fire.
14. Many parents speak ............to their children.
15. My brother replied ...................to my request for pocket money and new school uniform.

**Formation of Adverbs from Adjectives in Latin**

**Notes:**

1. Most adjectives ending in **-us** (positives and superlatives) form adverbs by changing **-us** to long **-e**; **avarus** – greedy; **avare** – greedily; **celerrimus**, **celerrimus** – **celerrime** – very quickly.
(2) Most comparatives in -ior use the neuter in -ius as adverbs: celerior, quicker; celerius, more quickly.
(3) Like adjectives, comparative adverbs have several meanings: celerius, more quickly, too quickly, rather quickly.
(4) Third declension adjectives form adverbs ending in -iter or -ter: fortis, brave; fortiter, bravely; prudens, prudent; prudenter, prudently.

Comparison of Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pulchre</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celeriter</td>
<td>celerius</td>
<td>celerime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PREPOSITION

Recap: English Grammar

A preposition is a word or a phrase in a clause, or sentence, which indicates the relationship between nouns, verbs, and adjectives. The most frequently used prepositions are - at, by, for, near, from, in, of, on, to, with, between. Others (the so-called compound prepositions) are - together with, ahead of, up to, away from, because of, apart from, in spite of, in addition to, in front of, in place of, with regard to, instead of, as regards, in case of, as means of, for the sake of.

Exercises

Students should endeavour to use these prepositions in sentence construction to make their meanings and places clear. They should take note of the following prepositions, which are often misused:

1. Wait (for) – I am waiting for my brother and also for a present from my sister and her friend.
2. Rely (on) – I always rely on God’s mercy.
4. Conscious (of) - The governor is always conscious of his shortcomings.
5. Aim (at) – The woman aimed the bitter words at his wayward daughter.
6. Ashamed (of) – Most parents are ashamed of their children who misbehave in school.
7. Agree (with) – Emeka agreed with Chika to sweep the old woman’s house and wash her clothes.
8. Agree (to) – The two boys agreed to help any needy and sick people in their village.
9. Regard (for) – John despises people. He has no regard even for his parents.
10. Regard (to) – With regard to our last discussion, I hope to send the tools to the mechanic.
11. Divide (among – more than two) – All the students divided the oranges among themselves.
12. Divide (between – two individuals) Peter and John divided the apples between themselves.

**Prepositions used with the accusative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ad</td>
<td>To, towards, at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ante</td>
<td>Before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apud</td>
<td>At, near, among</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circa</td>
<td>Around</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contra</td>
<td>Against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extra</td>
<td>Outside of, without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intra</td>
<td>Within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iuxta</td>
<td>Next to, beside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ob</td>
<td>On account of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per</td>
<td>Through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pone</td>
<td>Behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post</td>
<td>After, behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prope</td>
<td>Near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propter</td>
<td>On account of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secundum</td>
<td>According to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supra</td>
<td>Above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trans</td>
<td>Across</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ultra</td>
<td>Beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Versus, versum</td>
<td>Towards, in the direction of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prepositions used with the ablative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A, ab</td>
<td>By, from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absque</td>
<td>Without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coram (te)</td>
<td>In the presence of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cum</td>
<td>With, together with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De</td>
<td>From, concerning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E or ex</td>
<td>Out of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pro | Before, on behalf of  
Sine | Without  
Tenus | As far as  

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

(a) Recap – 1st & 2nd declension nouns
(b) We have to take note of the following characteristics of the third declension nouns.

(1) The ending (-is) is the same in every third declension noun and this is the genitive singular of each noun.
(2) Cut off the ending –is, what remains is the ‘stem’. Third declensions nouns have many different endings in the nominative singular. For example: pax, opus, pater, animal etc
(3) Third declension nouns have different stems for various nouns, e.g. pax – pac-is; rex – reg-is.
(4) Learn the genitive singular and gender of each third declension noun at the same time, e.g. pater – patris; vox – vocis. It is strongly recommened that students should always memorize, enunciate (pronounce, vocalize) the nominative case of the third declension nouns together with the genitive singular. These, together with their genders should always be learnt by heart! It is not enough to know that pax means peace. It is important to learn by heart “pax, pac-is, f” = peace.

Declension of rex – reg-is (king), m; vox – voc-is (voice), f.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rex</th>
<th>Reg-es</th>
<th>Vox</th>
<th>Voc-es</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rex</td>
<td>Reg-es</td>
<td>Vox</td>
<td>Voc-es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reg-em</td>
<td>Reg-es</td>
<td>Voc-em</td>
<td>Voc-es</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reg-is</td>
<td>Reg-um</td>
<td>Voc-is</td>
<td>Voc-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reg-i</td>
<td>Reg-ibus</td>
<td>Voc-i</td>
<td>Voc-ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reg-e</td>
<td>Reg-ibus</td>
<td>Voc-e</td>
<td>Voc-ibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some third declension nouns

C = common gender (a man or a woman can be a judge or a leader.) M = masculine. F = feminine. N = neuter gender – neither a man nor a woman. Hence a ‘thing’;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom</th>
<th>gen sing</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dux</td>
<td>duc-is</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>J eader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iudex</td>
<td>Iudic-is</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>J udge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pax</td>
<td>pac-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lux</td>
<td>luc-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radix</td>
<td>Radic-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grex</td>
<td>Greg-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remix</td>
<td>Remig-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>R ower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coniunx</td>
<td>coniung-is</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>husband/wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lex</td>
<td>Leg-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pater</td>
<td>Patr-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>F ather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frater</td>
<td>Fratr-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>B rother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soror</td>
<td>Soror-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S ister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sol</td>
<td>Sol-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>T he sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fur</td>
<td>Fur-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>T hief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orator</td>
<td>orator-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>S peaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gladiator</td>
<td>gladiator-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>G ladiator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mercator</td>
<td>mercator-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M erchant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vesper</td>
<td>vesper-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E vening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulier</td>
<td>mulier-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>W oman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exsul</td>
<td>Exsul-is</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>a n exile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aequor</td>
<td>aequor-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>T he sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ver</td>
<td>ver-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>S pring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aestas</td>
<td>Aestat-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>S ummer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Princeps</td>
<td>princip-is</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C hief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consul</td>
<td>consul-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>C onsul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nox</td>
<td>Noct-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>N ight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homo</td>
<td>homin-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nomen</td>
<td>nomin-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N ame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordo</td>
<td>Ordin-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M ethod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latro</td>
<td>Latron-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>R obber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legio</td>
<td>Legion-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>a l egi on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortitude</td>
<td>fortitudin-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>C ourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virgo</td>
<td>Virgin-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>g irl, unmarried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occasion</td>
<td>occasion-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>O pportunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sermo</td>
<td>sermon-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>T alk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flumen</td>
<td>flumin-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>R iver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certamen</td>
<td>certamin-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>C ontest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discrime</td>
<td>discrimin-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>C risis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omen</td>
<td>Omin-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>s ign, omen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nomen</td>
<td>nomin-is</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civitas</td>
<td>civitatis</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Libertas</td>
<td>libertat-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Freedom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celeritas</td>
<td>celeritatis</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Speed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pes</td>
<td>Ped-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civis</td>
<td>Civis</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Citizen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbis</td>
<td>Orbis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Circle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piscis</td>
<td>Piscis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostis</td>
<td>Hostis</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navis</td>
<td>Navis</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignis</td>
<td>Ignis</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juvenis</td>
<td>Juvenis</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>A youth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caedes</td>
<td>Caed-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Massacre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clades</td>
<td>Clad-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>defeat, disaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nubes</td>
<td>Nub-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imber</td>
<td>imbr-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linter</td>
<td>Lintr-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urbs</td>
<td>Urb-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mons</td>
<td>Mont-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Hill, mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fons</td>
<td>Font-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Fountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pars</td>
<td>Part-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arx</td>
<td>Arc-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Citadel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ars</td>
<td>Art-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Art, skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mors</td>
<td>Mort-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pons</td>
<td>pont-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dens</td>
<td>Dent-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senex</td>
<td>sen-is</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>an old man</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falx</td>
<td>falc-is</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>knife, sickle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mare</td>
<td>Mar-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal</td>
<td>animal-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rete</td>
<td>Ret-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>A net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedile</td>
<td>sedil-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>A seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cubile</td>
<td>Cubil-is</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Couch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Declension of: Homo – hominis (man.)** as distinguished from a god or an animal – human being; ‘Vir’ - man, as distinguished from a woman or a child – an adult male. (b) Nomen, nominis – name (n) (c) Corpus, corporis – body (n)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Homo</td>
<td>Corpus</td>
<td>Nomen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Declension of Jupiter and senex, an old man (m)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Iuppiter, Jupiter</th>
<th>Senex (sing)</th>
<th>Senex (plu)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
<td>Senex</td>
<td>Senes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iovem</td>
<td>Senem</td>
<td>Senes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iovis</td>
<td>Senis</td>
<td>Senum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iove</td>
<td>Seni</td>
<td>Senibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>sene</td>
<td>Senibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Recap: Negatives**
- Numquam – never
- Nusquam – nowhere
- Umquam – ever
- Usquam – anywhere
- Ullus – any
- Neque umquam – and never
- Neque usquam – and nowhere
- Neque ullus – and no, and none

**Exercises (1): Put into Latin**
- to the famous king; good companions; great soldier; a famous chief; many kings; to the good kings; for the strong leaders; a small light; a wise judge; of timid judges

**Translate**: The leader’s sword does not frighten the judge. The good boy is not terrified by the soldiers. The farmers praised the wise judge.

**Exercises (3) Decline in singular and plural**: sermo bonus, aestas grata, certamen magnum, oratio longus, homo malus, omen bonus.
(4) Give the genitive singular and the accusative plural of:
comes, laus, obsess, virtus, honor, lapis, caput, soror, hospes.

(5) Translate: pedum, cum militibus, capiti, salute, labores, comitem,
laudum, meis comitibus, cum meis comitibus, milites nostri.

(6) Translate (a) Marcus bonus neque umquam perfidus est.
(b) Vir malus est neque domino paruit.
(c.) Publum non video, neque uli pueri hic sunt.
(d) Nec socios pecuniam habent Poeni.
(e) Nautas non videmus, neque uli milites in oppido sunt.

(7) Translate (a) Ego, quia salus tua mihi grata est, te iuvere tentabo.
(b) Noli, mi fili, custodi perfido parere.
(c.) Tune in memoriam fabulam de magistro Faleriorum revocas.
(d) “Densa arborem umbra est,” inquit, “et ego in silvis dormiam.”
(e) Quotiens hospitem nostrum contra pirates proteimus, neque ullum
aurum in nostrum oppidum portavit!
(e) Quot lectos in triclinio servos reliquere iubebis!

EXPRESSİON OF TIME

There are three different kinds of ‘time’ expressions:

(1) HOW LONG: Accusative – Tres horas laborabant. They were
working for three hours. Tres annos hic manebat. He was there for three
years.

(2) WHEN: Ablative: Me prima hora videbit – He will see me at the
first hour.

(3) WITHIN WHICH: Ablative: Quattuor horis me relinquet – He
will leave me in four hours. Multis annis ad Italiam non navigavit.
For many years he has not sailed to Italy.

Some useful phrases of ‘time’:

(1) Decem annos natus est – He is ten years old. (Lit., He has been
born for ten years).
(2) Abhinc quattuor annos – Four years ago. (Abhinc comes first).
(3) Quattuor post annis – Four years afterwards. (Post usually in the
middle).
(4) Quattuor ante annis – Four years before (Ante usually in the
middle.)

EXERCISES

Translate into English
(a) Multos annos in Italia habitaverimus.
(b) Paucis annis te videbo.
(c) Quinque horis ad nos veniet.
(d) Ego anno sexto ad Graeciam navigavit.
(e) Prima luce excedere in animo habemus. (daybreak).

Translate into Latin
(a) We shall stay here for seven hours.
(b) The boy is coming at the seventh hour.
(c) They will come at daybreak.
(d) In four hours I shall have set the slaves free.
(e) I have not sailed to Greece for nine years.

Translate into English
(1) Multum pecuniae mihi da, quia anseres amici mei cras emere in animo habeo.
(2) Cur foedus Romanorum non laudaveris. (foedus = treaty).
(3) Milites nostri in oppidum contendere potuerunt.
(4) Amicus meus decimo anno multum thesauri in Africa inveniet. (thesaurus = treasure, treasure-house).
(5) Nolite, pueri mei vestro malo magistro parere sed me nunc audite. (pareo, -ere, parui, paritum = obey).
(6) Hospitum nostrorum salutem numquam nos neglegere debemus.
(7) Nonne nostro in oppido quinque annos manebitis?
(8) Num vos ex oppido prima luce excedere poteritis.

THE SUPINE

We now come to the last principal part of the verb, the **Supine**. The supine usually ends in -um: amatum, monitum, rectum, auditum, meaning ‘a loving’, ‘an advising’, ‘a ruling’, ‘a hearing’. But strickly speaking the supine is used to translate an English **infinitive of purpose (in order to …)** into Latin in a main verb of motion.

*Milites monitum cives venerunt.* The soldiers came in order to warn the citizens. *Pueri e ludo auditum oratorem currunt.* The boys are running from school to hear (in order to) the orator. We will see other uses of the supine as we move ahead.

THE PARTICIPLE

**Take note of the following:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pre. Par</th>
<th>Fut</th>
<th>Perf. part</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supero</td>
<td>Superans</td>
<td>Superatus</td>
<td>superatus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Doceo | Docens | Docturus | Doctus
---|---|---|---
Capio | Capiens | Capturus | Captus
Audio | Audiens | Auditurus | Auditus
Dico | Dicens | Dicturus | Dictus

PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

In English the present participle of any verb is formed by adding –ing; come – coming, carry – carrying, love – loving, give – giving etc.

In Latin the present participle of the four regular conjugations is formed by adding –ns to the verb stem. Ama-ns – liking, loving; mone-ns – advising; rege-ns – ruling; audie-ns – hearing.

All present participles are declined like ingens, ingentis of third declension and are frequently used as Adjectives. Take note of the following – writing table, crying child, coming season, sleeping dog.

Examples: (a) Puer dormiens in villa est. The sleeping boy is in the villa. (b) Mater pueri dormientis aquam agricola portabat. The mother of the sleeping boy was carrying water to the farmer. (c) Cives ad pugnantes milites currebant. The citizens were running towards the fighting soldiers. (d) Regens regina hostes ex urbe expellebat (expulit). The reigning queen expelled the enemies (from) out of the city. (e) Illa in caverna habitans consulentibus response ambigua dabat. She, living in a cave, gave obscure replies to those who consulted her (lit. ‘to people consulting her’) “Habitans” (nom, sing, fem) and consulentibus (dat, plu, fem) are examples of the present participle active, like illa to which it refers.

FUTURE PARTICIPLE AND THE SUPINE

The Future Participle Active is formed by changing the final –um of the Supine to –urus. It is of the 1st and 2nd Declensions and is declined like bonus.

amaturus – about to love.....is going to......
habiturus – about to have
ducturus – about to lead
auditurus – about to hear

- The girl is going to walk (about to) into the wood. Puella in silva ambulatura est. The soldiers were about to descend on to the plain.

- Intraturum me cepit pavor ingens. As I was about to enter great terror seized me. (lit. ‘great terror seized me about to enter.) Intraturum is the accusative case of the future participle active of intrare.
PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE AND THE SUPINE

The Perfect Parciple Passive is formed by changing the final -um of the Supine to -us. It is declined like bonus.

portatus – having been carried
habitūs – having been had
ductus – having been led.
auditus – having been heard.

-Antonius, ad Actium superatus, se interfecit. Anthony, beaten at Actium, killed himself. Superatus, beaten or having been beaten, is the perfect participle passive of superare.
- Galli, ab Romanīs superati, obsides Caesari dederant. The Gauls, defeated by the Romans gave hostages to Casesar.

Note:
(a) Remember the rule: All participles are declinable and being Adjectives must agree with their Noun or Pronoun (either expressed or understood) in Number, Gender and Case.
(b) Learn the supine of every verb together with the other 4 principal parts.

Supero – superare – superavi – superatum – defeat
Doceo – docere – docui – doctum – teach
Capio – capere – cepi – captum – take, capture
Audio – audire – audivi – auditum – hear
Eo – ire – ivi – itum – go
Ferro – ferre – tuli – latum – bear, carry, bring

Exercises (a)
Translate into Latin the words in bold only, using the appropriate participle in each case.
(1) The boys playing in the field are Marcus’ brothers. (2) I cannot hear the girls singing in the hall. (3) My teacher spoke to me as I was about to run into the field. (4) As I was about to leave (depart) he gave me a letter. (5) The defeated soldiers have been thrown into prison. (6) The thieves (or pirates) have taken the ship which was abandoned by the soldiers.
Exercise (b)
Translate the words in brackets and then the whole sentence into English
(1) Vidi puerum (working)
(2) Vidi pueros (working)
(3) Pater meus pro patria (fighting) interfectus est
(4) Clamores puerorum (fighting) auditi sunt
(5) Fabulam vobis (I am going to read)
(6) Hostes (defeated) domum redierunt
(7) Vocem patris mei (returning) saepe audit.

Exercise (c.) Translate into Latin:
(1) I saw the girl walking to the town.
(2) The leader is about to call his men.
(3) The soldiers will see the consul fighting bravely.
(4) The women were about to carry water to the city.
(5) The leader was about to punish the prisoners.
(6) The girls, adorned with flowers were carrying the statue into the temple.
(7) The soldiers wounded by the spears of the enemy, were carried into the camp.
(8) The Gauls, defeated by the Romans gave hostages to Caesar.

Students should note that Latin makes very frequent use of participles. Always be careful to translate these into natural (or idiomatic English) as in the following examples. Take note of the following:

(1) Roganti amico dux respondit se filios duos habere
In answer to his friend’s question the general (leader) said that he had two sons.

(2) Marcus, a matre docta, legere et scribere sciebat
Marcus, as a result of her mother’s teaching, knew how to read and write.

(3) Vir Caesarem loquentem spectavit. The man looked at Caesar while he was speaking.

(4) Caesar haec locutus eum non audivit. After saying this Caesar did not hear him.

(5) Caesar, milites suos hortatus, signum pugnae dedit. Caesar, having encouraged his soldiers, gave the signal for battle.

(6) Haec locutus, ex urbe excessit. Having said these things, he went out of the city.

(7) Nos visi fugimus. Having been seen we ran away.
(8) Nautas visos cepimus. Having seen the soldiers, we captured them. (We captured the seen soldiers.)

(9) Dux milites convocatos laudavit. Having summoned the soldiers, the general praised them.

(10) Puero viso, pecuniam dedimus. Having seen the boy, we gave him money. (We gave money to the seen boy).

(11) Nos ab hostibus victis timebamur. We were feared by the defeated enemy. (Having defeated the enemy, we were feared by them. We were feared by the enemy when we had defeated them)

(12) Milites urbem captam deleverunt. The soldiers, having captured the city, destroyed it.

(13) Nave incensa, tres equos emimus. Having burnt our boat, we bought three horses.

**THE GERUND OR VERBAL NOUN**

The English *present participle* should not be confused with the English *verbal noun or gerund*. While the English participle is *adjective*, the gerund or verbal noun ending in *–ing*, is usually a *noun* used either as a *subject* or *object* of a verb. It can also depend upon a *preposition*. Examples: (1) **Buying and selling** is a good business – *subject* of a verb (2) The young lady likes **singing and dancing** – *object* of a verb. (3) The author spends a lot of time in **writing and reading** – dependent on a *preposition*.

The gerund is derived from the present stem of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sn</th>
<th>present stem</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Am-o</td>
<td>Am-andum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mon-eo</td>
<td>Mon-endum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Reg-o</td>
<td>Reg-endum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Audi-o</td>
<td>Audi-endum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Declension of the Gerund**

Nom. ______________

Acc. ama-ndum – the loving
Gen. ama-ndi – of loving
Dat. ama-ndo – for loving
Abl. ama-ndo – by loving

The Gerund has no nominative case. When the English gerund is the subject or object of a verb it is translated by the Latin infinitive. Example: He stops writing (or to write) – *scribere* destitit.
The accusative of the gerund is only used after prepositions, and mostly after ‘ad’. E.g. He is prepared for fighting – Paratus est ad pugnandum. Re- Amor habendi, habendo crescit

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE

Recapitulation – English Grammar

Active voice
A verb is in the active voice when the subject performs the action. Dr. John Chikwendu wrote the country’s National Anthem. The prefect read the opening address.

Passive voice
A verb is in the passive voice when the subject receives the action. Our flag is admired by many people.

Examples
[Active voice] The hunter killed a lion.
[Passive voice] The lion was killed by the hunter.
[Active voice] The principal expelled the naughty student.
[Passive voice] The disobedient student was expelled by the principal.
[Active voice] The boy stole the money
[Passive voice] The money was stolen by the boy.
[Active voice] The artist drew the pictures.
[Passive voice] The pictures were drawn by the artist.

The tenses of the active and passive voice
1. Simple Present tense: The mother teaches her children at home. The children are taught at home by their mother.
2. Future tense: The boys will visit the old lady tomorrow. The old lady will be visited by the boys tomorrow.
3. Present continuous: The teacher is flogging the students. The students are being flogged by the teacher.
4. Simple past: France defeated Italy in the 1996 World Cup. Italy was defeated by France in the 1996 World Cup.
5. In South Africa 2010, Spain defeated Netherland. Netherland was defeated by Spain in South Africa 2010.
6. **Past continuous:** The boys were writing the essay when the principal entered the classroom. The essay was being written by the boys when the principal entered the classroom.

7. **Perfect tense:** The prefect has locked all the windows. All the windows have been locked by the prefect.

**LATIN PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE**

Endings of the verbs in the present and passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ot</td>
<td>-or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-st</td>
<td>-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tt</td>
<td>-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tus</td>
<td>-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tis</td>
<td>Mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nt</td>
<td>-ntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Conjugation of the known verbs in the passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Am-or</td>
<td>Mone-or</td>
<td>Reg-or</td>
<td>Audi-or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-ris</td>
<td>Mone-ris</td>
<td>Rege-ris</td>
<td>Audi-ris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-tur</td>
<td>Mone-tur</td>
<td>Regi-tur</td>
<td>Audi-tur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-mur</td>
<td>Mone-mur</td>
<td>Regi-mur</td>
<td>Audi-mur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-mini</td>
<td>Mone-mini</td>
<td>Regi-mini</td>
<td>Audi-mini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-ntur</td>
<td>Mone-ntur</td>
<td>Regi-ntur</td>
<td>Audi-ntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am liked</td>
<td>I am advised</td>
<td>I am ruled</td>
<td>I am heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future indicative passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ama-bor</th>
<th>Mone-bor</th>
<th>Reg-ar</th>
<th>Audi-ar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ama-beris</td>
<td>Mone-beris</td>
<td>Reg-eris</td>
<td>Audi-eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-bitur</td>
<td>Mone-bitur</td>
<td>Reg-etur</td>
<td>Audi-etur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-bimur</td>
<td>Mone-bimur</td>
<td>Reg-emur</td>
<td>Audi-emur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-bimini</td>
<td>Mone-bimini</td>
<td>Reg-emin</td>
<td>Audi-emin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-buntur</td>
<td>Mone-buntur</td>
<td>Reg-entur</td>
<td>Audi-entur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall be liked</td>
<td>I shall be advised</td>
<td>I shall be ruled</td>
<td>I shall be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect indicative passive**
### Ama-bar, Mone-bar, Rege-bar, Audie-bar

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ama-bar</td>
<td>Mone-bar</td>
<td>Rege-bar</td>
<td>Audie-bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-baris</td>
<td>Mone-baris</td>
<td>Rege-baris</td>
<td>Audie-baris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-batur</td>
<td>Mone-batur</td>
<td>Rege-batur</td>
<td>Audie-batur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-bamur</td>
<td>Mone-bamur</td>
<td>Rege-bamur</td>
<td>Audie-bamur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-bamini</td>
<td>Mone-bamini</td>
<td>Rege-bamini</td>
<td>Audie-bamini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ama-bantur</td>
<td>Mone-bantur</td>
<td>Rege-bantur</td>
<td>Audie-bantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was liked, I used to be liked</td>
<td>I was advised</td>
<td>I was ruled</td>
<td>I was heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Perfect participle passive

All verbs, regular and irregular form the perfect participle passive from the supine by changing final –m into s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supine</th>
<th>Perfect Passive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amatum</td>
<td>amatus, -a, -um</td>
<td>loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitum</td>
<td>monitus, -a, -um</td>
<td>advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectum</td>
<td>rectus, -a, -um</td>
<td>ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditum</td>
<td>auditus, -a, -um</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Auditus, -a, -um – is also translated – ‘heard’ or having been heard. ‘Having been advised...’

The perfect participle being adjectival is declined like bonus and may be used to accompany a noun, e.g. wounded soldiers – milites vulnerati

### Perfect indicative tenses passive

The Perfect Indicative Passive is formed by using the perfect participle passive with a tense of sum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>future perfect</th>
<th>pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amatus sum</td>
<td>amatus ero</td>
<td>amatus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatus es</td>
<td>amatus eris</td>
<td>amatus eras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amatus est</td>
<td>amatus erit</td>
<td>amatus erat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amati sumus</td>
<td>amati erimus</td>
<td>amati eramus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amati estis</td>
<td>amati eritis</td>
<td>amati eratis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amati sunt</td>
<td>amati erunt</td>
<td>amati erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have been liked</td>
<td>I shall have been liked</td>
<td>I had been liked</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The other conjugations take the same form, e.g. *monitus sum*, I have been advised etc. The ending of a participle being adjectival must agree with the noun it qualifies in **number, gender and case**.

(1) *Saxum a militibus in oppidum portatum est.* The rock has been carried into the town by the soldiers.

(2) *Bellum gestum (gero, -ere, gessi, gestum) erat.* The war had been fought.

(3) *Urbes delectae erant.* The cities had been destroyed.

**Present infinitive passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amare – to like</td>
<td>amari – to be liked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monere – to advise</td>
<td>moneri – to be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regere – to rule</td>
<td>regi – to be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audire – to hear</td>
<td>audiri – to be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amare – be liked</td>
<td>amamini – be liked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monere – be advised</td>
<td>monemini – be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regere – be ruled</td>
<td>regimini – be ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audire – be heard</td>
<td>audimini – be heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Passive Voice & The Ablative of Agent, Instrument and Accompaniment**

In Latin, as in English, the passive may be used to show that something is being done to the subject, but without necessarily defining the doer or agent of the action. E.g. “Laudatur – He is praised”.

**Ablative of agent:** More commonly the doer of the action is expressed and must be translated into Latin by the ablative case (Ablative of Agent), preceded by the preposition ‘a’ or ‘ab’. *A puellis videbatur.* He was seen by the girls.

**Ablative of Instrument:** ‘By’ before things is translated by the ablative without any preposition (Ablative of Instrument). *Gladio interfectus est.* He was killed by a sword.

**Ablative of Accompaniment:** ‘With’, before persons or animals is translated by ‘cum’ with the ablative. This is called the Ablative of Accompaniment. ‘With’, before things is translated by the ablative
without any preposition and is generally an ablative of the Instrument. **Cum puellis ambulat.** He is walking with the girls.

**Ablative of Place From:** Translation of ‘from’; ‘From’ is translated by ‘e’ (‘ex’ before words beginning with a vowel or ‘h’ when the sense means ‘from within’, ‘out of’). ‘a’ (‘ab’ before words beginning with a vowel or ‘h’ is used when the sense is merely from the side of, e.g *Ex oppido venit.* He is coming out of the town. Note: From (=a or ab). From, out of (= e or ex).

**ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE**

Consider the following examples

1. **Milites, urbe capta, discesserunt** – The soldiers having captured the city, went away. *With the city captured,* the soldiers went away. When the soldiers had captured the city, they went away.
2. **Nave incense, tres equos emimus.** With the boat burnt, we bought three horses.
3. **Rufus (Rufus – name of a dog) vivo et vigilante, nemo intrare audebat.** With Rufus alive and awake, no one would dare enter. As long as Rufus is alive and awake, no one would dare enter.
4. **Manibus oribusque lavatis in atrium (hall) venerunt.** After washing their hands and faces, they came into the hall. When they had washed their hands and faces, they came into the hall. With their hands and faces washed they came into the hall.
5. **Urbe direpta, (diripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum (3) – to plunder) milites in castra redierunt.** The city having been plundered, the soldiers returned to camp.
6. **Castris relictis, milites in silvam fugerunt.** With the camps abandoned, the soldiers fled in the woods.
7. **Gallis superatis, consul exercitum in castra reduxit.** With Galls overcome, the consul led the army into the camp.
8. **Caesare irascente, non loquimur.** When Caesar is angry, we do not talk. With Caesar angry, we do not talk.
9. **Hostibus victis, dux Romam venit.** Having conquered the enemy, the general came to Rome.
10. **Opere perfecto, pueri laeti erant.** Having done the work, the boys were happy. With the work done, the boys were happy.

The above sentences contain typical examples of the **Ablative Absolute Construction** – a noun or pronoun along with a participle, all in the **Ablative Case**, forming a phrase not attached to the rest of the sentence by any conjunction, hence **ab-solute**, loosened off. The
participle and the noun are in the ablative case. The construction is so called (ablative absolute) because it is independent of the rest of the sentence.

Exercises

Translate into Latin:
The men have been advised (2) The girls have been praised by the queen. (3) We have been taught by the master. (4) The cities had been destroyed. (5) We shall have been praised. (6) Why are these men terrified by fear of death. (7) The temples have been adorned with flowers. (8) The wooden horse was filled with soldiers by the Greeks. (9) Troy was destroyed and the city also ravaged. (10) Help has been offered to the Gauls by their allies.

Translate into English

Change to passive form
(1) Iuvenes urbem virtute defendant. (2) Servus voces iuvenum audieverat (3) Aemilius me hodie ad prandium (lunch) vocat. (4) Cras pater nos ad villam ducet. (5) Mater filios maxime amavit. (6) Magister te hodie non laudat.

Change to active form

Practice/Application
Active to Passive Voice – Perfect Tense
Deponent verbs are verbs that have **PASSIVE** forms in Latin and **ACTIVE** meanings in English.

All deponent verbs are divided into the usual four conjugations and are conjugated like the **passive voice** of the standard verb of its own class. There are however some irregular deponent verbs and students should learn them by heart, just like many other irregular verbs in English and Latin.

The principal parts of a deponent verb are the present indicative, present infinitive, perfect indicative and meaning. Here are some of the more familiar ones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loquor</td>
<td>Loqui</td>
<td>locutus sum</td>
<td>I speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequor</td>
<td>Sequi</td>
<td>secutus sum</td>
<td>I follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arbitror</td>
<td>Arbitrari</td>
<td>arbitratus sum</td>
<td>I think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hortor</td>
<td>Hortari</td>
<td>hortatus sum</td>
<td>I encourage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor</td>
<td>Minari</td>
<td>minatus sum</td>
<td>I threaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moror</td>
<td>Morari</td>
<td>moratus sum</td>
<td>I delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recordor</td>
<td>recordari</td>
<td>recordatus sum</td>
<td>I remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irascor</td>
<td>Irasci</td>
<td>Iratus sum</td>
<td>I am angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utor</td>
<td>Uti</td>
<td>ursus sum</td>
<td>I use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordior</td>
<td>Ordiri</td>
<td>orsus sum</td>
<td>I begin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orior</td>
<td>Oriri</td>
<td>ortus sum</td>
<td>I arise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potior</td>
<td>Potiri</td>
<td>potitus sum</td>
<td>I possess</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Conjugation of loquor - I speak

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>loquor</td>
<td>Loquor</td>
<td>Loquar</td>
<td>Loquebar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loqueres</td>
<td>Loqueris</td>
<td>Loqueris</td>
<td>Loquebaris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquitur</td>
<td>Loquitur</td>
<td>Loquitur</td>
<td>Loquebarur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquimus</td>
<td>Luquemur</td>
<td>Luquemur</td>
<td>Luquebamur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquimini</td>
<td>Loquemini</td>
<td>Loquemini</td>
<td>Loquebamini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquuntur</td>
<td>Loquentur</td>
<td>Loquentur</td>
<td>Loquebantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect Indicative**
- Locutus sum – I have spoken
- Locutus es – You have spoken
- Locutus est – He has spoken
- Locuti sumus – We have spoken
- Locuti estis – You have spoken
- Locuti sunt – They have spoken

Future Perfect – Locutus ero….. I shall have spoken
Pluperfect – Locutus eram .......I had spoken

**Infinitives**
- Present – Loqui – to speak
- Perfect – Locutus esse – to have spoken
- Future – Locuturus esse – to be about to speak

**Imperative**
- Loquere (sing) speak
- Loquimini (pl) speak

**Participle**
- Present – loquens, speaking
- Perfect – locutus – having spoken
- Future – locuturus – about to speak

Note that all participles are adjectives and are therefore declined when necessary.

**Locuta est** – she has spoken. **Roma locuta est!**
**Puellae locutae** – the girls having spoken.....
Exercises
Translate into Latin
(1) We remember.
(2) You will think.
(3) They had followed.
(4) They had got possession of.
(5) They had threatened.
(6) He has begun to speak the words.
(7) Our master has ordered those sentences to be translated into Latin.
(8) What is more pleasant than to be praised by all our friends?

PRONOUNS

Recapitulation – English Pronouns
A pronoun is a word used in place of a noun.
In place of John – he, him
In place of Maria – she, her
In place of boys and girls – they, them
In place of (all of you, Peter, James, and John) – you.

Personal pronoun – refers to persons – I, she, him, her, we, you.
Possessive pronoun – points to ownership – his, hers, mine, yours, ours, theirs.
Note: no apostrophe before or after the “s” in hers, ours, theirs!
Demonstrative pronoun – used when pointing to a particular object.
That boy in the classroom is lazy. Those cows under the tree are sleeping. These are the students who dodged manual labour.
Relative pronoun – Refers to someone or thing already mentioned in a sentence, e.g. who, whom, whose, that, which. The boy, who broke the glass, ran away. The master whose students passed the exam teaches well. The book, which my sister bought, contains interesting stories.
Interrogative pronoun – used in asking questions – Who? Whom? What? Which? e.g. Who ate the apples? Which house was destroyed by fire? Whose book is that? What are you looking for?
Universal pronoun – every, everyone, each, each one, everybody.
Partitive pronoun – nothing, anything, something
Reciprocal pronoun – one, one another, each, each one, e.g; We must love one another. Each tree must be uprooted.
Exercises
Complete the following sentences with the most appropriate Relative pronoun from the given list (who, which, whose, that, whom)

1. This is the man ..........car crashed at the street corner.
2. This is the girl ..........I saw beating the small boy.
3. That was the journalist ..........told us that he wrote the article.
4. This is the assignment ..........our teacher asked us to do.
5. Here is the little boy ..........broke the glass.
6. I don't like people ..........dogs bark at visitors.
7. Where is the seller ..........we bought the exercise books?
8. Here are apples ..........our mother bought yesterday.
9. I like that teacher ..........taught us Maths last year.
10. That was the baby ..........was abandoned in a refuse dump.

Personal Pronouns

In Latin the person of a verb is indicated by personal endings, and not necessarily by the personal pronouns as in English. Personal pronouns however exist in Latin and are also used as the subjects of verbs whenever emphasis or contrast in subjects is desired. For example: I was the one who did it; no other person. ‘Amat, can refer to ‘he’ or ‘she’. ‘Amo’ means I love. ‘Ego amo’ means also ‘I love’.

1st Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Pro</th>
<th>Sing</th>
<th>Pro</th>
<th>Plu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Ego</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Nos</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>Nos</td>
<td>Us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Mei</td>
<td>Of me</td>
<td>Nostri, nostrum</td>
<td>Of us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Mihi</td>
<td>To me</td>
<td>Nobis</td>
<td>To us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>Nobis</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2nd Person

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Pro</th>
<th>Sing</th>
<th>Pro</th>
<th>Plu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Tu</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>Vos</td>
<td>You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Te</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>Vos</td>
<td>You</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Tui</td>
<td>Of you</td>
<td>Vestri, vestibrum</td>
<td>Of you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Tibi</td>
<td>To you</td>
<td>Vobis</td>
<td>To you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Special Notes on Ablative cases of Personal Pronouns, Nostrum & Vestrum

The Ablative of nouns that signify persons cannot be translated when it stands alone. Its chief uses are (i.) after prepositions, for example in Ablative of agent, which requires the preposition ‘a’ or ‘ab’. The sailor is wounded by the soldier. Nauta a milite vulneratur. The sailor is wounded by a sword. Nauta gladio vulneratur. (Ablative of Instrument).

Nostrum and Vestrum

Nostrum, of us and Vestrum, (partitive genitive) of you can only be used when a number is referred to. Many of us – Multi nostrum. Nostri, of us and Vestri, of you are used in other cases. He is mindful of us – Memor nostri est.

3rd Person – Pronoun, Demonstrative Adjective

It – singular; They – Plural

In Latin ‘it’ and ‘They’ may be masculine, feminine or neuter, according to the gender of the word they stand for.

Is = masc; ea = fem; id = neut. When ‘it’ stands for ‘ager’, field = masc; hasta, spear = fem; bellum, war = neut.

Is, ea, id, (ii, eae, ea – those, = plural) as a demonstrative adjective and pronoun actually means that, those. At that time = Eo tempore; In those times = Ei temporibus; That is = Id est.

1. Is – ea – id – that (plural – those)
2. Hic, haec, hoc, this (plural – these)
3. Ille – illa – illud, that (plural – those)
4. Iste – ista – istud, that (plural – those)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom</th>
<th>is</th>
<th>He</th>
<th>Ea</th>
<th>She</th>
<th>Id</th>
<th>it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>Him</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>Her</td>
<td>Id</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>Of him</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>of her</td>
<td>eius</td>
<td>of it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>To him</td>
<td>Ei</td>
<td>To her</td>
<td>Ei</td>
<td>to it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>eo</td>
<td>By him</td>
<td>Ea</td>
<td>By her</td>
<td>Eo</td>
<td>by it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nom</th>
<th>ii,ei,i</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>eae</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>ea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>eos</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>eas</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>eorum</td>
<td>of them</td>
<td>earum</td>
<td>of them</td>
<td>eorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Masc</td>
<td>Fem</td>
<td>Neut</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Hic</td>
<td>Haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Hunc</td>
<td>Hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Huius</td>
<td>Huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Huic</td>
<td>Hic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Hoc</td>
<td>Hac</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Hic, Haec, Hoc**

Hic, this (near me); plural, these

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masc</th>
<th>Fem</th>
<th>Neut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>His</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hic points out something close at hand, in time or space: **Haec domus est mea.** This house is mine. Hic also expresses something just mentioned, or just about to be mentioned. **Haec dixit.** He said this

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masc</th>
<th>Fem</th>
<th>Neut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Ilii</td>
<td>Illae</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Illi</td>
<td>Illa</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Illius</td>
<td>Illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ille, Illa, Illud**

Ille, that (there, yonder)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Masc</th>
<th>Fem</th>
<th>Neut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Illi</td>
<td>Illa</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Illos</td>
<td>Illae</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Illorum</td>
<td>illorum</td>
<td>illorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>Illis</td>
<td>illis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Definitive Pronoun and Adjective**
Idem, eadem, idem – the same; idem...qui, the same...as.

**Intensive Pronoun and Adjective**
Ipse, ipsa, ipsum: He, himself, She, herself, self

**Ipse is used:**
(1) When ‘self’ occurs in the subject of a sentence – *Ipse excit* or
*Ipse exedit*: He himself goes out.
(2) When ‘self’ is needed in a non-reflexive sentence: Puer librum eisipsis dedit – The boy gave the book to them themselves.

**Reflective Pronoun**
The reflective pronoun (3rd person) has no nominative. Its declension is the same for all genders, singular and plural.

Acc. Se or *sese* – himself, herself, itself, themselves
Gen. *Sui* – of .........
Dat. *Sibi* – to........
Abl. *Se, sese* - by .......

**The Relative Pronoun**
A relative pronoun connects a *subordinate clause* (used as an adjective) with a noun or pronoun, called the *antecedent* in the main part of the sentence. In the sentence “The man who is standing in front of the class is our Latin teacher”, *man* is the antecedent of the relative pronoun, *who, which* introduces the relative clause ‘who is standing in front of the class’, telling what man is meant.

In English the relative pronouns are *who, whose, whom, which, that*. The meaning *who* may be used only when the reference is to *persons; which* only when the reference is to *things. That* may be used to refer to either *persons or things*.

**The Declension of the Relative Pronoun: singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cases</th>
<th>Mas</th>
<th>Fem</th>
<th>Neut</th>
<th>Engl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>Who, which, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>Whom, which, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>Of whom, whose, of which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>cui, cui</td>
<td>Cui</td>
<td>to, for whom, for which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>quo, qua</td>
<td>Quo</td>
<td>By, with, from whom, by, with, from which</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cases</th>
<th>Mas</th>
<th>Fem</th>
<th>Neut</th>
<th>Engl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>Qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>Quae</td>
<td>Who, which, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>Quos</td>
<td>quas</td>
<td>Quae</td>
<td>Whom, which, that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>quorum</td>
<td>quarum</td>
<td>Quorum</td>
<td>Of whom, whose, of which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat</td>
<td>Quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>Quibus</td>
<td>to, for whom, for which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>Quibus</td>
<td>quibus</td>
<td>Quibus</td>
<td>By, with, from whom, by, with, from which</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Agreement of the Relative Pronoun**

The relative pronoun both in English and Latin agrees in **gender, person, and number** with its antecedent, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause. Examples:

(1) The boy, who just entered the hall, is Marcus.
(2) I have a friend whose name is Kelechi.
(3) This is the student to whom the master gave the letter.
(4) The girl, whom you saw at Oguta Junction is my sister.
(5) This is the man whom you invited to dinner today.

In the following sentences, remember that the **person** and **number** of a relative pronoun are determined by the **antecedent**.

(1) It is I who am to blame
(2) It is they who are to blame
(3) It is you who are to blame
(4) It is we who are to blame

Take **close look** at the following sentences, which illustrate the uses of the relative pronoun in Latin.

(1) **Puer, qui ad oppidum ambulat, est Petrus.** The boy who is walking towards the town is Peter.
(2) **Liber, quem lego, est tuus.** The book that I am reading is yours.
(3) **Feminae, quarum filii laudantur, sunt laetae.** The women whose sons are praised are happy.
(4) **Nos, qui milites sumus, hostes pugnabimus.** We who are soldiers will fight the enemies.
(5) **Videsne pueros qui veniunt?** Do you see the boys who are coming?
(6) **Videsne pueros quos laudas?** Do you see the boys whom you are praising?

(7) **Vidistine pueros ad quos tibi misi?** Did you see the boys to whom I sent you?

(8) **Puellae, quarum librum habes, sorores meae sunt.** The girls, whose book you have, are my sisters.

(9) **Puerum, cui librum dedit, vidi.** I have seen the boy to whom he gave the book.

(10) **Hi pueri, a quibus reperti sumus, nos non amant.** These boys by whom we were found do not like us.

**Exercises**

**Translate:**

(1) Quas fabulas illi pueri amant?

(2) Fabulae, quas amant, bonae sunt.

(3) Cuius libros O, Marce, habes?

(4) Sextus, cuius libros Marcus habet, irascitur

(5) Ubi est nauta cui hoc monstravi?

**Translate:**

(1) The city which the soldiers are attacking is beautiful.

(2) I see the boy whose friends are in the garden.

(3) The words which the master spoke yesterday were good.

(4) My brother whose son visited us yesterday has traveled to Rome.

(5) We have not found the girl who took the master’s book.

**DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH (REPORTED SPEECH)**

**Direct = Oratio Recta; Indirect = Oratio Obliqua**

**Recapitulation of Reported Speech in “English Grammar.”**

Most students write poor essays and get low marks because of their inability to report simple events in correct grammar. Many statements we make everyday are reports of actions or sayings of other people. Secretaries of organisations, who record minutes of meetings must report well, observing the rules of grammar in reported speech. A student present when two fellow students exchanged bitter words that led to a fight could be asked to narrate to the headmaster or principal what actually happened. Who said what? Who started the fight? A great problem arises when we begin to report what happened in the past!
**Direct Speech:** This is the actual statement of the third person – our teacher, my sister, John, the regulator, the pastor etc. The actual words of the speaker are usually put in quotation marks, e.g. “I am sick.” “I will not come to class today.”

**Indirect Speech:** This is the reported statement of the speaker, as understood by a third person. It usually begins with “He says.” “She said.” “They insisted.” It is accompanied by the word “That.”

The simple rule is that the tense of the verb of the main clause or sentence determines the tense of the subordinate clause or the second part of the sentence.

**Direct speech.** “I am present.”

**Indirect speech** He says that he is present - “He said that he was present.”.

**Direct speech:** “I am reading my books.”

**Indirect speech:** John says that he is reading his books. He said that he was reading his books.

But the urge to use the past tense in reporting events and statements is always strong. Hence we usually hear “He said that...” John told me that...” “Our teacher said that...”

The rule is simple in this case. If the verb of the main clause or sentence is in the past, all the verbs in the subordinate clause must be in the past - simple past, past perfect etc.

**Direct speech:** The teacher - to the students – “Do the assignment otherwise I will punish anyone who fails to comply.”

**Indirect speech,** as reported by the class prefect to the members of the class: Our English teacher ordered that every member of the class should do the assignment given to us and (he) threatened that he would punish anyone who did not comply.

“I am sick. Therefore I will not be present for class this week.”

Ngozi told the class prefect that she was sick and would not be in for class this (that) week.

Other rules include changing e.g. “shall” to “should,” “will” to “would,” “this week” to “next week,” “now” to “then” etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT</th>
<th>INDIRECT</th>
<th>DIRECT</th>
<th>INDIRECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can</td>
<td>Could</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>Might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shall</td>
<td>Should</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>Would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Was</td>
<td>Are</td>
<td>Were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has</td>
<td>Had</td>
<td>Have</td>
<td>Had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has been</td>
<td>Had been</td>
<td>This</td>
<td>That</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These</td>
<td>Those</td>
<td>Thus</td>
<td>So</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Now</td>
<td>Than</td>
<td>Neither</td>
<td>Thither</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Here</td>
<td>There</td>
<td>Hence</td>
<td>Thence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Today</td>
<td>That day</td>
<td>Tomorrow</td>
<td>Next day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yesterday</td>
<td>The previous day</td>
<td>Last night</td>
<td>The previous night</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**

Use simple sentences and statements. Then practise with reports of incidents and stories. Also include the following verbs in the group of verbs which introduces the subordinate clause with “That:” He said that... The principal ordered that... My mother insisted that... My father threatened that... The boy claimed that... Peter lamented that... Jude complained that... The old woman warned that... Obi enjoined that...

Turn the following sentences into **Indirect Speech**

1. “I don’t like lazy students,” says the principal.
2. “What is wrong with you,” the headmaster asked the boy.
3. “The father said, “I have already told you never to miss classes.”
4. “Give me some water,” the beggar demanded.
5. “Can you play tennis,” the director asked his son.
6. The captain ordered the soldiers, “You must report at the camp before noon.”
7. “Have you finished the assignment,” the teacher asked the students.
8. “What were you doing when I saw you yesterday,” the master asked John.
9. “Do not talk to me like that,” the lady warned the boy.
10. “Get away from my face,” the father told his daughter.

Turn the following sentences into **Direct Speech**

1. The referee warned the players never to fight in the field.
2. The headmaster warned that late-comers would be punished.
3. The teacher ordered the late-comers to knell down.
4. The servant told the master that he could not do the work.
5. Ikechi warned Chika never to talk to him like that again.
6. The director said that he had many visitors and could not attend the meeting.
7. The farmer said that he was tired and needed some rest.
8. The angry old lady ordered the boys to go away from her house and said that she would not like to see them there any more.
9. The police officer asked the men whether they saw the thief.
10. The mother advised her daughter not to go out in the night.

**INDIRECT OR REPORTED SPEECH; ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION**

The Latin method of expressing *Indirect speech* is known as *Accusative and Infinitive Construction*. As we have seen above the normal English method of translating Accusative and Infinitive Construction is by means of a **Noun Clause** introduced by **that** (which may, however be omitted).

**Why Accusative and Infinitive?**
Compare the following sentences:
- A. "He is ill"
- B. The doctor believes him to be ill
- C. The doctor believes that he is ill.

Sentences A is said to be a **Direct** Statement or Speech. Sentences B and C are **indirect** statements, because the words of one speaker are reported by another, that is, are given indirectly, **not directly**.

Note that the original words "He is ill" can be reported in two different ways, B and C. In Latin B, and C are the only possible ways of reporting speech or thought after all **verbs of saying, thinking, knowing and perceiving**.

Note that the Nomative 'he' of the original words becomes 'him' (Accusative), and the verb 'is' becomes 'to be' (Infinitive). Naturally then, the name "Accusative and Infinitive Construction" is given to the Latin method of reporting speech, that is, putting direct statements in an indirect form.

**Correct tense of the Infinitive!**
It is important to note that to determine the correct tense of the Infinitive you will always have to turn the Indirect Statement back, in your mind, into the Direct form.

**Study carefully the following examples**

He says that you are wise. (Speaker says “He is wise”.)

*Dicit te esse sapientem.*
He said that you were wise. **Dixit te esse sapientem.**
He said that they had gone away. **Dixit eos abiisse.**
He said that the boy would come. **Dixit puerum venturum esse.**

Let us consider the following examples, too:

(1) **Direct speech:** Facilis sum. I am good-natured
**Indirect speech:** The citizens say that I am good-natured. **Cives me facilem esse dicunt.**

(2) **Direct:** Anthonium superavi. I defeated Anthony.
**Indirect:** Cives me Anthonium superavisse audiant. The citizens hear that I (have) defeated Anthony. **Cives me Anthonium superavisse audiverunt.** The citizens heard that I had defeated Anthony.

We take note that the Accusative and Infinitive Construction as in English is found not only after verbs meaning to say; but also after those meaning to think (putare, credere); to know (scire); and verbs of the senses, e.g. audire, to hear; videre, to see; sentire, to feel and other verbs that can stand in place of ‘say’

(1) **Existimo** – I think, consider (2) **constituo** –ere, -stitui, -stitutum – I determine (3) **nescio** – I do not know (4) **arbitror** (1) (Dep) – I think (5) **reor, reri, ratus sum** (2) (Dep) I think, I believe, consider

**Study the following examples:**

**Direct:** Felix sum. I am fortunate (happy)
**Indirect:** Me felicem esse dicit. He says that I am fortunate.
**Nos felices esse dicunt.** They say that we are fortunate.
**Te felicem esse scit.** He knows that you are fortunate.
**Vos felices esse scimus.** We know that you (plu) are happy.
**Milites Romanos fortissime pugnavisse scivimus.** We knew that the Roman soldiers fought very bravely.
**Discipulos diligenter studere dicit.** He says that the pupils are studying hard.

**Exercises**
**Change to direct form and translate into English:** Example: **Indirect:** Regina dixit senem filium habere. (The queen said that the old man has a son) **Direct:** Senex filium habet. “The old man has a son”.
(1) Hanc fabulam novam esse puto.
(2) Dixistine te librum venditurum esse?
(3) Senex se territum esse dixit.
(4) Me librum venditum esse promisit
(5) Senex Caesarem clementissimum esse credit.

**Table of Infinitives Active**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Con</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Laudare, to praise</td>
<td>Laudaturus, -a, -um esse, to be about to praise</td>
<td>Laudavisse, to have praised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Monere, to advise</td>
<td>Moneturus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise</td>
<td>Monuisse, to have warned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ducere, to lead</td>
<td>Ducturus, -a, -um esse – to be about to lead</td>
<td>Duxisse, to have led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Audire, to hear</td>
<td>Auditurus, -a, -um esse, to be about to hear</td>
<td>Audivisse, to have heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table of Infinitives Passive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Con</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Laudari, to be praised</td>
<td>Laudatum iri, to be about to be praised</td>
<td>Laudatus, -a, -um esse to have been praised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Moneri, to be advised</td>
<td>Monitum iri, to be about to be advised</td>
<td>Monitus, to have warned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ducí, to be lead</td>
<td>Ductum iri, to be about to be lead</td>
<td>Ductus -a, -um esse to have been led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Audiri, to be heard</td>
<td>Auditum iri, to be about to be heard</td>
<td>Auditus –a –um esse, to have been heard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**

**Redde Anglice:**

(1) Dicit Octavianus se in Hispania Caesarem adiuvisse (adiuvo, -are, iuvi, -itum – help, assist)
(2) Se fortem et validum fuisse negat.
(3) Octavianus narrat domum suam in Monte Palatino sitam fuisse.
(4) Antonius partem imperii iuveni datum iri negavit.
(5) Octavianus pro certo habebat exercitum sibi a senatu datum iri.
We heard that you were coming to the city.
Some citizens believed that you would be merciful.
We hope that the city would be saved.
Octavianus says that Caesar ruled the whole world.
Many men thought that he would be assassinated.
They said the Romans did not like kings.

**Redde Latine**
(1) We heard that you were coming to the city.
(2) Some citizens believed that you would be merciful.
(3) We hope that the city would be saved.
(4) Octavianus says that Caesar ruled the whole world.
(5) Many men thought that he would be assassinated.
(6) They said the Romans did not like kings.

**The Pronoun of the 3rd Person in Reported Speech**

**An important Rule:** If a Pronoun of the 3rd Person, occurring in an Indirect Statement, stands for the subject of the verb introducing the Indirect Statement, it must be translated by the **Reflective Pronoun se.** Otherwise **is, ea, id,** or for the person spoken to, **ille**

**Examples:**
Caesar said he (Caesar) had defeated the enemies.

**Caesar dixit se hostes vicisse.**
The Master said he (the pupil) fled

**Magister dixit eum fugisse.**
The Romans said that they (the Romans) had defeated the Gauls.

**Romani dixerunt se Gallos vicisse.**
The Romans said they (the Gauls) had been defeated by them (the Romans).

**Romani dixerunt eos a se victos esse.**
The girl said that she (the girl) had read the book.

**Puella dixit se librum legisse.**
Caesar said he (Pompey) had given him (Caesar) a legion.

**Caesar dixit eum sibi legionem dedisse.**

**Another important rule: 3rd Person Possessive**
A 3rd Person Possessive referring to the Subject of the Latin Verb must be rendered by **suus.** Otherwise use ** eius, eorum, earum,** or **illius, illorum, illarum;** e.g., Caesar said the legion was his (Caesar’s)

**Caesar dixit legionem esse suam.**

**Negative in Indirect Speech**
**Dico** must not be used for ‘say’ if there is a Negative in the Indirect Speech. The Romans preferred to use **nego, I deny.** E.g
Caesar said the legion was not his (Pompey’s)

**Caesar negavit legionem eius esse.**

**Negat puer se hodie ludere.** The boy says he is not playing today.
(say that not = deny)
Negoumquam I say that never
Negoquemquam I say that no one
Negouicquam I say that nothing
Negoullum, -a, -um I sat that no

Translate into Latin
(1) We have heard that Caesar is now conquering the enemy.
(2) Do you believe that the boys are now being taught by the master?
(3) Do you think that these sentences are easy?
(4) I do not believe that these walls can be taken.
(5) They report that the enemies are fleeing and that our forces are victorious.

Translate into English
(1) Few soldiers knew that the city had been taken.
(2) He promised that the boys would receive some books.
(3) They claimed they had not heard the leader’s orders.
(4) The men said that the citizens were very rich.
(5) They informed the general that all the hostages would be given a heavy punishment.
(6) All the soldiers declared that they would never abandon their leader.
(7) It was reported that the Gauls were brave soldiers.
(8) Our men were told (informed) that the enemy had fortified their camp and were expecting an attack.
(9) The master does not believe that the pupils would walk to school.
(10) They said that they had not heard about the king’s arrival.
CONJUNCTIONS

We are familiar with the following conjunctions in English:

1. **but** – **sed, at, verum** (These take the same position in Latin as in English, namely, before the word they join to the previous sentence.)
2. **For** – **nam, namque** (both come before the word they join to the previous sentence.)
3. **But** – **autem, vero** (Both come after the word they join to the previous sentence.)
4. **For** – **enim** (comes after the word it joins to the previous sentence).

(5) Both ......and: et......et
(6) For ......not: neque ......enim
(7) But......not: neque ......enim.
(8) Neither......nor: neque......neque (usually before vowels or a word beginning with 'h'.)
(9) Neither......nor: nec.....nec: (usually before consonants); e.g. Nec pueri nec puellae in horto sunt. **Neither** the boys **nor** the girls are in the garden.
(10) And -Et, atque,ac, all preceed the words which they join to the previous part of the sentence. (11) que – is joined to the end of the word before which ‘and’ comes in English, e.g. Cum pueris puellisque currunt. They are running with the boys and girls. **Que** is usually used to connect pairs of persons or things (as above).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

First Conjugation Verbs - Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amem</td>
<td>Amarem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ames</td>
<td>Amares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amet</td>
<td>Amaret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amemus</td>
<td>Amaremus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ametis</td>
<td>Amaretis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ament</td>
<td>Amarent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amaverim</td>
<td>Amavissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaveris</td>
<td>Amavisses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaverit</td>
<td>Amavisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaverimus</td>
<td>Amavissemus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Amaveritis | Amavissetis
---|---
Amaverint | Amavissent

2\textsuperscript{nd}, 3\textsuperscript{rd} & 4\textsuperscript{th} Conjugation Verbs – Active

### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moneam</th>
<th>Regam</th>
<th>Audiam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moneas</td>
<td>Regas</td>
<td>Audias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneat</td>
<td>Regat</td>
<td>Audiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneamus</td>
<td>Regamus</td>
<td>Audiamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneatis</td>
<td>Regatis</td>
<td>Audiatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneant</td>
<td>Regant</td>
<td>Audiant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monerem</td>
<td>Regerem</td>
<td>Audirem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneres</td>
<td>Regeres</td>
<td>Audieres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneret</td>
<td>Regeret</td>
<td>Audiret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneremus</td>
<td>Regeremus</td>
<td>Audiremus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moneretis</td>
<td>Regeretis</td>
<td>Audiretis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monerent</td>
<td>Regerent</td>
<td>Audirent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monuerim</td>
<td>Rexerim</td>
<td>Audiverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monueris</td>
<td>Rexeris</td>
<td>Audiveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuerit</td>
<td>Rexerit</td>
<td>Audiverit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuerimus</td>
<td>Rexerimus</td>
<td>Audiverimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monueritis</td>
<td>Rexeritis</td>
<td>Audiveritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuerint</td>
<td>Rexerint</td>
<td>audiverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monuissem</td>
<td>Rexissem</td>
<td>Audivirussem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuisses</td>
<td>Rexisses</td>
<td>Audivisses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuisset</td>
<td>Rexisset</td>
<td>audivisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuissemus</td>
<td>Rexissemus</td>
<td>Audivirussemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuissetis</td>
<td>Rexissets</td>
<td>Audivissetis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monuissent</td>
<td>Rexissent</td>
<td>Audivissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE**
Present Subjunctive Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amer</th>
<th>Monear</th>
<th>Regar</th>
<th>Audiar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ameris</td>
<td>Monearis</td>
<td>Regaris</td>
<td>Audiaris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ametur</td>
<td>Moneatur</td>
<td>Regatur</td>
<td>Audiatur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amemur</td>
<td>Moneamur</td>
<td>Regamur</td>
<td>Audiamur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amemini</td>
<td>Moneamini</td>
<td>Regamini</td>
<td>Audiamini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amentur</td>
<td>Moneantur</td>
<td>regantur</td>
<td>audiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect Subjunctive Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amarer</th>
<th>Monerer</th>
<th>Regerer</th>
<th>Audirer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amareris</td>
<td>Monereris</td>
<td>Regereris</td>
<td>Audireris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaretur</td>
<td>Moneretur</td>
<td>Regeretur</td>
<td>Audiretur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaremur</td>
<td>Moneremur</td>
<td>Regeremur</td>
<td>Audiremur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amaremmini</td>
<td>Moneremini</td>
<td>Regeremini</td>
<td>Audiremmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amarentur</td>
<td>Monerentur</td>
<td>regerentur</td>
<td>audirentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect Subjunctive Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amatus sim</th>
<th>Monitus sim</th>
<th>Rectus sim</th>
<th>Auditus sim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amatus sis</td>
<td>Monitus sis</td>
<td>Rectus sis</td>
<td>Auditus sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amatus sit</td>
<td>Monitus sit</td>
<td>Rectus sit</td>
<td>Auditus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amati simus</td>
<td>Moniti simus</td>
<td>Recti simus</td>
<td>Auditi sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amati sitis</td>
<td>Moniti sitis</td>
<td>Recti sitis</td>
<td>Auditi sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amati sint</td>
<td>Moniti sint</td>
<td>Recti sint</td>
<td>Auditi sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive

Amatus (amati) essem, esses, esset, essemus, essetis, essent
Monitus (moniti) essem etc
Rectus (recti) essem etc.
Auditus (auditii) essem etc.

Some irregular verbs

Esse – to be: sim, sis, sit, simus, sitis, sint
Possum, posse, putui – be able
Present: possim, possis, posit, possimus, possint.
Imperfect: possem, posses, posset, possemus, possetis, possent
Perfect: potuerim, potueris, potuerit, potuerimus, potueritis, potuerint.
USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

It is good for us to begin with the conjugation of the regular verbs. Students should try to commit the conjugations of the various tenses of the subjunctive to memory. We shall gradually learn the different uses of the subjunctive.

(1) The Present subjunctive is usually translated by the English “may”
(2) The Imperfect subjunctive is translated by might or should.
(3) The Perfect subjunctive is traditionally translated by “may have”
(4) The Pluperfect subjunctive by ‘might’ or ‘should have’
(5) The Present subjunctive is used to indicate a wish, exhortation or command in the 1st and 3rd person.
(6) The Imperative mood is used to give command in the 2nd person. It is also referred to as Jussive Subjunctive (so called because it gives an exhortation or command (from iubeo, I command. It is regularly translated by let and the infinitive.

Examples: (i) May I be successful today – Hodie felix sim
(ii.) May you come safely to harbour – Incolumis ad portum pervenias
(iii.) Let the girl sit on a chair – Sedeat puella in sella.
(iv.) Let us rise very early – Surgamus primo mane.
(v.) May you be successful today – Hodie felices sitis.
(vi.) Let the boys sleep in their beds – Dormiant pueri in lectis.
(vii.) Never let them sleep in school – Ne umquam dormiant in ludo.
(viii.) Let us hurry to school – Festinemus ad ludum.

Iubeo – I order; Veto – to forbid

Positively use iubeo with the infinitive – Me excedere iussit. He ordered me to go away. Negatively use veto forbid with the infinitive. Me excedere vetuit. He forbade me to go away. Or He told me not to go away.

Note:
(1) To tell, meaning to order, is iubere.
(2) Be careful never to write *iubeo* followed by a negative. He ordered me not to go, becomes, He forbade me to go. Similarly, *Me umquam venire vetuit.* He told me never to go.

(3) *iubeo*, -ere, iussi – I order, command, tell; *veto* - -are, vetui, I forbid, I order….not

**The Purpose or Final Clauses – Ut, Inquit**

The purpose with which an action is done may be expressed in English in either of the following ways: We can say

“I have come to help you”. or

“I have come in order that I may help you.”

In English the second of these is very much less frequent than the first, but in Latin an Adverbial Clause, with a Conjunction equivalent to “in order that”, and the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, is the most usual way of expressing purpose. The infinitive may never be used to do so!

These Adverbial Clauses are commonly called **Final Clauses**, because they express the finis, ‘end’, or ‘aim’ with which an action is performed. The Latin Conjunction for ‘in order that’ is *ut*. In such clauses the **Present Subjunctive** represents the English ‘may’, the **Imperfect Subjunctive** ‘might’.

Notice that if you you have to translate an English infinitive of purpose, you must first replace it by an ‘in order that’ clause, to see whether ‘may’ or ‘might’ is required. E.g. “I am coming in order that I may help you” = “I am coming in order that I might help you.” *Venio ut te iuven* (pres. Subj.) But “I came to help you” = “I came in order that I might help you.” *Veni ut te iuvenarem* (Imperfect Subjunctive)

The following examples also give reasons why certain actions are taken, the **purpose, the end**. The general praises the soldiers that they may fight well. *Dux milites laudat ut bene pugnet*. The words in *bold type* denote purpose. They form a clause of purpose containing a verb in the subjunctive. In the clause of purpose that is translated by *ut*; that.....not (or *lest*) by *ne. Caesar praises his soldiers lest they lose courage.*

**Primary and Historic Tenses**

The tense used in the subjunctive always depends on the tense of the principal clause. For this purpose all tenses are divided into two classes (a) tenses which do not refer to the past (called Primary tenses; (b) tenses which refer to the past (Historic or past)
Primary Tenses | Historic Tenses
---|---
Present | Imperfect
Future simple | Pluperfect
Future perfect | Perfect
Perfect (English Present Perfect) | Perfect (English Past simple)

**Sequence of Tenses – The subjunctive**

In clauses of purpose therefore the present subjunctive is used after: Primary **Tenses**; the **imperfect** subjunctive is used after **Historic Tenses**. Thus (a) He **fights** that he **may** conquer. (b) He **fought** that he **might** conquer. Since the perfect indicative has two meanings, it can be followed by either present subjunctive or imperfect subjunctive, according to the sense. (a) He has fought (**pugnavit**) that he may conquer (**superet**). (b) He fought (**pugnavit**) that he **might** conquer (**superare**).

**Exercises**

In the following sentences Latin requires the dependent verb to be in the **Subjunctive**. Say without translating what tense you would use.

1. They have come in order that they **may conquer** us.
2. They sent money that we **might buy** our freedom.
3. We had already succeeded so well that we **hoped** to win.
4. We are so tired that we **cannot** work.
5. He ran so quickly that no one **could** catch him.
6. We do not know what he **is doing**.
7. Have you heard what he **has done**?
8. They did not know what the island **was** like.
9. We shall ask what he **is doing**.
10. We asked whether the war **had been finished**.
11. I do not know how many ships there **were**.
12. We were wondering why you **feared** us.
13. Tell me why you **are** afraid.
14. We shall work in order that we **may become** rich.

**Translate into Latin**

1. The soldiers will fight bravely that they may capture the enemies’ arms.
2. Our allies were fighting well so that our enemies might not overcome us.
(3) The mother is preparing beautiful garments that she may delight the girls (maidens).
(4) The leader gave money to the old man that he might not show the place to the enemy.
(5) He has hastened into the town that he may announce the victory to the citizens.
(6) We shall fight well that we may set free our children.
(7) We shall call together the allies that the Gauls may not lay waste our lands.

Translate into English
(1) Arma servis dat ut pugnent.
(2) Legati in urbem festinabant ut victoriam nuntiarent.
(3) Dux milites laudabat ne pericula vitarent (vito (1) – to avoid).
(4) Consul praemia militibus dabit ut strenue pugnent.
(5) Agricola frumentum dat ne Galli agros vastent.
(6) Senex materiam parabat ut domum aedificaret.
(7) Consul exercitum revocavit ut in Britannia pugnet.
(8) Galli arma parabant ut contra Romanos pugnarent.
(9) Imperator legatos mittit ut omnia regi nuntient.
(10) Nautae flores in templum portaverant ut puellae statuas ornarent.

Use of Inquit
Direct speech, as we already know is the actual words of a speaker and is written between inverted commas. “The boys are singing”. He informs the master that the boys are singing.

Sometimes the verb, ‘he says, announces, reports’ etc occurs in the middle of the direct speech, thus “The boys”, he said, “are singing.” “Pueri”, inquit, “canent.” (cano, -ere, cecini, cantum = to sing). (see also canto, -are...)

In this type of sentence inquit (never dico) is used. So Remember! (a) that inquit always comes in the middle of a sentence, never at the beginning or at the end. (b) Can only be used in direct speech. Thus, “Romani,” inquit, “veniunt.” “The Romans,” he said, “are coming.”

Use of Cum (since) – The subjunctive
‘Cum’, meaning ‘since’ is often followed by the Subjunctive.

(1) Cum defessus sim, cubitum ire volo. Since I am tired, I wish to go to bed.
(2) **Cum pauci mihi restent dies, in urbem ire volo.** Since few days are left to me, I wish to go into the city.

(3) **Cum Marcus et Sextus nondum adessent, magister pueros exspectaverat.** Since Marcus and Sextus were not yet present, the master waited for the boys.

(4) **Cum servi laborarent, pueri in horto ludebant.** Since the slaves were working, the boys played in the garden.

(5) **Quod cum Lucio placeret, pueri profectus sunt.** Since this pleased Lucius, the boys set out.

**Exercise (a)**

Make each of the following pairs of sentences into a single sentence by using **cum** with the appropriate tense of the subjunctive. Then translate your sentence into English. Example: Pilam habeo. In horto ludamus. Cum pillam habeam, in horto ludamus. **Since I have a ball, let us play in the garden.**

1. Servus otiosus (otiosus –a, -um, idle) stabat. Dominus iratus erat.
2. Canes pugnant. Pueri in villam currunt.
5. Otiosus esse volo. Domi manebo.
7. Fur (thief) celeriter currebat. Pueri eum consequi non potuerant.

**Exercise (b)**

Below are a number of indirect commands; change them to the direct form, i.e. state the actual words spoken, and translate each pair into English.

**Example:** Indirect: Lucius a patre petivit ut secum ad ludos veniret – Lucius asked his father to come with him to the games. Direct: Pater, mecum ad ludos veni. “Father, come with me to the games”.

(i.) Te moneo ut cibum et lectos pares.
(ii.) Dux servos iussit raedas (coaches) quam celerrime parare.
(iii.) Rex imperavit ut cibus omnibus daretur.

**Notes**

*Iubeo*, to order, (negative) *vetare*, to forbid and *sinere*, to allow, are followed by the present infinitive in Latin as in English.

(a) **Dux raedarios iussit se sequi.** The general ordered the coachmen to follow him.
(b) **Sine me puellam parvam portare.** Allow me to carry the little girl.

Sometimes the clause of purpose after a verb of command etc must be translated quite literally.

**Result – Consecutive Clauses: how Result is expressed in Latin – The Subjunctive**

A word meaning *so, such* in the principal clause is followed by a clause introduced by *ut, that*, having its verb in the **subjunctive mood**. Such clauses are known as **Consecutive Clauses**. Note that the subjunctive of a consecutive clause is translated into English by the indicative.

**Notes:**
(a) *Adeo*, so, to such an extent, is found with verbs, adjectives, or adverbs
(b) *Tam*, so, is found only with adjectives and adverbs; *Tam.....quam; so......as*
(c.) *Ita*, so, in such a way, is only found with verbs

**Examples:**
(1) *Avis tam callida est ut omnes delectet*. The bird is so clever that it amuses everyone.
(2) *Avis tam callida est ut omnes delectaverit*. The bird is so clever that it amused everyone
(3) *Avis tam callida erat ut omnes delectaret*. The bird was so clever that it amused everyone.
(4) *Manceps tam invidus erat ut avem occiderit*. The stallholder was so jealous that he actually killed the bird.

Unlike clauses of purpose which use only the present or imperfect subjunctive, consecutive clauses use any tense of the subjunctive which the meaning requires. *Adeo canis parva animalia contempsit ut non surgeret*. The dog so despised small animals that it did not rise.

Unlike clauses of **purpose**, which have negative **ne**, any negative (**non, numquam, nemo, nullus**) is found after **ut** in consecutive clauses.

**Translate into Latin**
(1) Obi is such a man that all the citizens praise him
(2) So great was the crowd that it was difficult to walk.
(3) The danger was so great that we were really afraid.
(4) The city has been so destroyed that we can never return there (thither).
(5) The bird was so clever that it greeted Caesar by name.
(6) The man was so jealous that he killed the bird.
(7) So great was the anger of the citizens that the man fled.

Indirect Questions

Study the following examples.

Mihi roganti num studeret respondi ‘etiam’.

Direct question: Studesne?
When I asked if (whether) he went to school, he replied ‘yes’.

Direct question: Ubi iucundius morari possint?
Tell me where they can stay pleasantly.

Direct question? Nonne pueri domi student?
Rogavi utrum domi morari vellent necne.

Direct question: Utrum domi morari vultis anon?
I asked whether they wished to stay at home or not.

Note:
(1) The verb of the indirect question is in the subjunctive. This is translated into English by the indicative.
(2) It follows a verb meaning to ask, say, think, namely rogare, dicere, aestimare etc.
(3) It is introduced by an interrogative word such as num – if, whether; utrum…..an – whether…or; utrum …..necne- whether or not; quis, quid – who, what; cur – why; quando – when; ubi….where; unde – where from; quo – where to; quam – how; unde – from where.

E.g (a) Nesciebamus quam altum flumen esset. We did not know how deep the river was. (b) Dic mihi unde hoc cognoveris. Tell me (from) where you have learned this.

Exercises

Write down the direct form of each of the following indirect questions. Then translate both indirect and direct forms into English;

e.g. Dic mihi quid facturi sitis. Tell me what you will do or are going to do. Quid facietis or Facturi estis? What will you do? Or What are you going to do?
Translate into English
(1) Puerum rogavi num legere et scribere sciret.
(2) Dicite mihi utrum hic studere velitis necne.
(3) Nesciebam cur pueri Romam abiissent.
(4) Nunc intellego cur domi non manseritis.
(5) Rogo quando magistros conducturi sitis.
(6) 'Dicite mihi,' inquam, 'quid feceritis.'
(7) Patres rogavi none (not?, surely) magistros conducere conati (conor, -ari, conatus sum (try, attempt)) essent
(8) Me rogaverunt unde magistros conducere possent
(9) Videbitis quam diligentius pueri student.
(10) Pueri mirantur quales (what kind of) magistros habituri sint.

Conditional Sentences & The subjunctive

A conditional sentence is one which contains a clause introduced by si, if, or nisi, unless.

Simple Condition
When a verb is in the indicative mood, the type of condition is referred to as ‘simple condition’ and the following application is possible: If ‘a’ (is, was, will be) true, then ‘b’ (is, was, will be) true, as in the following examples:

(1) Si otiosus es, tecum colloqui volo. If you are at leisure (idle, free), I wish to speak to you.
(2) Si superaverit, ingens pondus auri habebit. If he wins, he will receive a great weight of gold.
(3) Si pluebat, domi manebamus. If it rained, we stayed at home.
(4) Nisi defessus es, ad balnea ibimus. Unless you are tired, we shall go to the baths.

Improbable Condition
When the verb in both the si-clause and the principal clause is in the present subjunctive, the condition is said to be ‘improbable’. Thus, “If, suppose, should, in case a were to come true, b would be true. Si pater ille fiat, (fiam, fias etc; from fieri, to become) te castiget. If he were to become the father, he would scold you. Si magister pueros otiosis videret, quid faciant?

Translate into English
(1) Si filius patrem castiget, ego rideam.
(2) Si audiam Sextum aprum (aper, apri, boar) cepisse, non credam.
(3) Si te aprum cepisse dicis, tibi credo.
(4) Si magister pueros dimitat, ego gaudeam.
(5) Si magistros conduxeritis (conducere, hire), filii vestri domi educabuntur.
(6) Si ad ludos eam, nihil novum videam.

Translate into Latin
(1) If you are my friend, you will help me.
(2) If a lion were to come, I would run away.
(3) If the boys arrive at school late, the master will scold them.
(4) If my son were to become a merchant, he would be rich.
(5) If my father were a king, I would be a happy boy.
(6) Unless the soldiers fought hard, they would not win the battle.

Unfulfilled Conditions.
When the verb of the if-clause is in the perfect subjunctive and that of the principal clause in the imperfect, and the condition cannot be fulfilled, the condition is referred to as unfulfilled. If a were to be true (but it is not) b would be true (but it is not).

1. Si adesset, libenter eum vobis traderem. If he were here (but he is not), I would gladly hand him over to you.
2. Si paulo ante pervenissetis, eum invenissetis vivum. If you had come a little earlier (but you did not), you would have found him alive (but you did not).

Translate into English
(1) Si dominus meus inventus erit, occidetur.
(2) Si dominus meus inveniatur, occidatur.
(3) Si dominus meus adesset, in magno periculo esset.
(4) Nisi dominum celavero (hide), milites eum invenient.
(5) Nisi dominum celavissem, milites eum invenissent.
(6) Si dominum militibus tradidisset, iam liber essem.

FOURTH DECLENSION NOUNS

Notes:
1. Most fourth declension nouns ending in –us are masculine, except manus and domus; manus, manus, f, hand. Domus, domus, f, house, home. Domus has some forms in 2nd declension, namely domo, abl sing, and domos, acc plu.
2. All words ending in –u are neuter.
3. Some nouns have –ubus for –ibus. This tends to occur whenever the third declension has words of closely similar form, e.g., artubus – from artus, limbs. The genitive singular is –us and genitive plural –um.

Some fourth declension nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercitus</td>
<td>Army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manus (f)</td>
<td>Hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domus (f)</td>
<td>House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adventus</td>
<td>Arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradus</td>
<td>Step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metus</td>
<td>Fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passus</td>
<td>Step, pace, mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portus</td>
<td>Harbour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senatus</td>
<td>The Senate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genu (n)</td>
<td>Knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veru (n)</td>
<td>Spit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Artus</td>
<td>Limb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arcus</td>
<td>Bow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu (n)</td>
<td>Horn, Wing of an army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acus (f)</td>
<td>Needle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arcus</td>
<td>Bow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partus</td>
<td>Offspring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribus</td>
<td>Tribe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacus</td>
<td>Lake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magistratus</td>
<td>Magistrate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Declension of Exercitus, An Army

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercitus</td>
<td>Exercitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercitus</td>
<td>Exercitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercitum</td>
<td>Exercitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercitus</td>
<td>Exercitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercitui</td>
<td>Exercitibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercitu</td>
<td>Exercitibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Declension of Cornu, horn, wing of an army

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td>Cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td>Cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td>Cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornus</td>
<td>Cornuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td>Cornibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td>Cornibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Declension of Domus, home**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Domus</td>
<td>Domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domus</td>
<td>Domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domum</td>
<td>Domos, or Domus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domus</td>
<td>Domorum or Domuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domo or Domui</td>
<td>Domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domo</td>
<td>Domibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The locative case of ‘domus’ is ‘domi’ – at home; domum, home, homewards; domo, from home.

**Take note of the following**

1. Marci manus est sordida. Marcus‘ hand is dirty.
3. Cives iram senatus timent. The citizens fear the anger of the senate.
4. Consul epistulam senatui recitat. The consul reads the letter to the senate.
5. Marcus librum in manu habet. Marcus has a book in his hand.
7. Marcus manum lavat. Marcus washes his hands.
8. Cives iram magistratuum timent. The citizens fear the anger of the magistrates.
9. Orator epistulam magistratibus recitat. The speaker reads the letter to the magistrates.
10. Pueri libros in manibus habent. The boys have books in their hands.

**Translate into Latin**

1. The slaves fear the arrival of the Lord.
2. The bull wounds the hunter with (its) horns.
3. The chariots of the consul are in the field.
4. In the harbours of Britain are many ships.
(5) The leader of the army is the consul.
(6) The Gauls have led their army into Italy.
(7) The attack of the Romans terrified the Gauls.
(8) There are many ships in the port.
(9) Caesar leads the army across the mountains
(10) In the harbours of Britain are many sailors.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION NOUNS

Notes:
(1) Nouns of the fifth declension end in –es, with genitive in –ei.
(2) Gender: dies and meridies (mid-day) are masculine. The rest are feminine.
(3) dies and res are the only nouns of the 5th declension which are declined throughout in singular and plural.
(4) “res” means thing or things in the sense of circumstances or affairs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Res</td>
<td>Res</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Res</td>
<td>Res</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rem</td>
<td>Res</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rei</td>
<td>Rerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rei</td>
<td>Rebus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re</td>
<td>Rebus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dies</td>
<td>Dies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dies</td>
<td>Dies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diem</td>
<td>Dies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diei</td>
<td>Dierum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diei</td>
<td>Diebus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Die</td>
<td>Diebus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some 5th declension nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acies</td>
<td>Line of battle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facies</td>
<td>Face</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spes</td>
<td>Hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Res</td>
<td>Thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planities</td>
<td>Plain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Res Secundae</td>
<td>Prosperity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Res Adversae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Res Adversae</th>
<th>Adversity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Respublica</td>
<td>The State, the common wealth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nota bene: (1) Dies is commonly found in expressions of time such as:
(a) Domo discessimus **tertio die**. We left home **on the third day**. (ablative)
(b) Domum veniemus **tribus diebus**. We shall come home **in three days** (ablative).
(c.) Domi manebamus **tres dies**. We remained at home **for three days**. (accusative)

(2.) **Res**, like its English counterpart, **thing**, has a great many shades of meaning. One very common one is found in the phrase **res publica**, the state, the republic.

**Exercises**
Give the genitive singular, the dative singular and meaning of the following: senatus, genu, portus, metus, passus, domus, adventus.

Decline together in the singular only: (a) prima acies (b) bona fides
Decline together in the plural only: (a) dies clarus (b) Respublica.

**Translate**
(a) Octoginta et viginti sunt centum.
(b) Sexaginta septem milites ad summum arcem ascenderunt.
(c) Insidiae erant periculosae.

**NOUNS USED IN SINGULAR AND PLURAL ONLY**
Some nouns are found only in the singular, others only in the plural. Below are given the most common of these.

**Singular only**
Argentum, argenti, n – silver
Aurum, aurī, n – gold
Caelum, caeli, n – heaven, the sky
Humus, humili, f – ground, soil
Ver, veris, n – spring (season)

**Plural only**
Arma, armorum, n – arms (weapons)
Artus, artuum, m – limbs
Divitiae, divitiarum, f – riches
Hiberna, hibernorum, n – winter quarters
Indutiae, indutiarum, f – a truce
Insidiae, insidiarum, f – an ambush, a trap
Liberi, liberorum, m – children
Moenia, moenium, n – town walls, fortifications
Tenebrae, tenebrarum, f – darkness

Note: It all follows that a plural noun must be accompanied by a plural adjective and a plural verb, even though the sentence may appear in English in the singular; e.g., “Indutiae vestrae sunt bonae – Your truce is a good one.

Some important irregular verbs – Recap
(1) Possum – I am able; (has been treated)
(2) Capio – capere - ceci - captum - I take, I capture

Capio
Capio is a verb of third conjugation, although most of its forms follow closely those of the fourth conjugation. Learn all the forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present indicative</th>
<th>Future simple</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capio</td>
<td>Capiam</td>
<td>Capiebam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capis</td>
<td>Capies</td>
<td>Capiebas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capit</td>
<td>Capiet</td>
<td>Capiebat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capimus</td>
<td>Capiemus</td>
<td>Capiebamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capitis</td>
<td>Capietis</td>
<td>Capiebatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capiunt</td>
<td>Capient</td>
<td>Capiebant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I take, I capture</td>
<td>I shall take</td>
<td>I took</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect ind.</th>
<th>Future perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cepi</td>
<td>Cepero</td>
<td>Ceperam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cepisti</td>
<td>Ceperis</td>
<td>Ceperas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cepit</td>
<td>Ceperit</td>
<td>Ceperat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cepimus</td>
<td>Ceperimus</td>
<td>Ceperamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cepistis</td>
<td>Ceperitis</td>
<td>Ceperatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceperunt</td>
<td>Ceperint</td>
<td>Ceperant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have taken</td>
<td>I shall have taken</td>
<td>I had taken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive of Capio
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The following important verbs are conjugated like “Capio”

Cupio – cupere – cupivi – cupitum – I desire
Facio – facere – feci – factum – I do, I make
Fugio (effugio) – fugere – fugi – fugitum – I escape, I flee
Iacio – iacere – ieci – iactum – I throw
Rapio – rapere – rapui – raptum – I seize, I carry off

Some useful compounds of “Facio”
Afficio – afficere – affeci – affectum – I do, I affect
Conficio – I complete, I accomplish
Deficio – I remove, I fail, I am wanting
Efficio – I make out, I accomplish, I bring to pass
Interficio – I kill
Praeficio – I set over, I put in charge of (dative)
Reficio – I re-make, I restore
Sufficio – I am sufficient

(3) Volo, velle, volui – wish, be willing
(4) Nolo, nolle, nolui – refuse, be unwilling
(5) Malo, malle, malui – prefer
(6) Eo, ire, ivi, itum – go
(7) Fio, fieri, factus sum – be made, become.

Present indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volo</th>
<th>Nolo</th>
<th>Eo</th>
<th>Fio</th>
<th>Malo</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vis</td>
<td>Nonvis</td>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Fis</td>
<td>Mavis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vult</td>
<td>Nonvult</td>
<td>It</td>
<td>Fit</td>
<td>Mavult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volumus</td>
<td>Nolumus</td>
<td>Imus</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>Malumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volutis</td>
<td>Nonvultis</td>
<td>Itis</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>Mavultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volunt</td>
<td>Nolunt</td>
<td>Eunt</td>
<td>fiunt</td>
<td>Malunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volam</th>
<th>Nolam</th>
<th>Ibo</th>
<th>Fiam</th>
<th>Malam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voles</td>
<td>Noles</td>
<td>Ibis</td>
<td>Fies</td>
<td>Males</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etc</td>
<td>Etc</td>
<td>Etc</td>
<td>Etc</td>
<td>Etc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volebam</th>
<th>Nolebam</th>
<th>Ibam</th>
<th>Fiebam</th>
<th>Malebam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volui</th>
<th>Nolui</th>
<th>Ivi (ii)</th>
<th><strong>Factus sum</strong></th>
<th>Malui</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future Perf**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voluero</th>
<th>Noluero</th>
<th>Ivero</th>
<th>Factus ero</th>
<th>Maluero</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Pluper**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volueram</th>
<th>Nolueram</th>
<th>Iveram</th>
<th>Factus eram</th>
<th>Malueram</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Participle of ‘eo’ – I go

Present: iens, euntis - *“Euntes ergo docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos in Nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti, docents eos servare omnia quaecumque mandavi vos : et ecce ego vobiscum sum omnibus diebus ad consummationem saeculi.”* (Mt. 28: 19 – 20)

#### Eo – I go

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present ind</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eo</td>
<td>Ibo</td>
<td>Ibam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Ibis</td>
<td>Ibas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>Ibit</td>
<td>Ibat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imus</td>
<td>Ibimus</td>
<td>Ibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is</td>
<td>Ibitis</td>
<td>Ibatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eunt</td>
<td>Ibunt</td>
<td>Iabant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I go</td>
<td>I shall go</td>
<td>I was going</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ii or ivi</td>
<td>iero, ivero</td>
<td>Ieram, iveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isti, ivisti</td>
<td>ieris, iveris</td>
<td>Ieras, iveras</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Subjunctive Mood of Eo, I go

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Eam</td>
<td>Irem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eas</td>
<td>Ires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eat</td>
<td>Iret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eamus</td>
<td>Iremus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eatis</td>
<td>Iretis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eant</td>
<td>Irent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I may go</td>
<td>I might go</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect subjunctive</th>
<th>Pluperfect subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ierim</td>
<td>lissem, ivissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ieris</td>
<td>lisses, ivisses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ierit</td>
<td>lisset, ivisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ierimus</td>
<td>lissemus, ivissemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ieritis</td>
<td>lissetis, ivissetis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ierint</td>
<td>lissent, ivissent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I may have gone</td>
<td>I should have gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitives</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I, euntem, going</td>
<td>I, to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isse, ivisse, to have gone</td>
<td>Itum, supine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ite missa est = Go! The mass is ended.

Compounds of eo

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres, iens (acc)</th>
<th>Infinitives</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abeo</td>
<td>Abire</td>
<td>abi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adeo</td>
<td>Adire</td>
<td>adi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Perfect Tenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exeo</td>
<td>Exire</td>
<td>exii, exitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ineo</td>
<td>Inire</td>
<td>ini, initum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redeo</td>
<td>Redire</td>
<td>redii, reditum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pereo</td>
<td>Perire</td>
<td>perii, peritum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Praetero</td>
<td>praeterire</td>
<td>praeterii, praeritum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subeo</td>
<td>Subire</td>
<td>subii, subitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transeo</td>
<td>transire</td>
<td>transii, transitum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exo, -ire, ivi, itum** = I may go. **Eat** = He may go.  
**Exeo, -ire, ivi, itum** = I may go out. **Exeat** = He may go out.

**Fio, I am made, I become**

**Facio, I make, I do**, has no passive forms throughout its present system, and for these **fio** is used. The perfect passive tenses of **facio** are formed regularly, namely, **factus sum, factus ero, factus eram, factus sim, factus essem**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fio</td>
<td>Fiam</td>
<td>Fiebam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fis</td>
<td>Fies</td>
<td>Fiebas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fit</td>
<td>Fiet</td>
<td>Fiebat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fimus</td>
<td>Fiemus</td>
<td>Fiebamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fitis</td>
<td>Fietis</td>
<td>Fiebatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiunt</td>
<td>Fient</td>
<td>Fiebant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am made, become</td>
<td>I shall become</td>
<td>I was made</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
(1) I have become is translated by **sum**, I am, and I have been made by **factus sum**.
(2) Et Verbum caro **factum est**. / Et habitavit in nobis.  
(3) Ecce ancila Domini/ **Fiat** mihi secundum verbum tuum.
PART TWO

APPLICATION OF LATIN TO ENGLISH LANGUAGE

A student’s good knowledge of Latin, no doubt affects positively his English – oral and written. Many English words we use today – small and big, simple and difficult, come from Latin. Generally Latin words appear in English in three forms:

(1) Latin Words That Are Still Latin:

There are words and phrases that are just the same today as they were when they came from the lips of the Romans more than 2000 years ago. When we use them we are conscious that we are using Latin. Examples: My “alma mater” referring to the school, university or an institution I graduated from. The teacher’s salary “per annum”. Even when we must apply the plural of any of these Latin words, we consciously use the correct plural form. Examples: The handicapped students come from various strata (from ‘stratum’) of the community; radius – radii; memorandum – memoranda. Such words though Latin are, however, given English pronunciation.

Take note of some other Latin words, phrases, and abbreviations we use regularly today. Do you know what they mean?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anno Domini</td>
<td>ante bellum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>per diem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Via</td>
<td>per capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E Pluribus Unum</td>
<td>ad libitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terra firma</td>
<td>Incognito</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finis</td>
<td>pro tempore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post mortem</td>
<td>ex tempore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pater noster</td>
<td>vice versa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bona fide</td>
<td>per annum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) Latin Words That Have Become English

Secondly, there are many words that retain their original Latin form but have become so much a part of our language that we use them without being aware of their Latin origin. These words have plurals with the English form. The following are examples of this class of words:
(3) English Derivatives

Thirdly, there are words that are derived from Latin but have more or less changed their original form and meaning. These words are far more numerous than the words of the other two classes. Unless you have studied Latin, you will not realize how large is the proportion of words of Latin origin in the books or newspapers you may be reading. We will spend more time on this last class of English words derived from Latin.

Give the Latin word and its meaning with which each of the following words is connected by derivation. Please, try and look up any difficult word you encounter in your English dictionary. Examples will help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Invisible</td>
<td>video -ere</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditor</td>
<td>audio -ire</td>
<td>to hear, listen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocation, revocation, convocation</td>
<td>voco -are</td>
<td>to call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obvious (certain, right way), obviate (clear the way, get rid of any danger on the way), devious (roundabout way, winding), deviate (change from right way) impervious (tight way, passage)</td>
<td>Via</td>
<td>way, path, road, street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogate</td>
<td>rogo -are</td>
<td>to ask, question, inquire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innumerable</td>
<td>numero, -are</td>
<td>to count, enumerate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acclamation</td>
<td>clamo, -are</td>
<td>to shout, cry aloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pecuniary</td>
<td>pecunia</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unity</td>
<td>unio, -ire</td>
<td>to unite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Latin Form</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stability</td>
<td>sto, -are</td>
<td>to stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dual (of two, double)</td>
<td>duo, -ae, -o</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decimal (of ten, one-tenth)</td>
<td>decem (X); decima</td>
<td>a tenth part, tithe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aquarium (artificial pond)</td>
<td>Aqua</td>
<td>water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correspondence</td>
<td>respondeo –ere</td>
<td>reply, answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habitation</td>
<td>habito, -are</td>
<td>live, dwell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arable (land)</td>
<td>aro, -are</td>
<td>plough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>locus, –i</td>
<td>place, position, status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td>liber, libri</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ludicrous, (also, ridiculous), something causing laughter, a trifle</td>
<td>ludus, -I (see also ‘ludus’ – school)</td>
<td>game, sport, a jest, a trifle – event of little value or importance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bellicose (inclined to fighting, anxious to quarrel and fight; unfriendly and bellicose attitude)</td>
<td>from “bellum” – i,</td>
<td>war, battle; see also “belligerent” (state, party, nation, waging war.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permanent</td>
<td>maneo, -ere</td>
<td>to remain, stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horticulture (art of growing flowers, fruits and vegetables)</td>
<td>hortus, -i</td>
<td>garden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventilation (cause air to move in and out freely)</td>
<td>ventus, -i</td>
<td>wind,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbose (using or containing more words than are needed); a verbose speech, speaker</td>
<td>verbum, -i</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nautical</td>
<td>nato, -are nauta, -ae</td>
<td>swim sailor (of ship, sailor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>premonition (warning in advance, e.g., of approaching danger)</td>
<td>moneo, monere,</td>
<td>to remind, warn, advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin Word</td>
<td>English Derivatives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuntiare</td>
<td>pronunciation, announcement, pronouncement, denounce.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um</td>
<td>(malus – peior – pessimus – bad – worse – worst); also malum –i, an evil, a disaster: malediction – (curse, prayer to God that somebody or something may be destroyed or harmed); malevolent, malice, malignant; malignity (deep-rooted-ill-will); The following words are also derived from “malus”: malnutrition, malodorous, malpractice, maltreat, maladministration, malfunction. Check up the meaning of each word in your dictionary.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delecto</td>
<td>– to please, delight, pleases, delights: delicious, delectable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cura, -are</td>
<td>– take care of, care: accurate, careful. Careless</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cras, -tomo</td>
<td>– tomorrow: procrastination, procrastinate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>porto, -are</td>
<td>– to carry – portable (lantern, stove, radio), reporter, transport, deport, export</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Give as many derivatives as you can with meanings of the following Latin words: In this case the Latin word is given and you are expected to name as many English derivatives as possible. Examples will help you!

1. **Nuntiare** – to report, announce: pronunciation, annunciation, pronunciation, denounce.
2. **Malus, -a, -um** - (malus – peior – pessimus – bad – worse – worst); also **malum –i**, an evil, a disaster: **malediction** – (curse, prayer to God that somebody or something may be destroyed or harmed); **malevolent, malice, malignant; malignity** (deep-rooted-ill-will); The following words are also derived from “malus”: malnutrition, malodorous, malpractice, maltreat, maladministration, malfunction. Check up the meaning of each word in your dictionary.
3. **Delecto** - to please, delight, pleases, delights: delicious, delectable
4. **Cura, -are** – to care of, care: accurate, careful. Careless
5. **Cras** - tomorrow: procrastination, procrastinate
6. **Porto**,-are: to carry – portable (lantern, stove, radio), reporter, transport, deport, export.
7. **Caput**, -itis (n) – the head, a person: capital, decapitate, capitalize
9. **Vita**, -ae, life – vital, vitality
10. **Anima**, -ae – animation, inanimate,
11. **Scio**, scire, scivi, scitum – to know – science, scientific
12. **Servus**, -i; serva, -ae – slave, servant, enslave, service,
14. **Corpus**, -i, body – corporal, cooperation, incorporate,
15. **Homo**, -inis – man, mankind – homicide, homosexual, hermaphrodite
16. **Magnus**, -a, -um – great, big – magnitude, magnificent, magnanimous, magnify
17. **Culpa**, -ae – fault – culprit, culpable
18. **Cor**, cordis – heart – cordial
19. **Omnis**, omnia, - all, every, - omnipotent, omniscience, omnivorous, omnibus,
20. **Nomen** –inis, name – nominate, nominal.

Here are more examples. Some explanatory notes are included to help you. You can take up some other familiar words and try yourself.

1. **Novelty** (e.g.’ novelty football match) – novus, -a, -um = new
2. **Spectacular, spectator** (spectacular event) – specto –are, = look, observe, inspect, examine
3. **Vocation** (vocation to the priesthood, a call..) – voco, -are
4. **Sedentary** (sedentary life, settled at a location; opposed to ‘wandering, roving…; roving commission, ambassador; re-Fulani cattle wanderers) – sedeo, -ere; sit
5. **Risible** (i.e., laughable drama. scenario) – rideo, ridere, risi, risum – laugh, smile
6. **Fabulous** (of story, incredible, absurd); fabula, -ae – story, fable
7. **Invalid** (weak or disabled through illness or injury) – invalidus –a, -um = ill
8. **Untenable** (impossible, hard to obtain, reach) teneo, -ere, tenui, tentum (2), hold, know, get
9. **Inaudible** (not clear, loud to understand or hear) – audio –ire = hear
10. **Audience** (congregation, gathering of listeners) –audio, -ire = listen, hear
11. President, supersede, residence, residue, subside,
dissident, sediment (name one Latin word); praesedeo, -
sedi, -sessum – preside, govern, direct, rule
12. Commission, dismiss, intermission, permission, ; mitto
–ere, -si, missum - send
13. Refuge, refugee, flight; refugio, -ere, -fugi, fugitum (3) –
escape,
14. Renew, renewal, renovation; novo –are – make new.
15. Ominous, e.g, ominous silence, calm, warning, sign; omen, -
inis (n) – sign.
16. Itinerary (programme of journey); reiterate (travel over the
same subject in speech again and again). Iter, itineris –
journey (n)
17. Conjugate (in Latin studies, something like ‘joining’
‘yoking’ together of stem, tense sign and personal endings;
subjugate. (con)iungo, -ere, iunxi, iunctum (3) - unite
18. Audience (gathering of persons for the purpose of hearing
a speaker or a singer); audio-visual- aids, audition, auditor,
auditorium, auditory) ; audio –ire - hear
19. Laudable, laudatory; laudo, -are = praise
20. Manual, manage, manuscript; manus, -us (4) = hand;
manus-scribo = handwritten.
21. Scribe, scribble, script, inscribe, describe, subscribe;
scribo, -ere = write
22. Disciple, discipline; discipulus, -i = disciple, scholar,
23. Dormitory; dormio, -ire = sleep
24. Mural (e.g, extra – mural studies); murus, -i (m) = wall
25. Agent, agenda; ago, -ere, egi, actum (3) = act, lead
26. Inscription; scribo - write
27. Impeccable; pecco, -are = I sin, commit fault, fail, err.
Opposite = sinless, faultless.
28. Potential; potens, -entis = capable
29. Nocturnal; nox, noctis = night
30. Fidelity; fides, -ei = faith, trust, confidence
31. Docile, doctor, indoctrination; doceo, -ere = teach
32. Dignity; dignus, -a, -um = worthy, fitting
33. Renew, renovate; novus –a, -um = new
34. Servitude; servus, -i = slave
35. Advent; advenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum = arrival.
36. Invention; invenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum (4) = discover,
find out
Here’s also a list of Latin expressions with applicable examples that can be used in English often enough to have become part of the language. Try your own applicable examples.

1. **Sine die** – without a fixed date, indefinitely; The chairman adjourned the meeting.
2. **Sine qua non** – essential condition; Credit in Mathematics is a necessary condition for admission into the University of Technology.
3. **Persona non grata** – person not accepted or received like others; Mr. Duwuodu Sonkoya has been declared persona non grata in the United States of America. He was caught with a fake United States passport.
4. **Viva voce** – oral (loud voice). The second paper is meant to be only a viva voce examination or test. Students are not expected to bring along any writing materials.
5. **Bona fide** – genuine (member of); Only bona fide students of the institution are expected to sit for the scholarship examination.
6. **Ad interim** – in the mean time; Professor George was appointed Head of Department of Engineering ad interim. Elections for the post would be held at the beginning of the new academic session.
7. **Ultra vires** – beyond one’s power or authority granted by law. In granting asylum to the refugees without the approval of the Senate, the president has acted ultra vires.
8. **Vox populi** – voice of the people, public opinion. There is no need for further debate. Let’s accept the vox populi.
9. **Addendum** – something omitted that is to be added. The last paragraph of his speech was only an addendum. It was not in the original handout the minister distributed to the protesters.
10. **Ad hoc** – arranged for a particular purpose. We should not worry about the matter. An ad hoc committee was constituted to oversee a grand reception of the new traditional ruler.
11. **Ad libitum** – something performed without restraint, e.g., music.
12. **Ad nauseam** – to a ridiculous point, e.g., because of repetition or emphasis. The lecturer continued ad nauseam to enumerate the chain of degrees he said he acquired overseas.
13. Facilis dicere quam facere est – easily said than done! The politician promised heaven and earth to the people.
Don’t mind him ................!
14. Homo lupus homini est – Man is wolf to man. I couldn’t believe he was the culprit. Truly ..................
15. Roma locuta, causa finita est – Rome has spoken, the case is ended. The president has the last word on the matter. It is all over!..................
16. Hic et nunc – here and now. The chief does not tolerate any delay or procrastination. He wants the matter discussed and settled ...........!
17. Amor habendi, habendo crescit – The love of having increases by having. Most politicians are never satisfied with wealth and power. O, yes! Don’t you know that ...........
18. Nemo dat quod non habet – No one gives what he does not have (possess). This man is bereft (bereaved) of good morals. All his children are rogues and liars. O, yes; how would one expect them to behave differently. Surely ..........?
19. Ex tempore – done or spoken without previous thought or preparation. President Barrack Obama of the United States of America is a wonderful politician and speaker. He speaks to large audiences .........., namely without notes!
20. Ex abundatio cordis os loquitur – From the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks. Don’t take his utterances as a joke. His is not kidding! ..........................
21. Semel pro semper – once and for all. We must settle this matter ...........
22. Mens sana in corpore sano – a healthy mind in a healthy body.
23. Usus magister egregius – experience is the best teacher. Please listen to the old man. He has spent many years as a teacher. Don’t you know that......................
24. Exempli gratia (e.g, ) – for example, for instance.
25. Gratiam dicendi facere – to allow to speak
26. Gratis – without recompense or pay; Children and old people were admitted in the hall...........
Now follow the above method and ‘invent’, ‘construct’ your own sentences where the latin expressions will easily fit in. Good luck!

1. **Ab initio** – from the beginning
2. **Ad rem** – to the matter (at hand), to the point, purpose
3. **Ad judicem** – before a judge
4. **Ad extremum** – entirely
5. **Ad summum** – on the whole
6. **Ad verbum** – literally
7. **Memoria tenere** – to remember
8. **Rem manu tenere** – to have at one’s fingers’ tips, to understand. Know.
9. **Lupus auribus teneo** – I am holding the wolf by the ears.
10. **Lupus pilum mutat, non mentem**, The wolf changes its coast, not its character.
11. **Aquila non captat muscas**; An eagle does not catch flies.
12. **Elephantum ex musca facis**, You are making an elephant our of a fly.
13. **Anguillam cauda teneo**, I am holding an eel by the tail.
14. **A priori**; From what comes before
15. **Ad absurdum**; to the point of absurdity.
16. **Ad infinitum**, without limit, endless
17. **Ad nauseam**, to a sickening extent
18. **Alma Mater**, One’s old school (literally ‘bounteous, generous mother’).
19. **Alter ego, other (alternative) self**
20. **Annus horribus, a horrible year**
21. **Agnus Dei, Lamb of God**
22. **Aqua pura; pure water**
23. **Aqua vitae, water of life**
24. **Ars longa, vita brevis**; Skill takes time to acquire, but life is short.
25. **Ave Maria, Hail Mary**
26. **Caveat emptor, let the buyer beware**
27. **Cogito ergo sum**, I think, therefore I am
28. **Corpus Christi**, The body of Christ
29. **De facto, In fact** – in reality.
30. **Dei gratia**, by the grace of God
31. **E Pluribus Unum**, One from many
32. **Ex libris**, ‘out of the books’, i.e. from the library
33. **In absentia**, In one’s absence
34. **In camera**, in private chamber
35. **In flagrante delicto**, in the act of committing an offence
36. **In loco parentis**, in the place of a parent
37. **In vitro**, in a test tube (literally, ‘in glass’)
38. **Ipso facto**, By that very act
39. **Magnum opus**, a great work
40. **Mea culpa**, my fault
41. **Modus operandi**, (m. o.) Mode of operating.
42. **Nolens volens**, willing or unwilling (see also, willy-nilly)
43. **Post partum**, after childbirth
44. **Praemonitus, praemunitus**, forewarned is forearmed
45. **Prima facie**, at first sight, on the face of it
46. **Pro bono**, without charge, for the public good.
47. **Opus Dei**, the work of God
48. **Quid pro quo**, Something for something, i.e. a favor for a favor
49. **Quo vadis**, where are you going?
50. **Rigor mortis**, the rigidity of death
51. **Semper fidelis**, always faithful
52. **Status quo**, the current state of things
53. **Sub judice**, before a court
54. **Tempus fugit**, time flees
55. **Terra firma**, solid ground
56. **Veni, vidi, vici**, I came, I saw, I conquered
57. **Vice versa**, the other way round.

**LATIN IDIOMS, PHRASES, AND PROVERBS**

Idioms, figures of speech, literary devices, proverbs and ‘wise sayings’ are interrelated subjects of interest in the study of any language, ancient and modern. There is need to examine them in our study of Latin.

**Figure of Speech** refers to word or group of words used to give particular emphasis to an idea or sentiment. The special emphasis is typically accomplished by the user’s conscious deviation from the strict literal sense of a word, or from the more commonly used form of word order or sentence construction. From ancient times to the present, such figurative locutions have been extensively employed by orators and writers to strengthen and embellish their styles of speech and composition.

**Literary devices** are tools, which enable dramatists or playwrights execute their constructions and these include drama, pun, soliloquy, comic relief, etc.
An **Idiom**, (Latin, *idioma*, special property, special feature, special phrasing, is an expression, a word, or phrase that has a figurative meaning that is comprehended in regard to a common use of that expression, that is separate from the literal meaning or definition of the words of which it is made. Generally an idiom is a *colloquial metaphor*, a term requiring some foundational knowledge, information, or experience, to use only within a culture, where conversational parties must possess common cultural references. Idioms, therefore, are not considered part of the language, but part of a culture. As culture typically localized, idioms often are useless beyond their local context; nevertheless, some idioms can be more universal than others, can be easily translated, and the metaphoric meaning can be deduced.

Many lawyers and students of English in Nigeria, as elsewhere love inserting **Latin idioms or idiomatic expressions** in their speeches and writings to embellish them. Groups of people of various ages enjoy specific character of their languages and dialects, which can be described as succession of words whose meanings are not obvious through knowledge of the individual meanings of the constituent words, but must be learnt as a whole.

**Idiomatic expressions** abound in Latin. Students should try to master these idioms, most of which we are already conversant with in our English language studies.

As in English Language, some Latin idioms or proverbs are drawn from the observation of the animal world. The wolf itself features in several of them. For example, in a certain Latin comedy, when the person being discussed suddenly appears, the speaker exclaims, “**Lupus in fabula**”, *the wolf in the story*. It might be said of someone who ran true to form (in an uncomplimentary sense). We will try to illustrate with other examples where necessary.

In Igbo language, for example, when someone is said to be ‘**mbé**’ (tortoise), it simply means he is deceitful, cunning, deceiving, dishonest, or devious person. When someone is referred to as ‘**udéle**’ (vulture), the person no doubt is ugly or nasty. In discovering a real culprit in a serious criminal investigation, the person may be referred to as ‘**óchicha**’ (cochroach) or ‘**óchicha mere ihe eboro oke**’ (a cochoach that committed a crime thought to have been accomplished by a rat). When it is said that two people or families do not use the same pathway (‘**Ha anaghi esi otu uzo aga**’), it means they are bitter enemies.

It may be useful also to familiarize ourselves with some **English idiomatic expressions**, which have special meanings usually different from the ordinary usage. Surely idioms cannot be translated into other
languages without losing their original meaning. Can you suggest other Igbo, Yoruba, Hausa, Efik, Edo or Ibibio equivalents for any of the following English and Latin idioms?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IDIOM</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To kick the bucket</td>
<td>Cease to live; to die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Break new grounds</td>
<td>To start something new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out of touch with someone</td>
<td>No longer familiar with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Break the ice</td>
<td>Make a move to ease the tension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand on ceremony</td>
<td>To be very formal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Keep an open house</td>
<td>Ready to welcome guests any time into one’s home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lose control of oneself</td>
<td>Act rashly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To mend fences</td>
<td>Repair damaged relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stepping on someone’s toes</td>
<td>Offend a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sitting on the fence</td>
<td>Uncommitted to a course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taking law into one's hands</td>
<td>Acting at personal liberty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throwing in the towel</td>
<td>Surrendering in a contest and admitting a defeat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To be beside oneself</td>
<td>Unable to control emotions – joy, anger, excitement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mincing no words</td>
<td>Saying exactly what one means – no quibbling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take someone to task</td>
<td>Discussing a matter with someone, while putting him in a difficult and defensive position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To pick bones with</td>
<td>Criticise something one has done wrongly or failed to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross words with someone</td>
<td>Have serious disagreement with someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To leave no stone unturned</td>
<td>To do every conceivable thing to find the truth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To close ranks</td>
<td>To undermine differences for some mutual interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To turn down (request)</td>
<td>To refuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To back out of</td>
<td>To withdraw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To step on someone’s toes</td>
<td>To make one grow angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To step into someone’s shoes</td>
<td>To take over someone’s responsibility or position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straining every nerve</td>
<td>Making the greatest effort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To be responsible to</td>
<td>Accountable to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To be responsible for</td>
<td>To be in-charge of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To wear a long face</td>
<td>To be sad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To take to one’s heels</td>
<td>To run away</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USEFUL LATIN PHRASES AND PROVERBS**

There are hundreds of Latin phrases and proverbs that serious students of Latin would happily like to master. We can only select some familiar ones we can apply in everyday speeches and writings. Possibly some students can commit to memory most of these Latin phrases and apply them in their writings and expressions or speeches. They can as well enunciate, express or vocalize their English and local language alternatives. **Visualize, i.e., see in your mind’s eye, create in your mind, think about situations where these Latin expressions can easily fit in. That will be great!**

**Group A**

1. *ab usu ad usum non valet consequentia* - Consequences of abuse do not apply to general use
2. *ab actu ad posse valet illatio* - From the past one can infer the future
3. *ab aeterno* - From the beginning of time
4. *ab asino lanam* - Wool from an ass (blood from a stone)
5. *a bene placito* - At pleasure
6. *abest* - He is absent
7. *abeunt studia in mores* - Pursuits change into habits (Ovid)
8. *ab extra* - From the outside
9. *abiit ad maiores* - He has gone to the ancestors (i.e., died)
10. *abiit ad plures* - He has gone to the majority (i.e., died)
11. *ab imo pectore* - From the bottom of the heart
12. *ab inconvenienti* - From the inconvenience involved
13. *ab incunabulis* - From infancy (from the cradle)
14. *ab initio* - From the beginning
15. *ab intra* - From within
16. *ab invito* - Against the will; unwillingly
17. *ab irato* - From the angryman (i.e., unfair)
18. *abnormis sapiens* - A natural born philosopher (Horace)
19. *ab origine* - From the origin; from the first
20. **ab ovo maiori discit arare minor** - From the older ox the younger learns to plow
21. **ab ovo** - From the egg (i.e., from the beginning)
22. **ab ovo usque ad mala** - From the egg to the apples (i.e., from the beginning to the end)
23. **absit omen** - May the omen be absent (i.e., God forbid)
24. **absolvo** - I absolve; I acquit
25. **absque hoc** - But for this; apart from this
26. **ab uno ad omnes** - From one to all
27. **ab uno discer omnes** - From one example, learn all (Virgil)
28. **abusus non tollit usum** - Abuse of a right does not invalidate use
29. **a capite ad calcem** - From head to heel (totally, entirely)
30. **accusare nemo se debit, nisi coram Deo** - No one is bound to accuse himself, unless before God
31. **a cruce salus** - Salvation [comes] from the cross
32. **acta est fabula** - The drama has been acted out (Augustus)
33. **acta sanctorum** - Deeds of the saints (Jean Bolland)
34. **actio personalis moritur cum personal** - Personal action dies with the person
35. **actum agere** - To do what has already been done
36. **actum ne agas** - Do not redo that which has been done
37. **a cuspide corona** - From the spear a crown
38. **ab absurdum** - To the absurd –
39. **ad alium diem** - At another day
40. **ad arbitrium** - At will (i.e., at pleasure)
41. **a dato** - From the date
42. **ad baculum** - To the rod (i.e., appeal to force, not reason)
43. **ad augusta per angusta** - To honour through difficulties
44. **ad calendas Graecas** - To the Greek calenda (i.e., never, as Greeks did not have calendas)
45. **ad captandum** - For the sake of pleasing
46. **ad clerum** - To the clergy
47. **addendum** - Something to be added
48. **adde parvum parvo magnus acervus erit** - Add a little to a little and there will be a great heap (Ovid)
49. **adeo in teneris consuescere multum est** - [It is] imperative to form habits in the early years (Virgil)
50. **ad extremum** - To the extreme (i.e., to the end)
51. **ad fidem** - To faith (i.e., in allegiance)
52. **ad finem** - To the end; at the end of the page
53. **ad finem fidelis** - Faithful to the end
54. ad gustum - To one's taste
55. adhibenda est in iocando moderatio - One should employ restraint in his jests (Cicero)
56. ad hoc - To this; for a specific occasion; impromptu
57. ad hominem - Personal attack relating to the individual
58. ad hunc locum - At this place
59. ad ignorantium - To ignorance [of the facts of an argument]
60. ad infinitum - Without an end; to infinity; without limit
61. ad initium - At the beginning
62. ad iudicium - To judgement; to common sense
63. adiuvante Deo labor proficit - With God's help, work prospers
64. ad majorem Dei gloriam - To the greater glory of God (motto of the Jesuits)
65. ad manum - At hand (i.e., ready and prepared)
66. ad meliora vertamur - Let us turn to better things
67. ad misericordiam - To pity (i.e., appealing to mercy)
68. ad multos annos - After many years
69. ad nauseam - To the point of sickness; to the point of being disgusted
70. ad nocendum patentes sumus - We all have power to do harm (Seneca)
71. ad paucos dies - For a few days
72. ad perpetuam rei memoriam - For the eternal/perpetual remembrance of the thing
73. ad praesens ova cras pullis sunt meliora ad quem ad quod - Eggs today are better than chickens tomorrow
74. adsum - I am present; to be present
75. ad summam - In short; in a word
76. ad usum - According to custom
77. ad utrumque paratus - Ready for anything; prepared for the worst
78. ad verbum - To the word; verbatim
79. ad verecundiam - Appeal to modesty in an argument
80. adversa virtute repello - I repel adversity by valor
81. adversus bonos mores - Against good morals
82. adversus solem ne loquitor - Don't speak against the sun (i.e., an obvious fact)
83. ad vitam aeternam - For eternal life; for all time
84. advocatus diaboli - Devil's advocate
85. aegra amans - Lover's sickness
86. aegrescit medendo  The disease worsens with treatment  
(Virgil)
87. aequilibrium indifferentiae  - State of exact balance between 
two actions
88. age quod agis  - Do what you are doing (i.e., pay attention to 
what you are doing)
89. alia tendanda via est  - Another way must be tried
90. alibi  - Elsewhere
91. alieni appetens  - Eager for another's property
92. aliquis in omnibus, nullus in singulis  - A somebody in 
general, nobody in particular
93. aliquot  - An even part of the whole
94. alitur vitium vivitque tegendo  - Vice is nourished by being 
concealed
95. alma mater  - Kind/bounteous/benign mother (i.e., protective 
institution, as referred to by its former students)
96. alter ego  - One's second self; very close friend
97. alter ego est amicus  - A friend is another self
98. alter idem  Another thing similar in all respects
99. alter ipse amicus  - A friend is a second self
100. alteri sic tibi  - [Do] to another as [you do] to yourself

**Group B**

1. altissima quaeque flumina minimo sono labiuntur  - The 
deepest rivers flow with the least sound (i.e., still waters run 
deep)
2. amans iratus multa mentitur sibi  - An angry lover tells 
himself many lies
3. amantes sunt amentes  - Lovers are lunatics (Terence)
4. amantium irae amoris integratio est  - A lovers' quarrel 
renews love
5. amare et saper vix deo conceditur  - Even a god finds it 
difficult to love and to be wise at the same time
6. amari aliquid  -Something bitter; a touch of bitterness
7. a maximis ad minima  - From the largest to the smallest
8. ambigendi locus  - Room for doubt
9. a mensa et toro  - From table and bed (i.e., a legal separation)
10. amici probantur rebus adversis  - Friends are proved by 
adversity
11. amicitiae immortales mortales inimicitias debere esse  - 
Our friendships should be immortal, our enmities mortal (Livy)
12. amicitia semper prodest - Friendship is always of benefit
13. amicitia sine fraude - Friendship without deceit
14. amicus certus in re incerta cernit - A friend in need is a friend indeed
15. amicus humani generis - A friend of the human race (i.e., philanthropist)
16. amicus Plato, sed magis amica veritas - Plato is my friend, but a greater friend is truth
17. amissum quod nescitur non amittitur - The loss that is unknown is no loss at all (Publius Syrus)
18. amor animi arbitrio sumitur, non ponitur - We choose to love, we do not choose to stop loving
19. amor gignit amorem - Love produces love
20. amor habendi - Love of possessing
21. amori finem tempus, non animus facit - Time, not the mind, puts an end to love
22. amoris vulnis idem sanat qui facit - The wounds of love are cured by love itself
23. amor magnus doctor est - Love is a great teacher (St. Augustine)
24. amor nummi - Love of money
25. amor proximi - Love of one's neighbour
26. amor vincit omnia - Love conquers all things (Virgil)
27. ancilla theologiae - The handmaid of theology (i.e., philosophy)
28. Angelus Domini - Angel of the Lord –
29. anguis in herba - A snake in the grass (i.e., a hidden danger)
30. adversus solem ne loquitor - Don't speak against the sun (Don't argue what is obvious)
31. alea iacta est - The die is cast. (Julius Caesar, when making the decision to cross the Rubicon in 49 BC)
32. animis opibusque parati - Prepared in minds and resources (ready for anything)
33. audaces fortuna iuvat - Fortune favours the brave
34. aut disce aut discede - Either learn or leave
35. aut viam inveniam aut faciam - I'll either find a way or make one
36. aut vincere aut mori - Either to conquer or to die
37. aliquando et insanire iucundum est. It is sometimes pleasant even to act like a madman.
38. aliquisne domum est? - Is anyone home?
39. **basis virtutum constantia** - Constancy is the foundation of virtues
40. **beatæ memoriae** - Of blessed memory
41. **beati pacifici** - Blessed are the peacemakes (Beatitudes)
42. **beati pauperes spiritu** - Blessed are the poor in spirit
43. **bellum domesticum** - Strife/war among family members
44. **benedictus qui venit** - Blessed is he who comes [in the Lord’s name]
45. **bene est tentare** - It is well to try
46. **bene exeat** - Let him or her go forth. Of good character
47. **beneficium accipere libertatem est vendere** - To accept a favour is to sell one’s freedom
48. **bene orasse est bene studuisse** - To have prayed well is to have pursued well
49. **bibamus, moriendum est** - Let us drink, for we must die (Seneca)
50. **bibere venenum in auro** - To drink poison from a golden cup
51. **bis peccare in bello non licet** - It is not permitted to blunder twice in war
52. **bis pueri senes** - Old men are twice children
53. **bis repetita placent** - The things that please are those repeated
54. **bis vincit qui se vincit in victoria** - He conquers twice who conquers himself in victory (Publius Syrus)
55. **bis vivit qui bene vivit** - He lives twice who lives well
56. **bonis nocet quisquis malis perpercit** - Whoever spares the bad injures the good
57. **bonis quod bene fit haud perit** - Whatever is done for good men is never done in vain (Plautus)
58. **brevis ipsa vita est sed malis fit longior** - Life is short but misfortunes make it longer
59. **caeca invidia est** - Envy is blind (Livy)
60. **candor dat viribus alas** - Sincerity gives wings to strength
61. **cane peius et angue** - Worse than a dog or snake
62. **canis in praesepi** - A dog in the manger
63. **Cantate Domino** - Sing to the Lord (Psalm 98)
64. **capiat qui capere possit** - Let him take it who is able
65. **captantes capti sumus** - We catchers have been caught
66. **captus nidore culinae** - Caught by the aroma of the kitchen (Juvenal)
67. caret initio et fine - It lacks a beginning and an end
68. carpe diem, quam minimum credula postero - Enjoy the day, trusting little in tomorrow
69. carpent tua poma nepotes - Your descendants will pluck your fruit
70. casis tutissima virtus - Virtue is the safest helmet
71. castigat ridendo mores - One corrects customs by laughing at them
72. casus urbis Troianae - The fall of the city of Troy
73. causa sine qua non - Fundamental reason, necessary condition
74. cave canem - Beware of the dog
75. cavendo tutus - Safe by taking heed
76. cave ne cadas - Take care so that you do not fall
77. cave quid dicis, quando, et cui - Beware of what you say, when, and to whom
78. celeritas et veritas - Promptness and truth
79. Christi crux est mea lux - The cross of Christ is my light
80. Christo et Ecclesiae - For Christ and for the Church
81. circa (ca.) - About (means uncertainty about a date)
82. circuitus verborum - A circuit of words (a circumlocution)
83. consensus audacium - The agreement of rash men; a conspiracy
84. consequitur quodcunque petit - He attains whatever he attempts
85. consilio et animis - By wisdom and courage
86. consilio et prudentia - By wisdom and prudence
87. constantia et virtute - By firmness and courage
88. consuetudo est altera lex - Custom is another law
89. consuetudo quasi altera natura - Habit is second nature (Cicero)
90. consummatum est - It is completed/finished (Christ’s words on the cross)
91. contra bonos mores - Contrary to good morals
92. contradictio in adiecto - Contradiction in terms
93. contra mundum - Against the world (i.e., an unpopular position)
94. contra negantem principia non est disputandum - There is no disputing against one who denies the first principles
95. contraria contrariis curantur - Opposites are cured by opposites
96. copia fandi - Abundance of talk
97. copia verborum - Abundance of words
98. corpus delicti - Body of the crime; objective proof of crime
99. Corpus Juris Canonici - Body of religious law
100. Corpus Juris Civilis - Body of civil law

**Group C**

1. corpus sine pectore - A body without a soul
2. corpus vile - Worthless matter
3. corruptio optimi pessima - The corruption of the best is the worst
4. corruptissima re publica plurimae leges - In the most corrupt state are the most laws (Terence)
5. cor unum, via una - One heart, one way
6. cras mihi - My turn [is] tomorrow
7. crassa negligentia - Gross negligence, criminal negligence
8. credat Judaeus Apella - let Apella the Jew believe it (I won't) (Horace)
9. crede quod habes, et habes - Believe that you have it, and you do
10. credo quia absurdum est - I believe it because it is absurd
11. credo quia impossible est - I believe it because it is impossible
12. credo ut intelligam - I believe so that I may understand
13. crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit - The love of money grows as our wealth increases (Juvenal)
14. crescite et multiplicamini - Increase and multiply
15. crescit eundo - It grows as it goes
16. crescit sub pondere virtus - Virtue grows under oppression
17. crecitur amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crevit - The richer you become the more you love money (Juvenal).
18. crescentem sequitur cura pecuniam maiorumque fames - As money grows, care follows it and the hunger for more (Virgil)
19. cribro aquam haurire - To draw water in a sieve
20. crimen innominatum - Nameless crime; crime against nature
21. crimem laesae maiestatis - Crime of high treason
22. *cuilibet in arte sua perito credendum est* - Every skilled man is to be trusted in his own art

23. *cuius libet* - Of any that you please

24. *culpam poena premit comes* - Punishment presses hard onto the heels of crime (Horace)

25. *cum grano salis* - With a grain of salt

26. *cupiditas ex homine, cupido ex stulto numquam tollitur* - A man can be cured of his lust, but a fool can never be cured of his greed

27. *cupidus dominandi cunctis affectibus flagrator est* - The lust for power inflames the heart more than any other passion (Tacitus)

28. *cura facit canos* - care brings grey hairs

29. *Cur ante tubam tremor occupat artus?* - Why should fear seize the limbs before the trumpet sounds? (Virgil)

30. *curriculum vitae* - The courts of one's life; an academic resume

31. *da fidei quae fidei sunt* - Give to faith that which belongs to faith

32. *da locum melioribus* - Give way to your betters (Terence)

33. *damna minus consulta movent* - Losses to which we are accustomed affect us less deeply (Juvenal)

34. *damnant quod non intelligunt* - They condemn what they do not understand

35. *damnum absque iniuriam* - Loss without injury, not subject to remedy

36. *date et dabitur vobis* - Give and it shall be given unto you (the Vulgate translation of the Bible)

37. *de bono et malo* - Of good and bad; come what may

38. *decies repetita placebit* - Though ten times repeated, it will continue to please (Horace)

39. *decipimus specie recte* - We are deceived by the semblance of what is right (Horace)

40. *decipit quam fallere est tutius* - It is safer to be deceived than to deceive

41. *decipit frons prima multos* - The first appearance deceives many

42. *de fumo in flammam* - Out of the smoke into the flame

43. *de gustibus non est disputandum* - In matters of taste, there is no argument

44. *delphinum natare doces* - You are teaching a dolphin to swim
45. de minimis non curat lex - The law does not concern itself with trifles

46. de te fabula narratur - The story is told about you (Horace)

47. Deus misereatur - May God have mercy (Psalm 67)

48. dictis facta suppetant - Let deeds correspond to words –

49. dimidium facti qui coepit habet - He who has begun has the work half done

50. difficile est tenere quae acceperis nisi exerceas - It is difficult to retain what you may have learned unless you should practise it.

51. elephanatem ex musca facis - you are making an elephant out of a fly

52. empta dolore experientia docet - experience teaches when bought with pain

53. entia non sunt multiplicanda praeter necessitatem - things are not to be multiplied unless necessary (Occam’s Razor)

54. errare est humanum - to err is human (Alexander Pope)

55. esse quam videri - to be rather than to seem.

56. est unusquisque faber ipsae suae fortunae - every one is the creator of his own

57. et discere et rerum exquire re causas - both to learn and to investigate the causes of things (motto)

58. et sceleratis sol oritur - the sun shines even on the wicked (Seneca)

59. ex cathedra - from the seat; a position of authority

60. exeat - he or she may go out; allowing student to be absent

61. exempla sunt odiosa - examples are odious

62. exeunt - they go out; the players leave the stage

63. ex granis fit acervus - many grains make a heap

64. ex malis moribus bonae leges natae sunt - from bad usages, good laws have been born

65. ex nihilo nihil fit - from nothing, nothing can be made (Lucretius)

66. explorant adversa viros - misfortune tries men

67. ex post facto - after the fact; in retrospect

68. expressio unius est exclusio alterius - the expression of one thing excludes others
69. ex quocunque capite - for whatever reason
70. extra pecuniam non est vita - without money there is no life
71. ex turpi causa non oritur actio - no immoral matter can lead to a legal action
72. ex ungue leonem - from the claw (we may judge) a lion; from a sample we may judge the whole
73. hic et ubique - Here and everywhere
74. hinc illae lacrimae - Hence come those tears
75. hoc genus omne - And all that sort of people
76. honoris causa - For the sake of honour
77. ignis internum - The fire within
78. ipsa scientia potestas est - Knowledge itself is power.
79. in pace, ut sapiens, aptarit idonea bello - In peace, like a wise man, he appropriately prepares for war
80. in camera - In secret in a judge's private room
81. index expurgatorius - A list of forbidden books
82. in excelsis - In the highest
83. in extenso - At full length
84. in extremis - At the point of death
85. infra dignitatem - Below one's dignity
86. in medias res - In the midst of things
87. in memoriam - In memory of
88. in situ - In its original position
89. inter allia - Among other things
90. in toto - Entirely
91. in vino veritas - There is truth in wine (truth is told by him who has drunk wine)
92. ipse dixit - He himself said it
93. ipsissima verba - The very words
94. ipso facto - In the fact itself
95. mirabile dictu - Wonderful to relate
96. mirabile visu - Wonderful to see
97. mendacem memorem esse oportet - It is fitting that a liar should be a man of good memory (liars should have good memories)
98. mens sana in corpore sano - A sound mind in a sound body
99. minima maxima sunt - The smallest things are most important.
100. magnum opus - A great work
**Group D**

1. **male fide** - With bad faith, treacherously
2. **mea culpa** - By my own fault
3. **memento mori** - Remember that you will die
4. **meo periculo** - At my own risk
5. **meum et tuum** - Mine and thine
6. **modus operandi** - Plan of working
7. **modus vivendi** - A way of living
8. **mutatis mutandis** - With necessary changes
9. **nemo liber est qui corpori servit** - No one is free who is a slave to his body
10. **non est vivere sed valere vita est** - Life is not being alive but being well (life is more than just being alive)
11. **non mihi, non tibi, sed nobis** - Not for you, not for me, but for us
12. **non semper erit aetas** - It will not always be summer (be prepared for hard times)
13. **non teneas aurum totum quod splendet ut aurum** - Do not take as gold everything that shines like gold
14. **nulli secundus /nulli secunda** - Second to none
15. **ne quid nimis** - Nothing in excess.
16. **nemo dat quod non habet** - No one gives what he does not have.
17. **non est ad astra mollis e terris via**
   There is no easy way from the earth to the stars.
18. **nil admirari** - To admire nothing (to be superior and self satisfied)
19. **nil desperandum** - Never despair
20. **nolens volens** - Whether he will or not
21. **noli me tangere** - Don't touch me
22. **non compus mentis** - Not of sound mind
23. **nosce te ipsum** - Know thyself
24. **nota bene** - Note well
25. **noli intrare** - Do not enter /keep out.
26. **noli perturbare** - Do not disturb
27. **nullo modo** - No way.
28. **parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus mus** - Mountains will be in labour, and an absurd mouse will be born (all that work and nothing to show for it)
29. parva leves capiunt animas - Small things occupy light minds - (small things amuse small minds)
30. pessimum genus inimicorum laudantes - Flatterers are the worst type of enemies
31. potius mori quam foedari - Rather to die than to be dishonoured - (death before dishonour)
32. praemonitus pramunitus - forewarned, forearmed
33. proprium humani ingenii est odisse quem laeseris - It is human nature to hate a person whom you have injured
34. Perfer et obdura; dolor hic tibi proderit olim - Be patient and tough; some day this pain will be useful to you.
35. pari passu - With equal pace together
36. peccavi - I have sinned
37. post hoc propter hoc - After this, therefore because of this - (false reasoning)
38. post mortem - After death
39. prima facie - On the first view
40. primus inter pares - First among equals
41. perio - I'm lost.
42. quod me nutrit me destruit. - What nourishes me also destroys me.
43. quem di diligunt, adolescens moritur - Whom the gods love die young (only the good die young)
44. qui scribit bis legit - he who writes reads twice
45. qui non est hodie cras minus aptus erit - He who is not prepared today will be less so tomorrow.
46. qui tacet consentire - Who is silent gives consent.
47. quid novi? - What's new?
48. quis custodiet ipsos custodes? - who will watch the watchers themselves?
49. quod erat demonstrandum (QED) - Which was to be proved
50. quod erat faciendum - Which was to be done
51. quot homines tot sententiae - So many men so many options
52. radix omnium malorum est cupiditas - The love of money is the root of all evil. Avarice (cupiditas) is the problem, money itse is not evil.
53. respice, adspice, prospice - Examine the past, examine the present, examine the future - (look to the past, the present, the future)
54. **respondeat superior** - Let the superior answer (a supervisor must take responsibility for the quality of a subordinate's work)
55. **repetitio est mater studiorum.** - Repetition is the mother of studies.
56. **rara avis** - A rare bird
57. **reductio ad absurdum** - The reducing of a position to a logical absurdity
58. **RUAT COELUM** - Let the heaven fall
59. **sapiens nihil affirmat quod non probat** - A wise man states as true nothing he does not prove - (Don't swear to anything you don't know firsthand)
60. **semper fidelis** - Always faithful
61. **semper paratus** - Always ready
62. **si fecisti nega!** - If you did it, deny it (stonewall!)
63. **si finis bonus est, totum bonum erit** - If the end is good, everything will be good (All's well that ends well)
64. **si post fata venit gloria non propero** - If glory comes after death, I'm not in a hurry (If one must die to be recognised, I can wait)
65. **stultorum calami carbones moenia chartae** - Chalk is the pen of fools, walls (their) paper - (No Graffiti please. Apparently, graffiti is nothing new).
66. **sumptus censum ne superet** - Let not your spending exceed your income (Live within your means)
67. **sedit qui timuit ne non succederet.** - He who feared he would not succeed sat still.
68. **struit insidias lacrimis cum femina plorat.** When a woman weeps, she is setting traps with her tears.
69. **satis verborum** - Enough of words
70. **sanum es?** - Are you in your senses?
71. **semper idem** - Always the same
72. **sic transit gloria mundi** - So passes away earthly glory
73. **sic vis pacem para bellum** - If you want peace prepare for war
74. **stet** - Let it stand - (Do not delete)
75. **sub rosa** - Under the rose (privately)
76. **timendi causa est nescire** - Ignorance is the cause of fear.
77. **tabula rasa** - A blank tablet (ignoramus)
78. *tempora mutantur nos et mutamur in illis* - The times are changing and we with them

79. *veni vidi vici* - I came, I saw, I conquered - (Julius Caesar's report of victory in 47 B.C. over Pharnaces, king of Pontus)

80. *veritas vos liberabit* - *The truth shall make you free*

81. *vincit qui se vincit* - He conquers who conquers himself.

82. *vir sapit qui pauca loquitur* - That man is wise who talks little
   (know when to hold your tongue)

83. *vita non est vivere sed valere vita est* - Life is more than merely staying alive

84. *verbum sat sapienti* - *A word is enough for a wise man.*
PART THREE

ANCIENT GREECE AND ROME

Introduction

In the this part of our Latin studies, we will delve into some relevant history of ancient Greece and Rome as long as these stories and themes help our students to appreciate the importance of Latin even in the modern times. Latin translations of important stories are included where necessary. Students are encouraged to try such translations before checking and correcting their errors with our own translations and summaries. They should consult both short lists of words provided as well as the general vocabulary.

It is really important for students of Latin to familiarize themselves with some of these old stories, myths, folktales, fables and history that we usually meet in Latin and ancient history studies. Some important themes and names we meet in our studies and history may also need to be highlighted. Most Latin students are familiar with stories of “Caesar Gallic War” and works of great poets like Virgil, Ovid and Homer. Old and new movies with titles such as “The Trojan War”, “Helen of Troy”, “Gorgon Medusa”, “The Golden Fleece” are still popular today. Great legendary figures as well as war heroes like “Hercules”, “Achilles”, Hector, “Perseus”, “Hannibal”, “Horatius,” and many others have remained popular and perennial figures in ancient history of Rome and Greece.

Some popular fables and folktales most of us joyfully listened to in primary schools came from Greek and Roman collections. These include “The Wolf and the Lamb”, “The Three Small Pigs and the Wolf”, “Three Blind Men and the Elephant” and many more. We will be seeing expressions like “in Greek mythology” etc. What is a ‘myth?’ How can we separate ‘Myths’ from ‘Realities?’ We hope our students will benefit from these ancient narratives as these will no doubt help deepen their knowledge of Latin. We begin with ‘definitions’ of some words and expressions, ‘notes’ and further readings on some selected and important themes.

Myth, Mythology: Myth is said to be a complex cultural phenomenon that can be approached from a number of viewpoints. In general, myth is a narrative that describes and portrays in symbolic language the origin of the basic elements and assumptions of a culture.
Mythic narrative relates, for example, how the world began, how humans and animals were created, and how certain customs, gestures, or forms of human activities originated. Almost all cultures at one time possessed and lived in terms of myths. Myths differ from fairy tales in that they refer to a time that is different from ordinary time.

The time sequence of myth is extraordinary—an “other” time—the time before the conventional world came into being. Because myths refer to an extraordinary time and place and to gods and other supernatural beings and processes, they have usually been seen as aspects of religion. Because of the all-encompassing nature of myth, however, it can illuminate many aspects of individual and cultural life.

**Folklore:** Folklore is a general term for the verbal, spiritual, and material aspects of any culture that are transmitted orally, by observation, or by imitation. People sharing a culture may have in common an occupation, language, ethnicity, age, or geographical location. This body of traditional material is preserved and passed on from generation to generation, with constant variations shaped by memory, immediate need or purpose, and degree of individual talent.

Folk beliefs include ideas about the whole range of human concerns, from the reasons and cures for diseases to speculation concerning life after death. This category therefore includes folkloristic beliefs (superstitions), magic, divination, witchcraft, and apparitions such as ghosts and fantastic mythological creatures. The second classification, that of traditions, includes material dealing with festivals, customs, games, and dances; cookery and costume might also be included, by extension. The third category, narratives, includes the ballad and the various forms of folktales and folk music, all of which may be based in part on real characters or historical events. The category of folk sayings includes proverbs and nursery rhymes, verbal charms, and riddles. Folk arts, the fifth and only nonverbal category, covers any form of art, generally created anonymously among a particular people, shaped by and expressing the character of their community life.

**Fable:** Fable, is a short literary composition in prose or verse, conveying a universal cautionary or moral truth. The moral is usually summed up at the end of the story, which generally tells of conflict among animals that are given the attributes of human beings. The fable differs from the parable, also a short narrative designed to convey a moral truth, in that the fable is concerned with
the impossible and improbable, whereas the parable always deals with possible events. Both fables and parables are forms of allegory.

**Allegory**: Allegory is fictional literary narrative or artistic expression that conveys a symbolic meaning parallel to but distinct from, and more important than, the literal meaning. Allegory has also been defined as an extended metaphor. The symbolic meaning is usually expressed through personifications and other symbols. Related forms are the fable and the parable, which are didactic, comparatively short and simple allegories.

**Legend**: Legend is traditional narrative or collection of related narratives, popularly regarded as historically factual but actually a mixture of fact and fiction. The Medieval Latin word *legenda* means “things for reading.” During certain services of the early Christian church, *legenda*, or lives of the saints, were read aloud. A legend is set in a specific place at a specific time; the subject is often a heroic historical personage. A legend differs from a myth by portraying a human hero rather than one who is a god. Legends, originally oral, have been developed into literary masterpieces. Among the most famous legends of all time are the classic epics *the Iliad* and the *Odyssey* (see Homer) of ancient Greece and the *Aeneid* of ancient Rome (see Virgil). In modern times legends have grown up around such presidents of the United States as George Washington and Abraham Lincoln. Contemporary legend usually deals with leading figures in the world of sports, motion pictures, and popular music.

**Mount Olympus**: Mount Olympus is located in northern Greece, 2917 m (9570 ft) high, the loftiest point in Greece, on the boundary between Thessaly and Macedonia, near the Aegean Sea. In early Greek mythology it was believed to have been the home of the gods. On its summit were the palaces of the gods, which had been built by Hephaestus, god of metalwork. The entrance to Olympus was through a gate of clouds, protected by the goddesses known as the Seasons. Zeus had his throne on Olympus, and the gods feasted on nectar and ambrosia and were serenaded by the Muses.

The twelve major Olympian deities were Zeus and his wife Hera; his brothers Poseidon, god of the sea, and Hades, god of the underworld; his sister Hestia, goddess of the hearth; and his children: Athena, goddess of wisdom; Ares, god of war; Apollo, god of the sun; Artemis, goddess of the moon and of the hunt; Aphrodite, goddess of love; Hermes, messenger of the gods; and Hephaestus. Later Greek writers transferred the home of these deities to a heavenly region free from snow and storm and filled with light.
Apollo and Diana: They were brother and sister and children of Latona. Apollo was the god who punished men when necessary; he also helped them and prophesied the future for them, was the patron of music and was identified after the times of Homer with Sun. Diana was the goddess of hunting and the female counterpart of Apollo. She was, therefore, later identified with the Moon.
**Pantheon:** Pantheon was a temple dedicated to all the gods. The Pantheon of Rome is said to be the best-preserved major edifice of ancient Rome and one of the most significant buildings in architectural history. In shape it is an immense cylinder concealing eight piers, topped with a dome and fronted by a rectangular colonnaded porch. The great vaulted dome is 43.2 m (142 ft) in diameter, and the entire structure is lighted through one aperture, called an oculus, in the center of the dome. The Pantheon was erected by the Roman emperor Hadrian between AD 118 and 128, replacing a smaller temple built by the statesman Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa in 27 BC. In the early 7th century it was consecrated as a church, Santa Maria ad Martyres, to which act it owes its survival (see Architecture).

Roman Pantheon

**Jupiter [Iuppiter]:** Jupiter was the greatest of the gods. He was worshipped as the lord of heaven and regarded as the special protector of Rome. His temple stood on the Capitol; it was thought that he could foresee the future and control the events which were about to happen. The father of gods and men, as he was called, was likewise the guardian of all law, justice and virtue.

**Juno:** Juno was the queen of the gods and the wife of Jupiter. Two of their children were Mars and Vulcan. She was the goddess of marriage and all women prayed to her in times of trouble and anxiety.
Mars: god of war and next to Jupiter was the most honoured of the Roman gods.

Venus: the goddess of love, beauty and happiness.

Minerva: Minerva was the goddess of wisdom. She was also the Patroness of all the arts and trades, especially of spinning and agriculture. It was believed that she had sprung fully armed from the brain of Jupiter when Vulcan, at his father’s request, split open his parent’s head to cure him of a headache! Minerva protected men in time of war: hence she is represented with a helmet and often with a shield and a coat of mail as well.
Jupiter: The greatest of the gods, worshipped as the Lord of heaven and regarded as the special protector of Rome. Jupiter was the ruler of the Roman pantheon. Jupiter exhibited the characteristics of his Greek equivalent, Zeus. **Jupiter whose name means “Shining Father” in Jupiter fathered many of the other Roman gods, goddesses and heroes, including Apollo, Minerva and Hercules.**

Juno: The queen of the gods and the wife of Jupiter; goddess of marriage. Women prayed to her in times of trouble and anxiety.

Mercury: Mercury was the messenger of the gods and also the god of commerce. A temple was built to him in 495 B.C. near the Circus Maximus. He was noted for his cunning and speed of foot. He often portrayed with a staff, winged sandals and winged helmet.

Pluto: The god of the Lower World and of the shades of the dead was hard and inexorable. Black sheep were sacred to him. In his right hand he holds the key of infernal regions; at his feet is the dog Cerberus.
Neptune: He was the god the sea. His symbol of power, the trident, is generally seen in the god's hand.

Mars: Mars was the god of war, and next to Jupiter, was the most honoured of the Roman gods. He was said to be the father of Romulus, and the wolf and the woodpecker were sacred to him. In the Trojan War it was he and Venus who supported the Trojans, whilst Minerva took the side of the Greeks.

Minerva: goddess of wisdom, patroness of arts and trades, especially of agriculture.
Mercury: The messenger of the gods and also the god of commerce.

Venus: Venus was the goddess of love, beauty and happiness. She is said to have risen from the sea-foam. Her son was Cupid, who used to pierce, with his arrows, the hearts of gods and men alike, inspiring them with love. Hence he is often represented with a bow and arrows.

Ceres: Ceres the goddess of crops and of all growth, had a daughter, Proserpina. Her daughter was carried off to the Lower World by its King, Pluto. Finally Ceres bargained with Pluto for the return of her daughter. Proserpina was to dwell six months of every year with Pluto and six months with her mother in this world. This agreement is represented to-day by the seasons of spring and summer when Ceres is happy and causes the countrysides to grow; the period of autumn and winter signifies the mourning of Ceres for her daughter, who is then with Pluto.

Hades: In Greek mythology Hades was the god of the dead; he was the son of the Titans Cronus and Rhea and the brother of Zeus and Poseidon. When the three brothers divided up the universe after they had deposed their father, Cronus, Hades was awarded the underworld. There, with his queen, Persephone, whom he had abducted from the world above, he ruled the kingdom of the dead. Although he was a grim and pitiless god, unappeased by either prayer or sacrifice, he was not evil. In fact, he was known also as Pluto, lord of riches, because both crops and precious metals were believed to come from his kingdom below ground.

The underworld itself was often called Hades. It was divided into two regions: Erebus, where the dead pass as soon as they die, and Tartarus, the deeper region, where the Titans had been imprisoned. It was a dim and unhappy place, inhabited by vague forms and shadows and guarded by Cerberus, the three-headed, dragon-tailed dog. Sinister rivers separated the underworld from the world above, and the aged boatman Charon ferried the souls of the dead across these waters. Somewhere in the darkness of the underworld Hades' palace was located. It was represented as a many-gated, dark and gloomy place, thronged with guests, and set in the midst of shadowy fields and an apparition-haunted landscape. In later legends the underworld is described as the place where the good are rewarded and the wicked punished.

THE ROMAN HOUSE

Peristylium, ii, n., the perstyle, the garden.
Triclinium, ii, n., the dining-room.
Fauces (lit. ‘jaws’), a passage-way.
Tablinum, -I, n., the master’s study.
Atrium, -ii, n. (lit. ‘the black room’), the hall.
Cubiculum, -I, n., a bedroom.
Vestibulum, -I, n., the porch.
Taberna, -ae, f., a shop.

The plan of the Roman house can be a simplest form. The fronts of the houses, which faced the street and were very noisy, were usually let as shops. Houses were originally only one storey high, but later, when ground increased in value, more storeys were added, and the system of ‘flats’ began. Roman roofs sloped inwards, not outwards like those of modern houses.

Villa, -ae, f, a country house, a residence: The Villa of a wealthy Roman.

In course of time the type of house became much more complicated as it grew to larger dimensions, but the atrium always remained the central room of the house. From the vestibulum we enter the atrium. In the centre of this was a small fire by the side of which stood an altar. In the roof above was a sloping aperture known as the compluvium: through this the rain descended into a pool beneath called the impluvium. Here, were the essentials of sacrifice to the gods—fire, an altar and water. Around the atrium were bedroom.
Passing from this central room we come next to the tablinum, often separated from the atrium by curtains. Here the master of the house did his accounts, interviewed slaves and transacted business. On one or both sides of the study was the triclinium, our modern dining-room, whilst at the back of the house was the garden, known as the peristylium. This was ornamented with statues, pillars of marble, ponds, flower borders and similar decorations. Often large trees were grown to afford shelter from the fierce heat of the summer sun.

**THE ROMAN FORUM – Forum –i, n**

A dilapidated Roman Forum as it appears today

**Forum, -I, n [Latin, “marketplace” or “out-of-doors place”]**, is a term applied by the ancient Romans to the large, open, rectangular space in the central part of a city that was the common place of assembly of the people. Originally an unenclosed space, without buildings, in which the people gathered on market days and for religious festivals, elections, and other public events, it became the political center where civic and administrative buildings and the more important temples were located. Archways frequently surmounted both ends of the road or roads that transected the forum.

**Retiarus vs. Secutor**
“Retiarius” vs “Secutor” Combat used to be one of the gladiatorial contests in the colosseum. The “Retiarius” (Catcher-gladiator who fought with a net and trident), is matched with the “Secutor” (“Chaser”, armed with a sword and a shield usually fought to death for the entertainment of the spectators.

In early times, each city had only one forum, serving not only as a place for the transaction of legal, political, and mercantile business but also as an arena for public games, amusements, theatrical performances, gladiatorial and boxing combats, and races. The principal forum in Rome, the Forum Romanum Magnum (Great Roman Forum), was of this type, and above the colonnades that surrounded it were galleries for spectators. As cities grew, however, it became necessary to establish a separate forum (forum civile) for legal and administrative affairs, as well as mercantile forums (fora venalia), each devoted to the sale of an important commodity. Among the mercantile forums were the animal, vegetable, fish, grain, and wine markets. The shops were situated around the square of the mercantile forum and often on streets leading to it. In addition to the open forums, some cities also had covered markets. The term forum gradually became synonymous with market and was employed as a descriptive epithet in the names of many market towns, such as Forum Appii and Forum Julii.
GREAT ANCIENT STORIES EVER TOLD

These “Great Ancient Stories” have been planned and inserted in our comprehensive Latin textbook to help students appreciate the place of myths in ancient History and Literature and as well deepen their knowledge of Latin. Some of the stories are narrated in English; other parts in Latin, in fact to see how far students can follow. Ample lists of words to help in the translations have been included at the beginning of each episode. There is no way students and teachers can skip this chapter and feel satisfied that they have finished their course in Latin even at the end of Secondary school examinations. We have provided Latin translations ourselves and with “unembellished touch” to help students. They should make their own “private attempts” before reading our own renderings.

Some of the narratives we meet in our studies are often put in ‘dialogue (conversation) format’, namely between the schoolteacher (magister) and the pupils (discipuli), usually represented by Marcus and Sextus. The conversational method is good for students who may find it easier to follow and understand the stories and narratives faster than when these are put in raw prose or verse. Intervening questions and comments by the pupils and the master help to ease ‘tension’ among students, especially when the narrative is all in Latin.

The easy and popular Elementary Pictorial Method of teaching new languages all over the world was also used by the Roman schoolmasters to make the lessons more enjoyable and less boring to their pupils. There is no doubt that in those ancient days, schooling was limited to only few wealthy and powerful Roman families. Most of their children like Marcus, Publius and Sextus must have been accompanied to school by their slaves. The schoolmasters devoted a lot of time teaching these children. Masters must have employed good teaching methods in the education of the Roman pupils, including the use of pictures and dialogue. These also served to retain the attention of the schoolpupils. As for Roman names, some of the names we frequently meet in our studies include the following: Marcus, Aulus, Gaius, Decimus, Lucius, Aemilius, Manius, Publius, Quintus, Sextus, Servius, Spurius, Titus,
Tiberius, Some female names we meet in our studies will include Cintia, Felicia, Portia, Cornelia, etc. We are already familiar with boys’ names like Marcus, Sixtus and Lucius. Actually a free-born Roman boy had at least three names: the praenomen, which would be equivalent to our ‘Christian name; the nomen, the name of the gens or clan to which he belonged, the cognomen, an extra name which in early times was often a nickname. For adult Romans, to the above names an agnomen (sometimes more than one) was occasionally added, may be as a title of honor or signified the adoption of a person from one clan into another. Example: The full name of the Emperor Augustus, originally Octavius, after adoption by his uncle was – Gaius Iulius Caesar Octavianus Augustus

We hope our students and Latin teachers would go through these ancient stories and appreciate their importance and place in our Latin studies. Here we go!

(Magister et Discipuli)

THE STORY OF HERCULES

Word List
Nemo, no, no one, nobody
Propter (prep with acc), on account of
Commutus, -a, -um, moved
Mycenaeus, -a, -um, Mycenaean, of Mycenae
Insania, -ae, f, madness
Eurystheus, -ei, m, Eurystheus.
Regnum, -i, n, a kingdom
Heros, -ois, m, a hero
Strangulo, -are, -avi, -atum, I strangle
Promitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, I promise
Occido, -ere, occidi, occisum, I kill
Ago, -ere, egi, actum, I do, I pass (of time)
Consulo, -ere, consului, consultum, I consult
Tam…..quam, so…..as
Dolor, -oris, m, grief, pain.
Serpens, -entis, f, a snake, a serpent
Frustra, adv., in vain
Incitusus –a, -um, (adj.), aroused, encouraged
Adulescens, -entis, f, a young man, a youth.
Mycenae, -arum, f, pl., Mycene
Hercules, -is, m, Hercules
Ignis –is, m: fire
Cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum, collect; compel
Inicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, I throw into
Convalesco, -ere, convalui, I recover (from illness, etc)
Labor, -oris, m, a task, toil.
Lerna, -ae, f, the Marsh of Lerna
Saevus, -a, -um, savage, fierce.
Feliciter (adv), successfully
Impono, -ere, imposui, impositum, I impose
Suscipio, -ere, suscepi, susceptum, I undertake
Leo, -onis, m, a Lion
Arcadia, -ae, f, Arcadia, a part of Greece
Mora, -ae, f, delay
Praeda, -ae, f, plunder, booty
Cervus, -i, a stag
Vivus, -a, -um, living
Ambo, -ae, -o, (plu, like duo) both.
Cerberus, -i, m, Cerberus
Comprehendo, -ere, -hendi, -hensum, I sieze, I capture
Procedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, I set out, I go forward
Aper, apri, m, a wild boar
Canis –canis, c, a dog
Orcus, -i, m, Orcus, the abode of the Dead
Pluto, -onis, m, Pluto
Periculosis, -a, -um, dangerous
The Story Of Hercules Begins In Latin

1. Nemo ex omnibus hominibus tam clarus quam Hercules erat.
2. Iuppiter, Herculis pater, filio suo urbem Mycenae dare constituerat.
4. Regina igitur duas serpentes magnas occisum puerum misit.
5. Frustra tamen, quia Hercules, puer parvus serpentis strangulavit.
6. Haud multo post Hercules, iam adulescens, Megaram in matrimonium duxit.
7. Hercules paucos annos sua cum uxor agebat, sed tandem heros, ab Iunone incitatis, liberos suos in igno magno occidit!
8. Nam Herculem, breve tempus insanum, Iuno liberos in ignem inicere coegerat.
9. Hercules tamen, ubi ex insania convalescere inceperat, dolere magno commotus, consultum oraculum statim advenit.
10. Oraculum Herculem Mycenas properare iussit, ubi Eurystheus, primo dominus herois esse poterat.

The Story of Hercules continues in English

1. Accordingly Eurystheus, king of Mycene, imposed twelve tasks.
2. In this way he decided to kill the youth.
3. Hercules, however, undertook all the twelve tasks successfully.
4. There was a huge lion near Mycene.
5. Hercules, when he had killed the lion, carried the body to Eurystheus.
6. But the king was much afraid and ordered Hercules to leave the city.
7. The hero hastened to Lerna, where there was a savage snake with nine heads.

The Story of Hercules continues in Latin

Sed cervus, ubi primum Herculem vidit, silvas in densas celeritate magna fugit neque iuvenis eum comprehendere poterat. Sed tandem, ut fama est, Hercules cervum, qui se in flumen iniecerat, comprehendit et ambo Mycenas advenerunt.


The End of the Story of Hercules in English

The Master: “I want to tell you the end of the story about Hercules.”
Sextus and Marcus: “Please go on, sir.”
The Master: “Hercules, when he saw Cerberus, seized the monster’s legs. But the dog’s tail was a snake. The snake began to sting Hercules hard.”

Marcus: “Good! But did Hercules bring Cerberus back to Eurystheus?”
Sextus: “Be quiet, Marcus. You are always interrupting us.”
The Master: “Yes, Hercules was successful. But the king greatly frightened by the monster, ordered the hero to lead Cerberus back to Orcus. ‘Hercules,’ he cried, ’I never want to see you again,’”

Marcus: “Wretched Hercules! Why did the king order the hero....”
Sextus: “Don’t listen to Marcus, sir. Did Hercules afterwards spend a happy life?”
The Master: “Yes, because freed from all the labours he was at last safe and he never saw Eurystheus again.”

Marcus: “Alas! Poor Eurystheus!”

THE STORY OF THESEUS AND THE MINOTAUR

Theseus –ei, m – Theseus
Aegeus –ei, m – Aegeus
Troæzen, -enis, fr – Troæzen, a city in southern Greece
Aethra, -ae, f – Aethra
Minos, -ois, m, Minos king of Crete
Creta, -ae, f – Crete
Cretensis, -is, -e – Cretan, of Crete
Ariadna, -ae, f, Ariadne, daughter of Minos
Naxus, -i, f, Naxos, an island in the Aegean Sea.
Minotaurus, I, m – the Minotaur – (in Gk myth, a monster, half man, half bull, fed with human flesh, kept in the labyrinth in Crete)

Atheniesis, -is, -e – Athenian
Eum, (pro) him
Iter, itineris, n, a journey
Facio, -ere, feci, factum, I made, I do
Tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatum, I lift
Gladius, -ii, m, a sword
Demum (adv), a last
Perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, I accomplish, I complete, I finish
Postquam (conj), after
Gaudium, -ii, n, joy
Cretensis, -is, -e – Crete, of Crete
Durus, -a, -um, hard, grievous
Victima, -ae, f, a victim
Labyrinthus, -i, m, a labyrinth
Ipse (pron), he himself, self
Quotannis (adv), every year
Iussu (abl, used as adv.) by command, by order
Nihil (indecl noun), n, nothing
Vela, -orum, n, pl, sails
Exhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum – I display
Victor, -oris,m, a conqueror, a victor
Mos, moris, m, a custom.
Crudelis, -is, -e, cruel
Exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum – I await, I wait for;
Amor, -oris, m – Love
Audacia, -ae, f, boldness
Filum, -i, n – a thread, rope
Inde (adv), from there, thence; then
Una cum, (prep, phrase with abl.)
In navem conscendo, -ere, -di, -scensum – I embark
Immemor, -oris – forgetful
Bacchus, -i, m, Bacchus, the god of wine
Nubo, -ere, nupsi, nuptum (with dat.) – I marry (woman, subject of verb)
The Story Of Theseus and Minotaur Begins In Latin

Apud antiquos fabula de Theseo celeberrima erat. Haud multo post natum Theseum Athenienses Aegaeum, qui Thesei pater erat, regem suum creaverant et eum Athenas revocaverant. Itaque rex exedere Troezene, ubi habitabat, et pulcherrimam ad urbem Athenas sine uxore filioque suo iter facere constituit, sed primo Aethram, exorem suam, ad se vocavit et "O mea carissima," inquit, "ego tibi nunc filium nostrum trado: tu puerum custodi erudique et ubi primum hoc saxum tollere atque gladium meum Athenas ad me portare potuerit" – Aegeus enim suum gladium ingenti sub saxo collocaverat – " tum demum (then at last) iuvenem ad me dimitte."

Multos per annos Theseus summa vi saxum tollere tentabat sed frustra, quia non satis virium habebat puer. Tandem anno duodevicensimo difficilem laborem feliciter perfecit et statim iter parare (to prepare for the journey) incepit. Theseus, postquam adventit Athenas, ubi patrem suum maximo gaudio aspexit, Athenienses, qui tum erant miserrimi, iuvar magnopere cupiebat. Nam paucis ante annis Minos, rex Cretensis, Athenarum incolas bello vincerat legesque durissimas pacis imposuerat. Quotannis victimae quaternae denae (fourteen), septenaeque puellae, qui omnes nobili genere erant, patriam parentesque suos reliquebant et, regis Minos iussu, ad Insulam Cretam navigabant. Neque umquam rursus Athenas videbant, quia habitabat in Labyrintho Minotaurus, monstrum horribilissimum, qui sine mora omnes victimas, quae in Labyrinthum intraverant, devorabat. (Hoc enim monstrum, ut fabula est, caput tauri hominisque corpus habebat). Theseus tamen, iuvenis fortissimus, qui iam Herculis de virtute audiverat, ipse tredecim cum victimis ad Cretam navigare et Athenienses servare constituit.

The Story of Theseus continues in English

1. At first Thesseus said nothing about his plan, but looked at the Athenians as they were fitting the ship with black sails.
2. For it was the custom of the Athenians to display grief in this way.
3. Then the youth hastened to his father and said, “Thirteen most unhappy victims have already prepared for the journey:
4. I myself will the fourteenth and will sail to Crete, because I have decided to save our citizens and to kill this most terrible monster.
5. At last Aegeus agreed, although he was very sad, and most unwilling went down with his son from the palace to the sea-shore.
6. “One thing I ask”, cried the king; “When you return home again, adorn the ship with white sails.
7. For thus I shall perceive the victory of a victorious son.

*The Story of Theseus and the Minotaur continues in Latin*

**Minotaur:** Monster half man and half bull fed with human flesh, kept in the Labyrinth in crete.
**Centaur:** Fabulous creature, half man and half horse.

The Story of Theseus continues in English

1. But Thesseus did not marry Ariadne.
2. Therefore he left the unhappy maiden on the island of Naxos and sailed to Athens with the comrades.
3. The sails of the ship, however, were still black, because Thesseus had been forgetful of Aegeus’ words.
4. Not long afterwards, Aegeus saw the black sails in the distance.
5. “Alas! My son is dead,” he cried and, moved by grief, threw himself into the sea.
6. Finally Ariadne, as the story goes married the god Bacchus.

THESEUS AND MINOTAUR
(Comprehensive and unembellished English Translation)

Among the ancients the story of Theseus is a famous (one). Not long after the birth of Theseus (was born), the Athenians appointed (elected) Aegeus, who was the father of Theseus, their king and recalled him to Athens. The king then (therefore) decided to leave the rather beautiful Troezen, where he had lived (dwelt), to make the journey to the city of Athens without his wife and son. First he called his wife Aethra to himself and said, “Oh my dearest (wife), I am handing over to you now our son. You guard and teach the boy and when (first) he is able to lift this rock and also carry my sword to me to Athens” (for Aegeus had placed (hidden) his sword under a huge rock), “then at last dispatch the young man to me.

For many years Theseus tried hard (strenuously) to lift the rock but (it) was all in vain, since (because) the boy did not have enough strength (force). At last in the 22nd year he successfully accomplished the difficult task and immediately he began to prepare for the journey. After Theseus arrived Athens, where he beheld his father with joy, he desired greatly to help the Athenians who were then very wretched (miserable).

For a few years before, Minos, the king of Crete had defeated the inhabitants of Athens (Athenians) in war and imposed very hard laws (on them). Every year 14 victims – 7 young men and 7 girls, who were all of noble birth left their fatherland and their parents and at the order of King
Minos sailed to the island of Crete. No one (among them) ever again saw Athens, because Minotaur, a very horrible monster dwelt in the labyrinth, which tore to pieces (devoured) immediately all victims that entered the labyrinth. [This monster, as the story goes, had the head of a bull and the body of a man.]

Theseus, however, a very brave youth, who had already heard about the valor (courage) of Hercules decided (was determined) to save himself and the Athenians and to sail to Crete with the 13 victims.

At last the ship arrived Crete where Minos, a very wicked man was waiting for the victims. Without delay, the hero, carrying arms (armed), led his companions from the shore to the labyrinth. Here, it happened that by chance, Ariadna, the daughter of Minos saw (beheld) Theseus, and moved by the bravery and love of the young man, decided to help him. “For Theseus”, said Ariadna, “has too much boldness and little wisdom; many entered the labyrinth, none ever came out of it.”

The maiden therefore gave Theseus a very long sword and rope (thread) and so the young man advanced immediately into the labyrinth. In a short time (in a moment), Theseus cut off the head of the Minotaur, which in vain tried to kill the boy and with the rope came out of the labyrinth to his companions. Thence the Athenians hastened to the shore from where all, together with Ariadna after embarked (got into the ship) and happily sailed to the island of Naxos.

THE STORY OF TANTALUS

Tantalus
**Treachery (unfaithful, untrustworthy, disloyal.)** What a terrible punishment! For Tantalus had always big thirst, but could never drink because water always receded from the treacherous young man. And again Tantalus always had great hunger, was never able to eat because food always receded from the treacherous youth.

**Word List**
- Fidelis, -is, -e – trustworthy
- Exsilium, -ii, n – exile
- Sitis, sitis, f – thirst
- Fames, famis, f – hunger
- Tantus, -a, -um – so great
- Mortalis, -is, -e – mortal, in pl, mankind
- Ira, -ae, f – anger
- Praeterea (adv) – moreover
- Adsum, adesse, affui, _____, I am present, I am at hand.
- Bibo, -ere, bibi, ___, I drink
- Edo, -ere, edi, esum – I eat
- Recedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum – I retreat
- Disco, -ere, didici, ____, I learn
- Formido, -inis, f – terror, feat
- Impendeo, -ere, _____, ____ (with dat) – I hang over
- De, (prep, with abl) – from, as a result of
- Offendo, -ere, -fendi, -fensum – I annoy

Nemo apud deos hominesque, ut antiqui narrant, celebrior erat quam Tantalus, Iovis filius. Tantalo igitur di deaeque, quia iuvenem magnopere amabant, omnia consilia narrabant atque Iuppiter, qui filium suum esse fidelissimum existimabat, puerum deorum verba mortalibus nuntiare vetuerat. Primo Tantalus, ubi multos sermons in Olympo audivit, tacebat, quia deorum omnia consilia discere cupiebat. Sed nihil sceleratus, nihil perfidius quam Tantalus esse potuit, Nam breve post tempus non iam tacebat, sed, postquam ex Olympo ad terram descendit, deorum omnes sermons mortalibus aperiebat! Inde Tantali erat mos ad Olympum e terra ascendere et Iovis consilia rursus audire. Mox tamen di deaeque, ira commoti, ubi tantam perfidiam intelleixerunt, in Taratara iuvenem sceleratissimum procire constituerunt. Sed poena gravior atque terribilior quam exsilium aderat! Tantalus enim semper magnum sitim habebat, sed numquam bibere poterat, quia semper perfido, ab iuveni aqua recedebat. Praeterea Tantalus semper magicum famem habebat, sed numquam esse poterat, quia semper perfido ab iuveni cibus recedebat. Quid terribilius quam poena tam gravis esse potuit.
THE STORY OF TANTALUS

(unembellished English Translation)

No one among the gods and humans, as the ancients recount was more famous than Tantalus, the son of Jupiter. To Tantalus the gods and goddesses revealed (narrated, told) all (their) plans (or designs) because they so much loved the young man; above all Jupiter, who believed (thought) his son to be very trustworthy also forbade the boy to tell the words of the gods to humans.

But nothing (no one) could be so rascally, nothing (no one) so treacherous than Tantalus. He could not even for a short time keep his mouth shut (be quiet). But after he descended from (Mount) Olympus to the earth, he (Tantalus) opened (up) all the tell-tales of the gods to the mortals (human beings)! From then it became the custom (habit) of Tantalus to go up to Olympus from earth to listen to the plans of Jupiter again and again.

But soon when the gods and goddesses knew (understood) the great treachery (treacherous acts) (of Tantalus) and moved by anger threw the young man into the Lower World (Tartara). That was in fact (at hand – aderat) a more serious and terrible punishment than exile! For Tantalus had always big thirst, but could never drink because water always receded (withdrew) from the treacherous young man. And again Tantalus always had great hunger, was never able to eat (edo – esse – edī – esum) because food (always) receded from the treacherous youth. What a punishment can be so terrible and grievous (dreadful)!

THE STORY OF MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH

Midas (Who he was)
In Greek mythology Midas was the king of Phrygia in Asia Minor. For his hospitality to the Satyr Silenus, Dionysus, god of wine, offered to grant Midas anything he wished. The king requested that everything he touched be turned to gold, but he soon regretted his choice because even his food and water were changed to gold. To free himself from the enchantment, Midas was instructed by Dionysus to bathe in the Pactolus River. It was said that afterward the sands of the river contained gold.

Midas was also one of the judges in a musical contest between the gods Apollo and Pan. When Midas preferred Pan's playing of the pipes to Apollo's playing of the lyre, Apollo changed Midas's ears to those of an ass. Midas was able to conceal his ears from all but his barber, who
whispered the secret into a hole in the ground. When the wind blew, the reeds that grew over the hole repeated the story.

**Satyrs**: Satyrs were deities of the woods and mountains, with horns and tails and sometimes with the legs of a goat. The satyrs were the companions of Dionysus, god of wine, and spent their time pursuing nymphs, drinking wine, dancing, and playing the syrinx, flute, or bagpipes.

**Silenus**: Silenus in Greek mythology was the oldest of the satyrs, the son of Hermes, messenger of the gods, or of Pan, a woodland god. The tutor of the young god Dionysus, Silenus often accompanied him on his travels. The old satyr was usually drunk, and he could be compelled, if caught in a drunken sleep, to prophesy the future. As a reward for his hospitality to Silenus, Dionysus granted Midas, king of Phrygia, the golden touch. In art Silenus is represented as a little old man in a state of jovial intoxication.

**Nymphs**: Nymphs in Greek and Roman mythology were the lesser divinities or spirits of nature, dwelling in groves and fountains, forests, meadows, streams, and the sea, represented as young and beautiful maidens, fond of music and dancing. The nymphs were distinguished according to the part of nature they personified.

**Word List.**

Midas, -ae, m – Midas, king of Phrygia
Re vera – in truth, really
Phryges, -um, u, pl – Phrygians, a people of Asia Minor.
Lydus, -a, -um – Lydian
Silenus, -1, m, Silenus, the guardian and tutor of Bacchus
Sacra, -orum, n, pl – Sacred rites.
Carus, -a, -um – dear
Arbitrium, facio, -ere, feci, factum – I give choice (of something)
Quicquid – whatever
Contingo, -ere, -tigi, --tactum – I touch
Vix (adv) – scarcely
Pallesco, -ere, pallui, --------, I turn pale
Glaeba, -ae, f – a clod of earth
Contactus, -us, m, - touch
Massa, -ae, f – a mass, a lump
Carpo, -ere, carpsi, carptum – I pluck
Festus, -a, -um – festal, pertaining to holidays
Pomum, -i, n, an apple.
Cena, -ae, f – dinner
Relevo, -are, -avi, -atum – I satisfy hunger (thirst etc)

MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH

(Story in Latin)
Olim Silenus, qui iam senex multos annos Bacchi, dei iuvenis, amicus
comes carus fuerat, vino gravis, a Phrygibus ad regem Midan
aducebatur. Midas laetus hospitis adventu (nam ipse Bacchi numen
colebat nec de sacris nesciebat) Silenum eum gaudio recepit et decem
festos dies noctesque agebat. Sed tandem senex, dolore commutus quaia
non aderat Bacchus, deum quaerere constituit.

Unidecimo igitur die Silenus et Midas Lydos in agros
advenerunt et post breve tempus Bacchum, solum tristemque, Silenum
quaerem asperunt. Sine mora Phryges, qui cum rege Mida iter
fecerant, Silenum Baccho reddere iubentur. Gratias maximae regi a
Baccho aguntur, sed gratiae non satis sunt. Midae enim duas muneris
arbitrium, gratum sed inutile, fecit. Sed Midas, vir stultissimus,
quicquid corpore contigerat, in aurum vertere posse cupiebat. Bacchus
scilicet invitissimus munus dedit atque dolebat quia Midas non meliora
petierat. Laetus discessit Midas, qui primo vix fortunae secundae
credebatur, atque Bacchi fidem quam primum tentare in animo habebat.
Humo saxum tollit: saxum palluit auro.

Deinde et glaebam contingit: eo contactu glaebam in massam
auream vertit. In manu popum, quod ex arboe ab eo carpitur, tenet: non
iam pomum, sed massa aurea inter ramos arboris aspicitur.

(The story of Midas continues in English)
......And so the king was thought by all men to be the happiest of all
mortals. But the most terrible danger, which was already hanging over
the king, was not really understood by them. Not long afterwards,
however, when dinner was being prepared by his slaves, Midas began to
think about two things, hunger and thirst. “How can a king live who can
neither eat nor drink?” he cried. His slaves were silent. For whatever the
king had touched with his lips was being turned into gold. No longer
could Midas satisfy his hunger and his thirst. Alas! Although he was the
richest of all men, yet he was really poorer than his poorest slave!

THE STORY OF PHAETHON
**PHAETHON:** Phaethon in Greek mythology was the son of Helios, god of the sun, and of the nymph Clymene. Helios had rashly promised to grant his son anything he wished, and Phaëthon chose to drive the chariot of the sun across the sky. Vainly Helios tried to explain to him that no mortal could drive the chariot; Phaëthon, however, insisted that his father keep his promise. Helios, after explaining the dreadful hazards, reluctantly yielded. Soon Phaëthon realized that his father had been right. Terrified, he lost control of the horses, and driving too near the earth set it on fire. To save the world from utter destruction, the god Zeus hurled his thunderbolt at the rash young driver, killing him instantly. Phaëthon fell to earth and according to legend was buried on the banks of the Eridanus River (now Po River).

**Word List**

Dissero, -ere, disserui, dissertum – I discuss, I argue
Phaethon, -onis,m – Phaethon
Nego, -are, -avi, -atum – deny
Phoebus, -i, m, Phoebus
Consisto, -ere, -stuli -------, I stand, I halt
Fero, ferre, tuli, latum – I bear
Lumen, -inis, n – light
Oculus, -i, m – an eye
Immensus, -a, -um – boundless, vast
Mundus, -i, m – the universe
Usus, usus, m – use, benefit
Confiteor, -eri, confessus sum – I admit, I confess
Currus, currus, m – a chariot
Ne ..........quidem (adv) – not...even
Dissuadeo, -ere, dissuasi, dissiasum (with dat.) – I dissuade
Sor, soris, f – one’s lot (in life): chance, destiny
Circumspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum – I look round upon
Posco, -ere, poposi, ______ I demand
Libenter, (adv) – willingly
Oro, -are, -avi, -atum, - I beg, I ask
Parco, -ere, peperci, parsum (with dat) – I spare
Stimulus, -i, m – a goad
Lorum, -i, n – a thong, in pl reins.
Sua sponte, of their own accord
Rapio, -ere, rapui, raptum – I seize
Aether, -eris, m – the heavens, the upper world
Despicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum – I look down upon
Tremo, -ere, -ui, ______ I tremble
Oborior, -iri, obortus sum – I appear, I rise up before.
Ruo, -ere, rui, -rutum - I rush on, I hasten
Fixus, -a, -um, perf partic, passive of figo, -ere, fixi, fixum
Incurso –are, -avi, -atum (with acc, and dat,) I strike against, I dash against.
Avia, -orum, n, plu – a wilderness
Fumo, -are, -avi, -atum – I smoke
Tellus, telluris, f – the earth
Flamma, -ae, f – a flame
Frons, frondis, f, - a leaf: in pl foliage
Cinis, cineris, m – ashes
Stupeo, -ere, stupui, _____ I am confounded, I am stupefied.
Frenum, -I, n (usually in pl) – a bit, a bridle
Remitto, -ere, -misi, -missum – I let go, I relax
Ardeo, -ere, arsi, arsum (intrans) – I am on fire, I blaze, angry
Penetro, -are, -avi, -atum – I make my way into, I penetrate.
Chaos, acc, chaos, abl, chao – chaos, (the shapeless mass out of which the universe was made).
Confundo, -ere, -fudi, -fusum – I hurl together, I mingle, I confuse.
Supersum, supersse, superfui – I survive.

THE STORY OF PHAETHON IN DIALOGUE

(Dominus et Sextus et Marcus in peristylio sedentes multa de dis deabusque inter se disserunt. Subito Marci vox auditur.)
MARCUS: "Quis erat Phaethon ille, domine? Nunc fabulam audiamus ne alii nobis sint doctiores!"

DOMINUS: "Quis nescit hanc fabulam, quam Ovidius noster de Apolline et de Phaethonte tam bene narravit? Ego tamen, ut Marcus Paulo plus de litteris nostris discat, incipiam."

(Marcus et Sextus, quo melius audient, tacent dominum spectant.)

"Phaethon, de quo petis ut aliquid narrem, erat iuvenis et fortis et nobilis atque Apollinis filius-id quod tamen multi mortalibus negabant. Itaque iuvenis ad regiam Solis, ut Phoebum de parentibus suis rogaret, sine mora profiscisci constituit. Phoebus tamen . . ."

MARCUS: "Quis erat hic Phoebus, domine?"

SEXTUS: "Tu nos, ut semper, rursus interpellas! Phoebus Apollo scilicet dei nomen erat: alii eum Phoebum, alii Apollinem, alii Phoebum Apollinem appellant."

MARCUS: "Tibi gratias ago, O doctissime. Sed noli nimis saepe ita loqui! Perge, si vis, domine."

DOMINUS: "Phoebus tamen, postquam Phaethontem, qui procul a se iam constiterat, quia propiora lumina ferre non potuerat, oculis quibus omnia videt, aspexit, 'Quae est tibi causa,' inquit, 'huius itineris? Quid a me petis?'"

SEXTUS: "Cui Phaethon, ut nos apud Ovidium legimus, respondisse dicitur:
'O lux immensi publica mundi,
Phoebe pater, si das usum mihi nominis huius, . . .'
"
DOMINUS: “Di immortals! Discipulus noster Ovidi verba ipsa scit. Quomodo id esse potest?”
MARCUS: “Hic Sextus sapientiam suam totiens prae se ferre tentat ut vix eum pati possim: sed re vera doctus, ut mihi videtur, est discipulus iste.”
DOMINUS: “Tu, O Phoebe,’ perrexit Phaethon, ‘non modo da hoc tantum munus, quod nunc a te petere in animo habeo, sed etiam me esse filium tuum confitere ne quis id quo id est verum rursus neget.
MARCUS: “Quod munus ille rogavit, domine?”

The Story of Phaethon (contd. in English.)
MARCUS: “What is the end of that story which you were telling us yesterday, sir?”
SEXTUS: “Did Phaethon drive Phoebus’ chariot so that he might show himself to be Apollo’s son?”
THE MASTER: “Yes, because although Phaethon was mortal, he did not fear to undertake a task which had been performed as yet by no one except by an immortal.”
SEXTUS: “Indeed Phaethon was so brave that he feared neither death nor disaster.”
THE MASTER: “The god, angered by his son’s plan, advised him thus: ‘Spare the goad, my son, and rather use the reins: for the horses will hasten of their own accord: do not drive the chariot too high, do not drive it too low. The safest route is in the middle, between heaven and earth.’”
SEXTUS: “Did Phaethon immediately seize those reins which none except his father could control?”
THE MASTER: “Let us hear the end of the story, sir. For surely Phaethon cannot be saved now?”

The Story of Phaethon (contd. in Latin.)
DOMINUS: “Deinde Phaethon miser, postquam ab aethere despexit terram infra iacentem, palluit; subito genua timore tremuerunt: tenebrae per tantum lumen oculis¹ obortae sunt. Eheu! multum caeli post terga relictum est, sed ante oculos plus est. Iuvenis stupet: nec frena remittere nec retinere potest, nescitque nomina equorum qui, ut narrat Ovidius,

‘sine lege ruunt altoque sub aethere fixis incursant stellis rapiuntque per avia currum.’”

SEXTUS ET MARCUS: “Perge, perge, domine. Quid deinde?”


DISCIPULI: “O domine, . . .”
DOMINUS: “Tacete, discipuli: hora enim sera est, sed cras reliquam fabulae partem vobis narrabo.”

The Story of Phaethon (concluded in English.)

THE MASTER: “But Jupiter having heard the prayers of the Earth saved the whole Universe. For he sent lightning upon Phaethon in order to kill the youth. Apollo’s son fell headlong: so a star sometimes falls at night from the calm sky.”

MARCUS: “His sisters, as Sextus has already told me, buried him.”
THE MASTER: “They did, and they wrote on his monument (use ‘saxum’) these words which I will speak in Latin and which you will be able to translate into English:-

‘Hic sepultus est Phaethon, currus paterni auriga.’”
THE DISASTER OF THE CAUDINE FORKS, 321 B.C.

SAMNITES (Who they were)

The Samnites were the ancient people who lived in Samnium, the mountainous center of southern Italy. They comprised the Caraceni, the Pentri, the Caudini, and the Hirpini. Because of their raids upon the people of Campania, the latter placed themselves under the protection of Rome, and a series of wars took place between the Romans and the Samnites from 343 BC to 290 BC.

Among the many enemies of Rome were the Samnites, a powerful tribe of south west Italy, against whom the Romans fought three wars. In the second of these occurred the disaster of the Caudine Forks. The Roman forces were in Campania when they received the news that the Samnites were attacking Luceria, a Roman base in Apulia. **In the second war, from 326 to 304 BC, the defeat of the Romans at the Caudine Forks in 321 BC very nearly gave to the Samnites the opportunity to be the rulers of Italy;** by 304 BC, however, they were forced to recognize the supremacy of Rome. To relieve the town at once was essential, and consuls, Veturius and Postumius, who were men of little practical ability, led their forces by the quickest way across the country instead of taking the longer, but safer coastal route. They and the entire Roman force were ambushed and made to surrender. Although this was one of the greatest defeats ever suffered by Rome, yet within the next 40 years she had not only recovered from it, but had also acquired sufficient mastery over the country as a whole to enable her to repel a Greek invasion under Pyrrhus.

The third war (298-290 BC), however ended with the victory of Rome. The remaining Samnites joined unsuccessful attacks on Rome until 82 BC, after which they were either Romanized or sold into slavery.
THE DISASTER OF THE CAUDINE FORKS

[Latin resume of the story]

Word List
Angustiae, -arum, f, pl. – a mounting pass, adefile.
Samnites, -ium, m, pl – the Samnites
Gero, -ere, gessi, gestum – I wage, I carry out (war)
Luceria, -ae, f, - Luceria, a town in Apulia
Per (prep, with acc) – through, along
Accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptum – I receive
Saepio, -ire, saepsi, saeptum – I block up, I barricade.
Potestas, -atis, f – power
In potestatem venio, -ire, -veni, ventum – to fall into the power of...
Ad unum – to man, without exception.
Pontius, -ii, m – Pontius
Responsum –I, n – an answer, a reply
Muto, mutare mutavi, mutatum – to change
Causa, -ae, f – a reason
Tantum (adv) – only
Adicio, -ere, adieci, adiectum – to add (an argument, reason etc).
Certo – certainly, surely
Populus, -ii, m – a nation, a people
Beneficium –ii, n – a favor, kindness
Iugum –I, n – the yoke
Perpetuus, -a, -um – permanent
Amicitia, -ae, f – friendship
Longe (adv) – far away, greatly, utterly
Aetas, -atis, f – age, an age, a generation
Differi, differre, distuli, dilatum – to postpone, to defer
Recipio, -ere, recepi, receptum to receive, to recover
Condicio, -onis, f – a condition, (in plu) terms
Postulo, -are, -avi, -atum – to demand

Olim Samnites, qui in Italia habitabant, contra Romanos exercitum maximum ducere constituerunt. Sed primo (at first) Senatus, qui pauci ex hostibus, qui antea (before, formerly) contra Romanos pugnaverunt, fortiores Samniti fuerant, per metum castris continebat (hold together). Deinde Romani, postquam satis virium ad certamen (contest) habuerunt, contra Samnites processerunt (advanced) atque hostes bello vicerunt.

Romani autem secundo in bello, quod (which) contra Samnites gesserunt, cladem (defeat, disaster) ingentem acceperunt; neque enim consilium bonum habebant atque Samnites per dolum omnes Romanos in angustiis includere potuerant. Forte consules cum omnibus legionibus suis iter Luceriam faciebat, quia Samnites oppidum circumsedebat et urbis incolae, ut fama erat, sociorum suorum adventum cottidie exspectabant. (Nihil enim perfidius quam Luceriam Samnitis tradere esse potuit. Itaque Romani, qui fortiores quidem sed stultiores Samniti erant, per viam brevissimam neque vero per viam longiorem tutioremque ad urbem ad Luceriam properaverunt. Brevi per angustias consules corporas suas ducebant, ubi Samnites, qui iam arboribus saxisque magnis viam saeperant, eos circumsederunt. Consules igitur nec procedure nec fugere poterant.

_Story of “The Disaster of the Caudine Forks” continues in English._

(1) The Romans were better soldiers than the Samnites
(2) But now they could neither escape nor fight.
(3) What could be more terrible than so great a disaster?
(4) The Samnites were besieging our men who had fallen into the power of the enemy.
(5) Pontius, leader of the Samnites, sent a messenger to his father.
(6) For the old man was wiser than Pontius.
(7) “What do you advise about the Romans”, he asked.
(8) “For we are stronger than our enemies now”.
(9) “It is better to free the Romans,” the old man said, “than to kill them”.
(10) But the Samnites did not understand the old man’s words.
(11) A second time (iterum) Pontius sent a messenger to his father.
(12) At last the old man said, “kill all the Romans to a man!”( Do not leave anyone alive!)

The defeat of the Romans at the Caudine Forks continues in Latin:

“The old man is mad,” shouted all the Samnites, “for nothing can be more foolish than his answer (reply). However, when not long afterwards, the father of Pontus came into the camp and said, “indeed I change nothing in my opinion (sentence, word), “I only add (some) reasons. For I believe surely through an immense (huge) (show of) kindness, the best plan will be to strengthen permanently peace and friendship with a very strong people. But you Semnites for long have disagreed with me and will not want to listen to my words. What? You don’t send me news anymore? Then at last I order you to kill all (the Romans) without exception. So you
will be able to postpone (defer, put off) war in many generations (for ages), because not in many years, the Romans will recover strength, is not any bad advice.

Pontius however decided better plan than that of the father, as the Samnites believed that he (the old man) had demanded a very heavy (grievous) condition for peace with the Romans. Then Pontius sent all the Romans under the yoke.

**THE STORY OF NIOBE**

![Niobe's Children](image)

**Niobe’s Children:** Punished for her pride, Niobe suffered the loss of her children at the hands of the gods. The engraving (picture, drawing) shows a distressed Niobe before she turned into stone forever dampened with her own tears.

*Persons and places mentioned in the story and some relevant list of words*

**Ovid – The Roman poet**
Niobe - Queen of Thebes
Latona – Mother of Apollo and Diana
Atlas – Father of Pleiades
Fortuna – Fortune (personified)
Thebae – Thebes, the capital of Boetia in Greece
Cynthius – A mountain in Delos, known as the birthplace of Apollo and Diana
Apud – (prep with acc) – in the works of... , at the house of...
Inimicus – a – um – hostile
Thebanus – Theban
Contemno – ere, - tempsi, temptum – to scorn
Solo – a – um – alone, only
Thebaides, - um, f, pl – The women of Thebes
Tus, turis, n – an offering of incense, incense
Preces, precum, f, pl – prayers
Ara, -ae, f, - an altar
Colo – ere, colui, cultum – to till, to worship
Numen, numinis, n – deity, divine majesty, divine power.
Praefero – ferre, - tuli, - latum – to prefer, to esteem before
Eripio, - ere, eripui, ereptum – to snatch away
Vertex, - icis, m – a peak, a summit
En (interj) _ Behold! Lo!
Nisi (conj) – unless, except
Cedeo, - ere, - cessi, cessum – to yield
Desisto, - ere, - stiti, - stitum – to cease, to stop
Querela – ae, f, - a complaint
Idem (pron, neuter of idem – the same
Thebae, - arum, f, pl – Thebes
Deploro, - are, - avi, - atum – I deplore, I lament
Vehementer (adv) – bitterly
Misericordia, - ae, f – pity
Lacrima, -ae, f, a tear
Mano, - are, - avi, - (with acc) – I am well with.

NIIOBE

Niobe in Greek mythology was the daughter of Tantalus, and the queen of Thebes. Her husband, King Amphion, was a son of the god Zeus and was a great musician. Niobe bore him 7 handsome sons and 7 beautiful daughters. Although she was happy, Niobe exhibited the same arrogance toward the gods that her father had shown. She boasted of her superiority to the goddess Leto, who had only two children. The gods heard her words on distant Mount Olympus and resolved to punish her.
Latona's children—Apollo, god of prophecy and a master archer; and Artemis, goddess of the hunt—fired their arrows with deadly aim, killing all of Niobe's children. The grief-stricken Niobe was turned into a stone that was forever wet with her tears.

**Niobe [Story begins in Latin]**

Apud poetam Ovidium nos multas fabulas invenimus sed nullam clariorem quam de Nioba, Thebanorum regina, quae quattordecim liberos, septem filios filiasque septem, habebat. Nemo igitur e mulieribus, ut credebat Nioba, superbior vel felicior unquam fuerat quam ipsa (she herself). Nam pueri puelaesthes matrem suam haud minus quam mater liberos amabat. Sed mortalium breve est gaudium, si laetis de rebus nimirum (too) saepe se iactant (to boast about), atque ita deos immortals neglegunt. Iam reginae stultae impendabat (hung over the foolish queen) pernices gravis. Plurimos annos dea Latona, cui erant (to whom) erant haud quattuordecim liberi, sed duo soli, Apollo et Diana, Niobae inimicissima semper fuerat. Propter hoc Latona, summa invidia commota, neminem magis quam Niobam contemptserat atque cunctos Thebanos se, non reginam, colere iusserat.


**Niobe [Literal (unembellished) English Translation of the above story]**

In the works of (the Roman poet), Ovid, we have found many stories, but none more famous (celebrated, popular) than that of Niobe, the queen of Thebes who had 14 children, 7 sons and 7 daughters. No one therefore among (all) women (e mulieribus), as Niobe believed was haughty (proud, arrogant or successful) than she herself. For the boys and the girls loved their mother, not less than the mother loved her children. But with human beings (mortals), the joy is (can be) short (lived), if too often they boast about things (properties), when thus they ignore the immortal gods. Already a mortal (serious) disaster hung over the foolish queen. For many years, the goddess, Latona, to whom were not 14 children (who hadn’t got 14 children), but only 2 was always very hostile to Niobe. As a result of this, Latona, moved by great envy (jealousy) scorned Niobe and also ordered all (the entire) Thebans not to worship the queen.

The Thebans therefore daily gave incense with prayers to the queen. Afterwards, all the citizens out of the fear of Latona neglected (ignored) Niobe and did not worship their queen. Not long afterwards Niobe came out of her palace into the city and in anger exclaimed (shouted) "Why, O women of Thebes do you worship Latona now? Why don’t you (again) come to my altars? “Why is my divine majesty still without incense? Is my great grandfather (Avus) not Atlas, my father Tantalus, who alone among all mortals was able to approach the table of the gods?” Why have all of you preferred Latona (instead of) to me? “But, I greater than Latona, am happy (successful) and will remain happy because ‘Fortune’ has left a lot of good for me than ever she (Latona) can snatch away (from me). “Yes (thus) says Niobe”.

Latona, meanwhile who already from the peak of Mount Cynthus had heard the words of Niobe, Apollos and Diana, said, “Behold, I am
your mother, and I yield to (respect) no goddess, except Juno”. “Stop (desist) from complaints”, responded Apollo, and already the delay for punishment has been long. Now (here in) the punishment. Diana said the same (thing).

(Summary of the end of the story) (Translate into Latin, please!)

(1) Apollo was much stronger than most men.
(2) No one could run away swiftly than Diana.
(3) Moved by anger they now hastened from the lofty summit of Cynthus to the city of Thebes.
(4) Apollo killed all Niobe's sons with seven long arrows.
(5) But the death of the queen’s daughters was no less swift.
(6) For Diana who (quae) was much braver than most girls killed all seven of the daughters.
(7) Very great was Niobe’s grief, for no one deplored the death of the children more bitterly than the queen.
(8) Finally, Jupiter, moved by pity, turned Niobe into stone.
(9) Nothing has ever been more terrible than Niobe’s grief.
(10) For even the statue’s eyes, as Ovid relates, are always wet with tears.

PERSEUS AND GORGON MEDUSA

Gorgon Medusa
Perseus, in Greek mythology was the slayer of the Gorgon Medusa; he was the son of Zeus, father of the gods, and of Danaé, daughter of Acrisius, king of Argos. Warned that he would be killed by his grandson, Acrisius locked mother and child in a chest and cast them into the sea. They drifted to the island of Seriphus, where they were rescued and where Perseus grew to manhood. Polydectes, king of Seriphus, fell in love with Danaé, and, fearing that Perseus might interfere with his plans, sent him to procure the head of Medusa, a monster whose glance turned men to stone.

Aided by Hermes, messenger of the gods, Perseus made his way to the Gray Women, three old hags who shared one eye between them. Perseus took their eye and refused to return it until they gave him directions for reaching the nymphs of the north. From the nymphs he received winged sandals, a magic wallet that would fit whatever was put into it, and a cap to make him invisible. Equipped with a sword from Hermes that could never be bent or broken and a shield from the goddess Athena, which would protect him from being turned to stone, Perseus found Medusa and killed her.

Invisible in his cap, he was able to escape the wrath of her sisters and with her head in the wallet flew on his winged sandals toward home. As he was passing Ethiopia, he rescued the princess Andromeda as she was about to be sacrificed to a sea monster and took her with him as his wife. At Seriphus he freed his mother from Polydectes by using Medusa’s head to turn the king and his followers to stone. All then returned to Greece, where Perseus accidentally killed his grandfather Acrisius with a discus, thus fulfilling the prophecy. According to one legend, Perseus went to Asia, where his son Perses ruled over the Persians, from whom they were said to have gotten their name.
The adventures of Perseus

Word list
Perseus, -ei, m, Perseus
Femina, -ae, f, a woman
Avus, -I, m, a grandfather
Oraculum, -I, n, an oracle
Nepos, -otis, m, a grandson
Falx, falcis, f, a knife, a sickle
Medusa, -ae, f, Medusa
Arca, -ae, f, a box, a chest
Seriphus, -I, f, Seriphus
Speculum, -i, n, a mirror
Talaria, -ium, m pl, winged sandals
Dimitto, -ere, dimisi, I send away
Armatus, -a, -um, armed
Autem, but, moreover
Verto, -ere, verti, I turn
Gorgo, -onis, f, Gorgon
Libya, -ae, f, Libya
Numerus, -i, m, a number
Includo, -ere, inclusi, I shut in.
Proicio, -ere, proieci, I throw into
In matrimonium duco, -ere, duxi, I marry
Reporto, -are, -avi, I bring back.
Aethiopia, -ae, f, Ethiopia
Scopulus, -i, m, a rock
Imago, -inis, f, an image, a reflection
Volo, -are, -avi, I fly
Devoro, -are, -avi, I eat up
Abscido, -ere, abscidi, I cut off
Relinquus, -a, -um, remaining, the other
Supremus, -a, -um, last
Cottidie, everyday
Affixus, -a, -um, I fasten
Studiosus, -a, -um, eager, keen
Emergeo, -ere, emersi, I come out from, emerge
Advenio, -ire, adveni, I arrive
Offendo, -ere, offensi, I annoy.
Caveo, -ere, cavi, cautum – beware, take care.
Discus, -I, m, the discus
Uxor, -oris, f, a wife
Forte (adv) by chance; it happened that....
Adhuc (adv) still, as yet.
Iactus, -a, -um thrown
Fugo, -ere, fugi, f, I flee, I escape
Larissa, -ae, f, Larissa, a city in Thessaly
Invitus, -a, -um, against one's will, unwilling
Publicus, -a, -um, public
Celebro, -are, -avi, I celebrate, I hold (games)
Certo, -are, -avi, I compete
Aspicio, -ere, aspexi, I see, I behold
Gaudium, -ii, n, joy

*Latin rendering ‘exposé’ in dialogue between the teacher and pupils*. 


**Publius**: “Qui in silva Perseus vidit, domine? Eratne ibi Medusa? Nobis relinquant fabulae tuae narra, si vis.”


**Pueri** “Nos quidem Perseum laudamus, sed cur ad oras Aethiopiae volavit?”

**Dominus** “O pueri, quam studiosi estis! Sed me audite.”

**Marcus** “Sed, O domine, nobis dic....”

**Marcus** “Servavitne Perseus Andromedam, domine?”


*(Conclusion of the story of Perseus)*


*Siue vera erant verba oraculi: “cave nepotem tuum; puer te occidet.”*
Proserpina: Proserpina, daughter of Ceres kidnapped by Pluto and taken to the Lower World.

“In general, myth is a narrative that describes and portrays in symbolic language the origin of the basic elements and assumptions of a culture. Mythic narrative relates, for example, how the world began, how humans and animals were created, and how certain customs, gestures, or forms of human activities originated.” Origin of the seasons? The story of “Ceres and Proserpina” illustrates one of these mythic narratives.

The Origin of the Seasons

In Roman mythology, Ceres was the goddess of agriculture, she and her daughter Proserpine were the counterparts of the Greek goddesses Demeter and Persephone. The Greek belief that her joy at being reunited with her daughter each spring caused the earth to bring forth an abundance of fruits and grains was introduced into Rome in the 5th century BC, and her cult became extremely popular, especially with the plebeians. The word cereal is derived from her name. Her chief festival, the Cerealia, was celebrated from April 12 to 19. Ceres the goddess of crops and of all growth, had a daughter, Proserpine. Her daughter was carried off to the Lower World by its king, Pluto. Finally Ceres bargained with Pluto for the return of her daughter, Proserpina was to dwell six months every year with Pluto and six months with her mother in this world. This agreement is represented today by the seasons of
**spring and summer** when Ceres is happy and causes the countryside to grow; the period of autum and winter signifies the mourning of Ceres for her daughter, who is then with Pluto.

**Vocabulary for the exercise**

- Multum, (adv) much, greatly
- Nusquam (adv) nowhere
- Diu, for a long time
- Iam, (adv) already
- Obscurus, -a, -um, dark
- Mortuus, -a, -um, dead
- Mortui, m, pl, the dead
- Descendo, -ere, I go down, I descend
- Quaero, -ere, I seek, I look for
- Terra, -ae, f, land, earth
- Anima, -ae, f, a soul
- Validus, -a, -um, strong
- Novus, -a, -um, new.


*[English translation – resumé - unembellished]*

Ceres was the famous goddess of the fields (crops). Ceres had a daughter and she loved the daughter, Proserpina very much. Once upon a time the goddess looked for (sought) the daughter all over the earth for a long time.. For Pluto the god of the underworld loved Proserpina and hastened to the underworld with the girl. Don't you see the miserable girl at the right in the picture? Strong horses dragged Proserpina to the underworld. Friends of Proserpina did not hear the girl. Alas! Where is Ceres?
THE ARGONAUTS AND THE GOLDEN FLEECE:
Phrixus and Helle

Phrixus and Helle: The Flight of Phrixus and Helle. (See ‘Golden Fleece’.)

GOLDEN FLEECE: What was the Golden Fleece?

Golden Fleece, [Fleece = woolly covering of a sheep; see a coat lined with fleece] in Greek mythology, the fleece of the winged ram Chrysomallus. The ram was sent by the god Hermes to rescue
Phrixus and Helle, the two children of the Greek king Athamas and his wife, Nephele. Athamas had grown indifferent to his wife and had taken Ino, the daughter of King Cadmus, for his second wife. Ino hated her stepchildren, especially Phrixus, because she wanted her own son to succeed to the throne. Realizing that her children were in grave danger because of the jealousy of their stepmother, Nephele prayed to the gods for help. Hermes sent her Chrysomallus, the winged ram, whose fleece was made of gold. The ram snatched the children up and bore them away on his back. Soaring into the air, he flew eastward, but as he was crossing the strait that divides Europe and Asia, Helle slipped from his back and fell into the water. The strait where she was drowned was named for her: the Sea of Helle, or the Hellespont. The ram safely landed Phrixus in Colchis, a country on the Black Sea that was ruled by King Aeëtes. There he was hospitably received and, in gratitude to the gods for saving his life, sacrificed Chrysomallus at the temple of the god Zeus. Phrixus then gave the precious Golden Fleece to Aeëtes, who placed it in a sacred grove under the watchful eye of a dragon that never slept. Many years later, the Argonauts led by Phrixus’s cousin, the Greek hero Jason, recovered the Golden Fleece with the help of the daughter of King Aeëtes, the sorceress Medea who, out of love for Jason, put the dragon to sleep. The Argonauts were the band of heroes who sailed on the ship Argo to obtain the Golden Fleece. The leader of the expedition was Jason, son of Aeson, king of Iolcus in Thessaly.

The Latin Narrative in dialogue between the Master and the Pupils.


SEXTUS: “Tune fabulam, mi amice, antea audivisti?”

MARCUS: “Audivi, sed quis erat Iason, domine?”
DOMINUS; “Me audite, pueri, et vobis totam fabulam narrabo. Phrixus, postquam mortem sororis vehementer deploravit, ad Colchos appropinquavit. Hic dis immortalibus arietem sacrificavit atque ex arbore vellus suspendit. Pretiosissimus autem hoc vellus erat, quia di arieti praeimum velleris aurei dederant”.

MARCUS: “Deinde Graeci……..”

SEXTUS: “Tace, stultissime! Tu quidem, ut semper putas, es multo sapientior domino nostro.”

DOMINUS: “Gratias tibi, Sexte, ago. Tue es discipulus sapientissimus,. Laudare enim magistros dominosque pueris utile semper fuit semperque erit.”

SEXTUS: “Perge, si vis, domine. Nemo est stultior Marco”.

DOMINUS: “Non hodie: nam hora sera est. Vos tamen relinquam fabulae partem cras audietis”.

The Argonauts and the quest...... contd.

(Quattuor post diebus discipuli cum Domino in peristylio sedent).

SEXTUS: “Perge, si vis, Domine, quia nos relinquam fabulae partem audire multum cupimus”.


SEXTUS: “Di immortals! Quotiens Marcus nos interpellabit.


SEXTUS: “Quid laborem rex iuveni imposuit, domine?”
[English Translation of the Narrative in dialogue - unembellished]

**Master:** Once upon a time, Phrixus and Helle, who lived in Thebes, decided to flee (run away) (their) home as a result of the fear of (their) wicked stepmother and so these fellows could no longer stay in the town. But not long after the children went away something beautiful (interesting) happened. For in the middle of the road stood a sacred ram, which was expecting the arrival of the brother and sister. Phrixus then (wonderful to relate), since the ram was able to fly (journey) in the sky without any wings, immediately decided to fly into Asia across the sea and thus save her sister from danger; for staying in their fatherland the children had no hope of safety.

But a disaster struck. In deed, at first Phrixus and Helle, sitting at the back of the ram flew to the territories of Asia without any difficulty. Then (suddenly) Helle, who had not much strength after to so long a journey fell into the sea.. Today (therefore) we call this Sea Hellespontum.

**Marcus:** “Finally, Phrixus, however, as I believe arrived Asia safely but without the sister.”

**Sextus:** “My friend, have you heard the story before?”

**Marcus:** “I have heard (it). But who is Jason, Master?”

**Master:** “Listen to me, boys, I will narrate the whole story to you.” Phrixus wept bitterly after the death of his sister and he approached Colchos. Here he sacrificed the ram to the immortal gods and suspended the fleece from a tree. (For) this fleece was very precious, because the gods gave a reward (prize) of the golden fleece....”

**Marcus:** “Then the Greeks.......”

**Sextus:** “Keep quiet; foolish boy? You, in deed as you always think are wiser than the master.”

**Master:** “I thank you, Sextus. You are a very wise pupil. For to praise the masters and lords was always useful to boys and will always be. 

**Sextus:** “Continue, master, please. No one is as foolish as Marcus.”

**Master:** Not today; for it is late. You will hear the remaining part of the story tomorrow

(After 4 days the boys are sitting in the peristyle – garden of a Roman house with the master)

**Sextus:** “Proceeed,” (continue), please, master, because we wish to hear the remaining part of the story.”
Master: “After a few years (a few years later), the Greeks, who wanted greatly (anxiously) to bring back the golden fleece to Greece called together many (Greek) heroes and adorned a big and fast ship with sails. The ship is named ‘Argo’ and we call the heroes of the famous ship “Argonauts”. Then leader of the Argonauts was Jason.

Marcus: “Two words”. ‘Argo’ and ‘Nautae’.

Sextus: “The immortal gods!” (‘Oh, my god!’). “How often will Marcus interrupt us?”

Master: “Keep quiet, foolish boys.” At last after a long and difficult journey (Jason) arrived Colchos with the rest of the Argonauts. But Aeetes, the king of Colchis wanted to keep (retain) the Golden Fleece and according to the words of the Oracle “You will be king, as long as the fleece remains in your kingdom”, he (the king) was greatly afraid. Then, Aeetes imposed three very difficult conditions on Jason, because not only that he had decided to keep the fleece, he also wanted to kill the boy. Jason, nevertheless, a very brave young man was not afraid to undertake the three tasks.

Sextus: “What (tasks) did the king impose on the young man, master?”

The Third part and the end of the story of Jason, the Argonauts and the Golden Fleece.

Master: (The first of the three tasks was to yoke two brazen-footed-fire-breathing bulls to a plough. Secondly, a large field had to be ploughed and then planted with the teeth of a fierce dragon. Finally this field had to be reaped by the evening. Jason would have been unable to carry out these conditions but for the help of Medea, the king’s daughter.)

Marcus: “Medea, as I have heard, was a very skilful sorceress.”

Sextus: “But how did Medea help the Argonauts? Surely the heroes were much stronger than the king’s daughter?”

The Master: “Of course, but Medea gave Jason a magic ointment. Thus he was able to yoke the bulls and to plough the field. But when the youth had sown the dragon’s teeth (horrible to relate), the Argonauts suddenly saw many fierce and terrible men, all armed with swords and spears!”

Sextus: “But Medea, as ancient writers relate, ordered Jason to throw a stone into the crowd of soldiers.”

The Master: “And immediately all the armed men began to fight. Soon most were dead: Jason easily killed the rest and carried back the Golden Fleece to his own land.”

THE SCHOOLMASTER OF FALERII AND CAMILLUS
[Synopsis of the story]

Though the Romans were a conquering race, they often showed fine sportsmanship in their wars. Once a treacherous school master of a hostile city that was waging war with Rome brought the sons of the principal men of the city into the camp of Camillus. Camillus refused to take advantage of his enemy, and had the teacher flogged back into the city by his pupils.

Forte in urbe Faliscorum, ut scripserunt scriptores antiqui, habitabat quidam (a certain) magister ludi. Quod hic magister patribus illius urbis gratior erat quam alii (other) magistri, multi pueri, liberi principum, ad ludum eius cottidie mittebantur. Discipuli non solum in ludo docebantur sed etiam per vias et agros modo brevioribus modo longioribus itineribus a magistro ducebantur.

Tandem bellum inter Faliscos et Romanos gerebatur et Romanae legiones agros Falliscorum vastabant. Magister autem mores pacis in belli tempore non intermisit: cottidie discipulos sermonibus gratissimis per agros ducebat. Denique pueros, qui se in periculo esse non sentiebant, in castra Romana ad imperatorem perduxit. Camillus, vir clarissimus, tum imperator copiarum Romanarum erat; cui sceleratus magister dixit: “Hi pueri sunt liberi principum Faliscorum. Si tu eos retinebis, patres eorum et tota civitas in potestatem tuam se dedent.”

Quae ubi Camillus audivit, “Non ad simile tui,” inquit, “venisti. Nos Romanos arma contra pueros non ferimus (bear).”
Vestimentis privari deinde magistrum iussit et manus vinciri. Tum imperator pueris virgas dedit. “Eis virgis illum magistrum sceleratum agite in urbem; ex castris meis eum celeriter pellite; nam perfidia poenam semper meret.”

**Vocabulary** (to help you easily translate the above passage)

- **Camillus**, -i, m, Camillus, a famous Roman General
- **Falerii**, -iorum, m, plu, a town in Etruria, in North Western Italy
- **Quam** (adv), used with adjs and advs, how
- **Saepe** (adv) often
- **Ultro** (adv) of one’s own accord, voluntarily
- **Circumsedeo**, -ere, I besiege
- **Tento**, -are, I try
- **Educo**, -ere, I lead out
- **Ludo**, -ere, I play
- **Perfidia**, -ae, f, Treachery, deceit
- **Hoc**, (pron, nom, and acc, n sing), this
- **Deinde**, (adv), then, in the next place
- **Semper** (adv), always
- **Clamo**, -are, I exclaim, I cry out
- **Verbero**, -are, I beat, flog
- **Ago**, -ere, I drive back
- **Trado**, -ere, I hand over, I give up
- **Virga**, -ae, a twig, a rod, cane, whip
- **Pecunia**, -ae, f, money
- **Castra**, -orum, n, a camp
- **Pergo**, -ere, I proceed, I continue.
- **Verus**, -a, -um, true
- **Perfidus**, -a, -um, treacherous
- Modo...modo, at some times......at other times
- Gratissimus, most or very agreeable.
- Ad simile tui, to a person like you.

**[Unembellished translation of the story]**

It happened that in the city of Falerii, as the ancient writers wrote, there lived a certain schoolmaster. Because (as for the fact that) this schoolmaster was more popular among the fathers of the schoolchildren than other masters, many children of the leaders of the city were daily sent to his school. The boys were not only taught in school, they were at times led (conducted) through the streets, and at other times through the fields in very long and short journeys.
At last there was war between the people of Falerii (Ethrucians) and the Romans and the Roman legions had ravaged the Ethrucian fields. The schoolmaster, however had not left off (stopped, forgotten) the customs of peace in time of war: everyday he led the schoolchildren through the fields with nice talks (conversations).

At last he brought the boys, who themselves did not perceive to be in danger, to Camillus, who was then the general of the Roman forces, a very famous man, to whom the wicked master said: “Here are the boys, the children of the Ethrucian leaders. If you will arrest them, their fathers and the whole community (state) will give themselves into your hands.” When Camillus heard these words he said, “Not to a person like you (ad similem tui)….. We Romans do not bear arms against boys”.

He ordered that the master be stripped of his clothings and his hands bound. Then the general gave whips to the boys. “Drive this wicked master back into the city with these whips (rods, sticks, twigs); drive him quickly out of my camp; for treachery always deserves punishment.”

THE POET PHAEDRUS & HIS FABLES

The poet Phaedrus was a Greek slave who had been brought to Rome when still quite young. He wrote over one hundred fables in verse when freed by the first Emperor Augustus. Phaedrus lived until the middle of the first century A.D.. “The three small pigs” and “The Wolf and the Lamb” are prose adaptations of the originals verses of Phaedrus.
TRES PARVI PORCI [Three small pigs]

Oppugno, -are, -avi, I attack
Flo, -are, -avi, I blow
Deleo, -ere, delevi, I destroy
Haud multō post, not long afterwards
Se (refl. pro) themselves
Casa, -ae, f, a cottage
Later, -eris, m, a brick
Stramentum, -i, n, straw
Porcus, -i, m, a pig
Summus, -a, -um, very great, utmost

porcorum parvorum victoria erat qui tertium summo in honore semper habebant.

(Unembelished translation into English)

Once upon a time there was a wicked wolf who liked evil. There were also three small pigs: two were foolish, but the third was wise (had much wisdom). When the three decided to build houses for themselves, the first used straw, the second used twigs (bushwood). The third pig however built his house with big strong bricks.

Not long afterwards the wicked wolf who had always looked for opportunity to attack the small pigs, saw them in the bush. What a wonderful opportunity! But our three small friends who were gripped by terrible fear (of the wolf), hastened to the strong house (abode). Here they defended themselves against the wolf, who blew and blew, but all in vain! He blew in this way in order to destroy the house. But the gods no longer wanted to help the wicked wolf. The victory of the three small pigs was great, who forever held the the third (comrade) in great honor.

THE WOLF AND THE LAMB

Agnus, -i, m – lamb
Compulsus, -a, -um – driven, urged
Confectus, -a, -um – overcome
Infero, inferred, intuli, illatum – I bring forward
Causam infero – I seek a pretext
Male dico, -ere, dixi, dictum (with dat.) – I abuse, I slender
Corripio, -ere, corripui, correptum, I seize, I seize hold of
Iurgium, -ii, n – quarrel
Turbulentus, -a, -um – stirred up, muddy
Queror, queri, questus sum – I complain
Decurro, -ere, decvurri, decursum – flow down
Iniustus, -a, -um – unjust, unfair
Lacero, -are, -avi, -atum – I tear to pieces, I tear apart
Fictus, -a, -um – pretended, false
Innocens, -entis – innocent
Opprimo, -ere, oppressi, oppressum – I overpower, I overwhelm, I strike down.

The Wolf and the Lamb

Olim lupus et agnus, siti compulsi, ad rivum eundem venerant, cuius in ripis, ille superiore in loco, hic in loco longe inferiore, stabant. Mox lupis, magna fame confectus, iurgii causam intulit, quia hunc agnum tenerum sine mora esse constituerat.

“Cur,” inquit, “hanc aquam quam ego bibere cupio, mihi turbulentam fecisti?” Cui agnus perterritus respondit, “Quomodo, O lupe, ego facere id quod quereris possum? Nam aqua a te ad me decurrit.”


Tam sine mora ille agnum miserum, quem iam corripuerat, iniusta morte laceravit. Haec propter illos scripta est hominess fabula, qui fictis causis innocents opprimunt.

[A translation]

Once upon a time, a wolf and a lamb, driven by thirst came to the same stream, in which they stood, one on the lower bank and the other on the higher plain. Soon, the wolf overcome by great hunger sought a pretext for quarrel, because he has decided without delay to eat this tender lamb. “Why,” he asked, “were you (stirring, making muddy)
messing up the water which I want to drink.” To whom the terrified lamb responded, “How, O wolf can I do that which you complain? For the water is flowing down from you to me.” At first the wolf kept quiet, then, because he did not want to be overcome by so foolish and tender animal exclaimed, “Six months ago, you abused me.” The wolf responded, “I was not born then.” But the wolf angry, said, “surely your father abused me.” Without any further waste of time he seized the poor lamb and without any justification tore it to pieces. This story is written on account of those men who with flimsy (insubstantial) reasons strike down and overwhelm the innocent.

FAMOUS GREEK AND ROMAN POETS

OVID [43 BC – AD 17]

Roman poet, whose narrative skill and unmatched linguistic and metrical virtuosity have made him the most popular of the Roman poets. Ovid was born Publius Ovidius Naso into a family of the equestrian, or middle class in Sulmo (now Sulmona), near Rome. Educated to practice law, he became highly proficient in the art of rhetoric, but his genius was essentially poetical, and he devoted most of his time and energy to writing verse. After inheriting his father's property, Ovid went to Athens to complete his education. He later traveled in Asia and Sicily with his friend Aemilius Macer, a Roman poet. By the age of 30, Ovid had been married three times and divorced twice, and he may have carried on an intimate relationship with the woman whom he celebrated in his poetry as Corinna.

His private life was that of an exuberant, wealthy, and somewhat licentious man of letters. At Rome, where he lived until he was 50 years of age, he was often courted by the distinguished, and fashionable society of the city, including Emperor Augustus. In AD 8, Ovid was banished to Tomi, in the Roman province of Dacia (now Constanța, Romania). According to Ovid, one reason for his banishment was the publication of Ars Amatoria, a poem on the art of love.

In his middle period Ovid wrote the Metamorphoses, in 15 books. The work takes as its unifying theme the transformations recorded in
mythology and legend from the creation of the world to the time of Roman emperor Julius Caesar, whose change into a celestial star marks the last of the series. Deservedly famous as a handbook of Greek mythology, it is composed in a witty and, at times, almost burlesque, or exaggerated spirit. The other work of the middle period is the Fasti, a poetic calendar describing the various Roman festivals and the legends connected with each. Of the projected 12 books, 1 for each month of the year, only the first 6 are extant.

Ovid was one of the most influential of Roman poets during the Middle Ages (5th century to 15th century) and the Renaissance (14th century to 17th century). Italian poets Ludovico Ariosto and Giovanni Boccaccio and English poets Geoffrey Chaucer and John Gower found in his mythological narratives a rich source of romantic tales. English poets Edmund Spenser, William Shakespeare, John Milton, and many others were also influenced by him.

**VIRGIL [70 – 19 BC]**

Virgil

**Virgil:** Virgil – the Roman poet and author of the masterpiece the *Aeneid*, the most influential work of literature produced in ancient Rome. Virgil was thoroughly educated in Greek and Roman literature, rhetoric, and philosophy in the *Aeneid*, a mythological epic in 12 books Virgil described the seven-year wanderings of the hero Aeneas from the fall of Troy (see Trojan War) to his military Victory in Italy.

Virgil was the Roman poet and author of the masterpiece the *Aeneid*, the most influential work of literature produced in ancient Rome. Virgil
was born Publius Vergilius Maro in Andes, a village in northern Italy near Mantua. His father was a farmer. Virgil was thoroughly educated in Greek and Roman literature, rhetoric, and philosophy in the Italian cities of Cremona, Milan, Rome, and Naples. In 37 BC Virgil completed his first major work, the ten Eclogues, or Bucolics, pastoral poems modeled on the Idylls of Alexandrian poet Theocritus. The Georgics, or Art of Husbandry, a poem in four books on the life of the farmer, was written from 36 to 29 BC.

THE AENEID

Virgil devoted his last ten years to the composition of the Aeneid, a mythological epic in 12 books describing the seven-year wanderings of the hero Aeneas from the fall of Troy (see Trojan War) to his military victory in Italy. Aeneas escaped from Troy carrying his aged father on his shoulders and leading his young son Ascanius by the hand. He assembled a fleet and sailed the eastern Mediterranean Sea with the surviving Trojans to Thrace, Crete, Epirus, and Sicily before being shipwrecked on the coast of Africa. Here Dido, queen of Carthage, fell in love with Aeneas and was driven to suicide on his subsequent departure.

After landing at the mouth of the Tiber River in Italy, Aeneas killed Turnus, king of the Rutulians, in a war for the hand of Lavinia, princess of Latium. According to Virgil, the Romans were directly descended from Ascanius, the founder of Alba Longa, mother city of Rome.

HOMER: “THE ILIAD”, “THE ODYSSEY”

Homer is the name traditionally assigned to the author of the Iliad and the Odyssey, the two major epics of Greek antiquity. Nothing is known of Homer as an individual, and in fact it is a matter of controversy whether a single person can be said to have written both the Iliad and the Odyssey. Linguistic and historical evidence, however, suggests that the poems were composed in the Greek settlements on the west coast of Asia Minor sometime in the 8th century BC.

The Iliad: Both epics deal with legendary events that were believed to have occurred many centuries before their composition. The Iliad is set in the final year of the Trojan War, fought between the Greeks and the inhabitants of the city of Troy. The legendary conflict forms the background for the central plot of the story: the wrath of the Greek hero Achilles. Insulted by his commander in chief, Agamemnon, the young warrior Achilles withdraws from the war, leaving his fellow Greeks to suffer terrible defeats at the hands of the Trojans. Achilles rejects the
Greeks’ attempts at reconciliation but finally relents to some extent, allowing his companion Patroclus to lead his troops in his place. Patroclus is slain, and Achilles, filled with fury and remorse, turns his wrath against the Trojans, whose leader, Hector (son of King Priam), he kills in single combat. The poem closes as Achilles surrenders the corpse of Hector to Priam for burial, recognizing a certain kinship with the Trojan king as they both face the tragedies of mortality and bereavement.

The Odyssey: The Odyssey describes the return of the Greek hero Odysseus from the Trojan War. The opening scenes depict the disorder that has arisen in Odysseus's household during his long absence: A band of suitors is living off of his wealth as they woo his wife, Penelope. The epic then tells of Odysseus's ten years of traveling, during which he has to face such dangers as the man-eating giant Polyphemus and such subtler threats as the goddess Calypso, who offers him immortality if he will abandon his quest for home. The second half of the poem begins with Odysseus's arrival at his home island of Ithaca. Here, exercising infinite patience and self-control, Odysseus tests the loyalty of his servants; plots and carries out a bloody revenge on Penelope's suitors; and is reunited with his son, his wife, and his aged father.

Influence: In a direct way Homer was the parent of all succeeding Greek literature. Drama, historiography, and even philosophy all show the mark of the issues, comic and tragic, raised in the epics and of the techniques Homer used to approach them. For the later epic poets of Western literature, Homer was the greatest influence (even when, as in the case of Italian poet Dante Alighieri, the poets did not know the works of Homer directly). But for his most successful followers, curiously enough, his work was as much a critical and comic target as a model. The Aeneid of Roman poet Virgil, for instance, is a refutation of the individualistic value system of the Homeric epic; and the most Homeric scenes in Paradise Lost, by English poet John Milton—those stanzas describing the battle in heaven—are essentially comic. As for novels, such as Don Quixote (Part I, 1605; Part II, 1615), by Spanish writer Miguel de Cervantes, or Ulysses (1922), by Irish writer James Joyce, the more Homeric they are, the more they lean toward parody and mock epic.

THE TROJAN WAR

There were many versions of the legendary accounts of the Trojan War. One has to do with ‘beauty competition’: Who was the most beautiful of the gods? Another: The award of the “Golden Apple” to Aphrodite
(Venus) by Paris is one of the versions said to have brought about the Trojan War. Both versions have to do with “The Judgment of Paris”.

Yet another simpler version runs like this: Agamemnon and Menelaus were two Greek princes. Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy, came to visit Greece. Here he met Helen, wife of Menelaus, said to be the most beautiful woman in the world. Paris took Helena back with him to Troy, and this so infuriated the Greeks that they collected an enormous force of men and ships and started in pursuit. They besieged Troy for nine years and finally entered the city by means of a trick.

Some personalities that played important roles in this famous war or are in some ways connected with the war are also presented here. They include, Paris, Achilles, Hector, Odysseus, Agamemon

(1) Paris: The Judgment of Paris

“The Judgment of Paris” – There were many versions of the legendary accounts of the Trojan War. One has to do with ‘beauty competition’: Who was the most beautiful of the gods? Another: The award of the “Golden Apple” to Aphrodite (Venus) by Paris is one of the versions said to have brought about the Trojan War.
Persons in the ‘Paris’ story: Hera, (or Juno, the Latin counterpart of the Greek queen of the gods,) Athena, (identified with the Roman goddess Minerva), and Aphrodite (also known as Venus in Roman mythology, originally a goddess of gardens and fields but later identified with the Greek goddess of love and beauty),

Paris, also called Alexander, in Greek mythology was the son of Priam and Hecuba, king and queen of Troy. A prophecy had warned that Paris would someday be the ruin of Troy and, therefore, Priam exposed him on Mount Ida, where he was found and brought up by shepherds. He was tending his sheep when an argument arose among the goddesses Hera, (Juno), Athena (Minerva), and Aphrodite (Venus), as to who was the most beautiful. The three goddesses asked him to be the judge. Each tried to bribe him, Hera promising to make him ruler of Europe and Asia, Athena to help him lead Troy to victory against the Greeks, and Aphrodite to give him the most beautiful woman in the world, Helen, the wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta. Paris favored Aphrodite, even though at the time he was in love with the nymph Oenone. His decision made Hera and Athena bitter enemies of his country. This and the abduction of Helen, in Menelaus's absence, brought about the Trojan War.

In the tenth year of the siege of Troy that followed, Paris and Menelaus met in hand-to-hand combat. Menelaus would easily have been the victor except for Aphrodite, who enveloped Paris in a cloud, and carried him back to Troy. Before the fall of the city, Paris was mortally wounded by the archer Philoctetes. Paris then went to Oenone, who had a magic drug that could cure him. She refused him, but when he died, Oenone killed herself out of misery.

Paris: The Judgment of Paris [Resumé in Latin]

Persons in the story are: Thetis, (wife of Peleus, mother of Achilles), Peleus, (father of Achilles), Discord (goddess of strife), Juno, Venus (goddess of love), Paris (a handsome Trojan prince), Helen (the wife of Meneleus).

igitur Paridem, pastorem clarum, ad cenam vocaverunt. Ita Paris, ut fama est, iudex esse poterat.


[Story continues in English]

But Paris looked at Juno and Minerva and was silent. Finally Venus comes to the shepherd and says: “I indeed, as I think, am the most beautiful. Therefore, Paris give the apple to me: for I will give you a wife, and your wife shall be the most beautiful of women.” Venus’ gift was pleasing to Paris and he gave the prize to the goddess. Afterwards Venus was able to help Paris, who sailed away from Greece with Helena. Helena was very beautiful and Paris loved her greatly.

(2) Odysseus, [Ulysses]

Odysseus, in Greek legend was a Greek hero, ruler of the island of Ithaca and one of the leaders of the Greek army during the Trojan War. Homer’s Odyssey recounts Odysseus’s adventures and ultimate return home ten years after the fall of Troy. Initially, Odysseus was mentioned as the son of Laertes, king of Ithaca, although in later tradition Sisyphus, king of Corinth, was considered his real father, his mother having later married Laertes.

At first Odysseus refused to accompany the Greeks to Troy, feigning madness by sowing his fields with salt, but the Greeks placed his son Telemachus in front of the plow, and Odysseus was compelled to admit his ruse and join the invading army. Throughout the Iliad of Homer, he is portrayed as a brave, sagacious, cunning warrior, and he is awarded the famous armor of the Greek warrior Achilles on the latter’s death. Odysseus was responsible for bringing the Greek heroes Neoptolemus and Philoctetes to Troy for the final stage of the conflict. In the Odyssey it is said that he proposed the stratagem (trick, plot, scheme) of the Trojan Horse, the means by which Troy was conquered.

In the works of later classical writers, particularly those of the Greek poet Pindar, the Greek playwright Euripides, and the Roman poet Virgil, Odysseus is characterized as a cowardly and scheming politician. In Latin his name is rendered as Ulysses.
(3) Agamemnon

Agamemnon was the king of Mycenae, and commander of the Greek forces in the Trojan War. He was the son of Atreus and suffered the curse laid on his house. When the Greeks had assembled in Aulis for their voyage to Troy, they were held back by adverse winds. To calm the winds, Agamemnon sacrificed his daughter Iphigenia to the goddess Artemis. His quarrel with Achilles over the captive princess Briseis and the consequences of that quarrel form much of the plot of Homer's Iliad. After a ten-year siege, Troy fell and Agamemnon returned in triumph to Mycenae. With him came the Trojan princess Cassandra, who had been awarded to him by the victorious Greek army. Clytemnestra, Agamemnon's wife, greeted him with protestations of love, but while he was in his bath she killed him with the assistance of her lover, Aegisthus. His death was avenged seven years later by his son Orestes. The story of Agamemnon's death is told in the first play of the trilogy Oresteia, by ancient Greek poet Aeschylus.

(4) Achilles

Achilles, in Greek mythology was the greatest of the Greek warriors in the Trojan War. He was the son of the sea nymph Thetis and Peleus, king of the Myrmidons of Thessaly. When he was a child his mother dipped him into the River Styx to make him immortal. The waters made him invulnerable except for the heel by which his mother held him. Achilles fought many battles during the 10-year siege of Troy. When the Mycenaean king Agamemnon seized the captive maiden Briseis from him, Achilles withdrew the Myrmidons from battle and sulked in his tent. The Trojans, emboldened by his absence, attacked the Greeks and drove them into headlong retreat. Then Patroclus, Achilles' friend and companion, begged Achilles to lend him his armor and let him lead the Myrmidons into battle. Achilles consented. When Patroclus was killed by the Trojan prince Hector, the grief-stricken Achilles returned to battle, slew Hector, and dragged his body in triumph behind his chariot. He later permitted Priam, king of Troy, to ransom Hector's body. Achilles fought his last battle with Memnon, king of the Ethiopians. After killing the king, Achilles led the Greeks to the walls of Troy. There he was mortally wounded in the heel by Paris. The quarrel between Achilles and Agamemnon, the subsequent battle, and the ransoming of Hector's body are recounted in the Iliad.

Re- Achilles heel – The heel of Achilles: [When he was a child his mother dipped him into the River Styx to make him immortal. The waters made him invulnerable except for the heel by which his
mother held him.] hence the English figurative speech, meaning “small, but weak or vulnerable point, e.g. in somebody’s character.”

(5) Hector

Hector, in Greek mythology was the eldest son of King Priam and Queen Hecuba of Troy, and husband of Andromache. In Homer's Iliad, Hector is the greatest of the Trojan warriors. As commander of the Trojan forces he is instrumental in holding off the Greek army for nine years and finally succeeds in forcing the Greeks back to their ships. During the battle, however, Hector kills Patroclus, the bosom friend of Achilles, the greatest of the Greek warriors. Achilles has withdrawn from the fighting because of a quarrel with King Agamemnon, the leader of the Greek forces, but in order to avenge the death of Patroclus, he returns to the battlefield.

Grief-stricken and frenzied, Achilles pursues Hector three times around the walls of Troy, kills him, and then ties his body to his chariot and drags it around the walls and back to Patroclus's funeral pyre. Learning that the Greeks are withholding burial rites from his son, Priam makes his way behind Greek battle lines with the aid of the god Hermes and begs Achilles to relinquish Hector's corpse. Moved by the sorrow of the aged king, Achilles agrees to yield the corpse and declares a truce to permit the Trojans to honor Hector with a suitable burial. A description of the funeral honors paid to Hector concludes the Iliad. In contrast to the fierce and alienated Achilles, Hector is depicted as a devoted family man and chivalrous warrior.

THE TROJAN WAR

In Greek legend, this was the famous war waged by the Greeks against the city of Troy. The tradition is believed to reflect a real war between the Greeks of the late Mycenaean period and the inhabitants of the Troad, or Troas, in Anatolia, part of present-day Turkey. Modern archaeological excavations have shown that Troy was destroyed by fire in the early 12th century BC, the traditional date of the war, and that the war may actually have resulted from the desire either to plunder the wealthy city or to put an end to Troy's commercial control of the Dardanelles.

Legendary accounts of the war traced its origin to a golden apple, inscribed “for the fairest” and thrown by Eris, goddess of discord, among the heavenly guests at the wedding of Peleus, the ruler of Myrmidons, and Thetis, one of the Nereids. The award of the apple to Aphrodite, goddess of love, by Paris, son of King Priam of Troy, secured for Paris the
favor of the goddess and the love of the beautiful Helen of Troy, wife of
Menelaus, the king of Sparta. Helen went with Paris to Troy, and an
expedition to avenge the injury to Menelaus was placed under the
command of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae. Agamemnon's force
included many famous Greek heroes, the most noted of whom were
Achilles, Patroclus, the two Ajaxes, Teucer, Nestor, Odysseus, and
Diomedes.

After the Trojans refused to restore Helen to Menelaus, the Greek
warriors assembled at the Bay of Aulis and proceeded to Troy in 1000
ships. The siege lasted ten years, the first nine of which were uneventful.
In the tenth year, Achilles withdrew from battle because of his anger with
Agamemnon; Achilles' action furnished Homer with the theme
of the Iliad. To avenge the death of his friend Patroclus, Achilles
returned to battle and killed Hector, the principal Trojan warrior.
Subsequent events, described in later epic poems, included Achilles'
victories over Penthesilea, queen of the Amazons, and Memnon, king of
Ethiopia, and the death of Achilles at the hands of Paris.

The city of Troy was captured at last by treachery. A force of
Greek warriors gained entrance to the city by hiding in the
interior of a large wooden horse. Subsequently the Greeks sacked
and burned the city. Only a few Trojans escaped, the most famous being
Aeneas, who led the other survivors to what is present-day Italy; this
story is told by Virgil in the Aeneid.

The return of the Greek warriors to Greece inspired epic poems, the most
celebrated being that of Odysseus, whose 10-year wanderings and arrival
in Ithaca are told in Homer’s Odyssey.

[A short Latin account of the Trojan War]

Olim Graeci bellum magnum contra Troianos gerebant. Graeci igitur
dolo Troiam intrare constituerunt. Graeci servos aedificare equum
ligneum iubent. Mox Troiani equum magnum oppidi prope portas
vident, et servos Troianos equum in oppidum trahere iubent. Eheu!
Graecorum turba magna in equo erat. (Cur Graeci in equo manebant?
Dolus erat, sed Troiani dolum malum non intellegebant). Tandem Graeci
ex equo excedunt et oppidi portas aperiunt. Ceteri Graeci tunc intrant et
Troiam statim incendunt. Sic Graeci multos Troinos occidunt.

English Translation

Once upon a time, the Greeks waged a great (ferocious) war against the
Trojans. They (Greeks) decided to enter Troy by trick. The Greeks
ordered their slaves to build a wooden horse. As soon as the Trojans saw
the wooden horse near the gates of the city, they ordered their slaves to
drag the horse into the town. Alas! Behold a great crowd of Greeks was
inside the horse. Why did the Greeks remain inside the horse? It was
trick. But the Trojans did not understand the wicked trick. At last the
Greeks descended from the horse and opened the gates of the town. The
rest of the Greeks then entered and immediately set Troy on fire as well
killed many Trojans.

**HISTORY OF ROME**

The accounts of the regal period have come down overlaid with such a
mass of myth and legend that few can be verified; Roman historians of
later times, lacking authentic records, relied on fabrications of a patriotic
nature. Following this period, when a republic was established, Rome
became a world power and emerged as an empire with extensive
boundaries.

**The Legendary Period of the Kings (753-510 BC)**

Rome was said to have been founded by Latin colonists from Alba Longa,
a nearby city in ancient Latium. The legendary date of the founding was
753 BC; it was ascribed to Romulus and Remus, the twin sons of Rhea
Silvia, a vestal virgin and the daughter of Numitor, king of Alba Longa.
Later legend carried the ancestry of the Romans back to the Trojans and
their leader Aeneas, whose son Ascanius, or Iulus, was the founder and
the first king of Alba Longa. The tales concerning Romulus's rule, notably
the rape of the Sabine women and the war with the Sabines under the
leader Titus Tatius, point to an early infiltration of Sabine peoples or to a
union of Latin and Sabine elements at the beginning. The three tribes,
the Ramnes, Tities, and Luceres, that appear in the legend of Romulus as
the parts of the new commonwealth suggest that Rome arose from the
amalgamation of three stocks, thought to be Latin, Sabine, and Etruscan.

The seven kings of the regal period and the dates traditionally assigned to
their reigns are as follows: Romulus, from 753 to 715 BC; Numa
Pompilius, from 715 to 676 or 672 BC, to whom was attributed the
introduction of many religious customs; Tullus Hostilius, from 673 to 641
BC, a warlike king, who destroyed Alba Longa and fought against the
Sabines; Ancus Marcius, from 641 to 616 BC, said to have built the port of
Ostia and to have captured many Latin towns, transferring their
inhabitants to Rome; Lucius Tarquinius Priscus, from 616 to 578 BC,
celebrated both for his military exploits against neighboring peoples and
for his construction of public buildings at Rome; Servius Tullius, from
578 to 534 BC, famed for his new constitution and for the enlargement of
the boundaries of the city; and Lucius Tarquinius Superbus, from 534 to
510 BC, the seventh and last king, whose tyrannical rule was overthrown
when his son ravished Lucretia, the wife of a kinsman. Tarquinius was
banished, and attempts by Etruscan or Latin cities to reinstate him on
the throne at Rome were unavailing.

Although the names, dates, and events of the regal period are considered
as belonging to the realm of fiction and myth rather than to that of
factual history, certain facts seem well attested: the existence of an early
rule by kings; the growth of the city and its struggles with neighboring
peoples; the conquest of Rome by Etruria and the establishment of a
dynasty of Etruscan princes, symbolized by the rule of the Tarquins; the
overthrow of this alien control; and the abolition of the kingship. The
existence of certain social and political conditions may also be accepted,
such as the division of the inhabitants, exclusive of slaves, from the
beginning into two orders: the patricians, who alone possessed political
rights and constituted the populus, or people; and their dependents,
known as clients or the plebs, who had originally no political existence.

The rex, or king, chosen by the Senate (senatus), or Council of Elders,
from the ranks of the patricians, held office for life, called out the
populus for war, and led the army in person; he was preceded by officers,
known as lictors, who bore the fasces, the symbols of power and
punishment, and was the supreme judge in all civil and criminal suits.
The senatus gave its advice only when the king chose to consult it, but the
elders (patres) possessed great moral authority, inasmuch as their tenure
was for life. Originally only patricians could bear arms in defense of the
state. At some stage in the regal period an important military reform
occurred, usually designated as the Servian reform of the constitution,
because it was ascribed to Servius Tullius. As the plebs could by this time
acquire property and wealth, it was decided that all property holders,
both patrician and plebeian, must serve in the army, and each took a
rank in accordance with his wealth. This arrangement, although initially
military, paved the way for the great political struggle between the
patricians and the plebs in the early centuries of the Republic.

TARQUIN THE PROUD

The last king of the Romans, Tarquin, was so hated by his subjects that
they banished him from Rome. He appealed for help to Porsenna of
Clusium, a town in Etruria. Their forces marched southwards and
encamped on the Janiculum intending to cross the Tiber by the Sublician
Bridge. Horatius Cocles and two of his friends volunteered to stand on the far side of the bridge and keep the enemy at bay whilst the Romans cut down the bridge on their side of the river. This was done. Horatius’ two friends returned in safety before the wooden structure fell, but not so Horatius. Praying to the gods for help, he plunged, fully armed, into the swift current. He was carried across to safety, and acclaimed a national hero and richly rewarded for his bravery.

[Summary of the story in Latin] - TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS

Students should read out the story slowly in Latin and try the literal translation into English

Word List
In animo habeo: I have in mind; I determine
Ita: (adv) thus, in this way.
Laudo, -are: I praise
Erro, -are: I wander, I roam about.
Etruria, -ae, f, Etruria
Animus, -I, m: a mind
Superbus, -a, -um, proud
Ultimus, -a, -um: last


Horatius tamen, qui Romanus validus erat, Tarquiniun intrare Romam prohibuit et oppidum ita servavit. Romani igitur virum clarum magnopere laudaverunt atque multum auri et agrorum Horatio dare constituerunt.

THE ROMAN REPUBLIC: SOME OFFICES OF STATE

Consuls: After the expulsion of the kings in 510 B.C., the people elected annually two men to rule the state. At first these consuls possessed all the powers of the kings except those connected with religion. One consul could always prevent his colleague from carrying out any particular act by using the right of ‘veto’ (veto, I forbid). Thus the State was insured
against any rash undertaking. After 146 B.C the consuls gradually ceased to lead the Roman armies in person but, as the Roman Empire increased in extent, many additional duties fell to them. In the transactions relating to foreign affairs the Senate was assembled by the consuls, who presided over it and passed on its orders. They continued always to be the chief magistrates and in times of crisis took command of the whole city of Rome by a special decree of the Senate.

Praetors: The praetorship was separated from the consulship in 366 B.C. The work of the praetors was chiefly legal: they regulated trials and expounded the law. At first there was only one praetor, but in 241 B.C. a second was appointed to protect the interest of foreigners in Rome. He was known as the praetor peregrinus (peregrinus, foreign): his colleague was styled the praetor urbanus and looked after the affairs of Roman citizens. The number of these officials was gradually increased. By 81 B.C. there were eight.

Aediles: The aediles superintended the city police, guarded the streets and public buildings, provided against outbreaks of fire, inspected the markets and distributed corn to the poor. They also organized the public games, and to obtain grants of money for these they had to apply to the quaestors.

Quaestors: In early times (509 B.C.) these men were the consuls’ secretaries. After 447 B.C. they became magistrates, and their principal duties were to prepare evidence in public prosecutions and to manage the State accounts. The original number of two was confined to finance. The original number of two was gradually increased, until by 81 B.C. there were twenty.

These four offices comprised the more important positions to which an ambitious Roman aspired.

GAUL

Gaul (Latin Gallia), was the ancient Roman designation of that portion of Western Europe which is substantially identical with France, although extending beyond the boundaries of the modern country. It was bounded on the west by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by the Pyrenees Mountains and the Mediterranean Sea, on the north by the English Channel, and on the east by the Alps and the Rhine River. The inhabitants, called the Gauls (Latin Galli), were among the most
prominent of Celtic peoples and played an important role in the ethnic
distribution of the early peoples of Europe. The first historic mention of
Gaul occurs about 600 BC, when Phocaean Greeks founded the colony of
Massalia (Marseille) on the southern coast. Greeks of a later period called
the country Galatia, which in Roman times became Gallia. Julius
Caesar, in his Commentaries, recounted his conquest of Gaul, that part
called Gallia Transalpina. He spoke of the country as being divided
into three parts ("in partes tres divisa est"), inhabited by the Belgae,
the Aquitani, and the Galli (or, “as they are known in their own
tongue,” Celtae). The Belgae dwelt in the north, with the Sequana
(Seine) and Matrona (Marne) rivers as their southern boundary; the
Aquitani lived in the south, between the Garumna (Garonne) River and
the Pyrenees; and the Celtae inhabited the region between the Belgae and
the Aquitani. According to Caesar, the three nations differed in language,
customs, and laws. His account is fundamentally correct, although he did
not mention all the tribes of Gaul; nor did he recognize that the Aquitani
were ethnically distinct from the Belgae and Celtae, between whom many
affinities existed, notably that of language. The Belgae and the Celtae
were tall, of fair complexion, gregarious, and given to fighting in large
numbers. The Aquitani, in contrast, were dark, reserved, and fond of
fighting in small bands.

In time, the Romans crossed the Alps, pushing their conquests as
far as the Pyrenees. The territory between the Alps and the Pyrenees
became a Roman province known as Gallia Provincia, and the city of
Narbo (Narbonne) on the southern coast was made the capital. The wars
of Julius Caesar, which concluded in 50 BC with the subjugation of all
Gallia Transalpina, resulted in the formation of a new province,
Aquitania. In 27 BC the Roman emperor Augustus divided Gaul
into four administrative regions: Gallia Narbonensis, extending
from the Alps to the Cévennes; Aquitania, bounded on the north by the
Liger (Loire) River, and incorporating 14 more tribes than the original
Aquitania established by Caesar. In the 5th century AD, with the
downfall of the Western Roman Empire, Gaul was overrun by successive
incursions of the Goths, Franks, and Huns, who gradually destroyed the
Roman power. The last Roman outposts in Gaul capitulated to the
Frankish king Clovis I in 486, and the foundations of a new empire were
laid in the Merovingian dynasty, inaugurating the beginning of medieval
Europe.
Caesar, Gaius Julius

Julius Caesar: Roman general, statesman, historian, and brilliant military strategist, Caesar conquered all of the ancient western European territories of Gaul by 51 BC.

Caesar, Gaius Julius (100–44 BC), Roman general and statesman, who laid the foundations of the Roman imperial system was born in Rome on July 12 or 13, 100 BC. Caesar belonged to the prestigious Julian clan; yet from early childhood he knew controversy. His uncle by marriage was Gaius Marius, leader of the Populares. This party supported agrarian reform and was opposed by the reactionary
Optimates, a senatorial faction. Marius was seven times consul (chief magistrate), and the last year he held office, just before his death in 86 BC, he exacted a terrifying toll on the Optimates. At the same time he saw to it that young Caesar was appointed flamen dialis, one of an archaic priesthood with no power. This identified him with his uncle's extremist politics, and his marriage in 84 BC to Cornelia, the daughter of Marius's associate, Cinna, further confirmed him as a radical. When Lucius Cornelius Sulla, Marius's enemy and leader of the Optimates, was made dictator in 82 BC, he issued a list of enemies to be executed. Although Caesar was not harmed, he was ordered by Sulla to divorce Cornelia. Refusing that order, he found it prudent to leave Rome. He did not return to the city until 78 BC, after Sulla's resignation. Caesar was now 22 years old. Unable to gain office, he left Rome again and went to Rhodes, where he studied rhetoric; he returned to Rome in 73 BC, a very persuasive speaker. The year before, while still absent, he had been elected to the pontificate, an important college of Roman priests.

Triumvirate

In 71 BC Pompey the Great, who had earned his epithet in service under Sulla, returned to Rome, having defeated the rebellious Populares general Sertorius in Spain. At the same time Marcus Licinius Crassus, a rich patrician, suppressed in Italy the slave revolt led by Spartacus. Pompey and Crassus both ran for the consulship—an office held by two men—in 70 BC. Pompey, who by this time had changed sides, was technically ineligible, but with Caesar's help he won the office. Crassus became the other consul. In 69 BC, Caesar was elected quaestor and in 65 BC curule aedile, gaining great popularity for his lavish gladiatorial games. To pay for these, he borrowed money from Crassus. This united the two men, who also found common cause with Pompey. When Caesar returned to Rome in 60 BC after a year as governor of Spain, he joined forces with Crassus and Pompey in a three-way alliance known as the First Triumvirate; to cement their relationship further, Caesar gave his daughter Julia to Pompey in marriage. Thus backed, Caesar was elected consul for 59 BC despite Optimate hostility, and the year after (58 BC) he was appointed governor of Roman Gaul.

GALIC WARS

At that time Celtic Gaul, to the north, was still independent, but the Aedui, a tribe of Roman allies, appealed to Caesar for help against another Gallic people, the Helvetii, during the first year of his governorship. Caesar marched into Celtic Gaul with six legions, defeated
the Helvetii, and forced them to return to their home area. Next, he crushed Germanic forces under Ariovistus (flourished about 71-58 BC). By 57 BC, following the defeat of the Nervii, Rome was in control of northern Gaul. (A last revolt of the Gauls, led by Vercingetorix, was suppressed in 52 BC.)

**Power Play**

While Caesar was in Gaul, his agents attempted to dominate politics in Rome. This, however, threatened Pompey’s position, and it became necessary for the triumvirs to arrange a meeting at Luca in 56 BC, which brought about a temporary reconciliation. It was decided that Caesar would continue in Gaul for another five years, while Pompey and Crassus would both be consuls for 55 BC; after that, each would have proconsular control of provinces. Caesar then went off to raid Britain and put down a revolt in Gaul. Crassus, ever eager for military glory, went to his post in Syria. Provoking a war with the Parthian Empire, he was defeated and killed at Carrhae in 53 BC. This removed the last buffer between Caesar and Pompey; their family ties had been broken by the death of Julia in 54 BC.

**Civil War**

In 52 BC, with Crassus out of the way, Pompey was made sole consul. Combined with his other powers, this gave him a formidable position. Jealous of his younger rival, he determined to break Caesar’s power, an objective that could not be achieved without first depriving him of his command in Gaul. In order to protect himself, Caesar suggested that he and Pompey both lay down their commands simultaneously, but this was rejected; guided by Pompey, the Senate summarily called upon Caesar to resign his command and disband his army, or else be considered a public enemy. The tribunes, who were Caesar’s agents, vetoed this motion, but they were driven out of the Senate chamber. The Senate then entrusted Pompey with providing for the safety of the state. His forces far outnumbered Caesar’s, but they were scattered throughout the provinces, and his troops in Italy were not prepared for war. Early in 49 BC Caesar crossed the Rubicon, a small stream separating his province from Italy, and moved swiftly southward. Pompey fled to Brundisium and from there to Greece. In three months Caesar was master of all Italy; his forces then took Spain and the key port of Massalía (now Marseille).

In Rome Caesar became dictator until elected consul for 48 BC. At the beginning of that year he landed in Greece and smashed Pompey’s forces at Pharsalus. Pompey escaped to Egypt, where he was assassinated.
When Caesar arrived there, he installed Cleopatra, daughter of the late King Ptolemy XII, as queen. In 47 BC he pacified Asia Minor and returned to Rome to become dictator again. By the following year all Optimate forces had been defeated and the Mediterranean world pacified.

**Dictatorship and Assassination** The basic prop for Caesar’s continuation in power was the dictatorship for life. According to the traditional Republican constitution, this office was only to be held for six months during a dire emergency. That rule, however, had been broken before. Sulla had ruled as dictator for several years, and Caesar now followed suit. In addition, he was made consul for ten years in 45 BC and received the sanctity of tribunes, making it illegal to harm him. Caesar also obtained honors to increase his prestige: He wore the robe, crown, and scepter of a triumphant general and used the title *imperator*. Furthermore, as Pontifex Maximus, he was head of the state religion. Above all, however, he was in total command of the armies, and this remained the backbone of his power.

As a ruler Caesar instituted various reforms. In the provinces he eliminated the highly corrupt tax system, sponsored colonies of veterans, and extended Roman citizenship. At home he reconstituted the courts and increased the number of senators. His reform of the calendar gave Rome a rational means of recording time. A number of senatorial families, however, felt that Caesar threatened their position, and his honors and powers made them fear that he would become a *rex* (king), a title they, as Republicans, hated. Accordingly, in 44 BC, an assassination plot was hatched by a group of senators, including Gaius Cassius and Marcus Junius Brutus. On March 15 of that year, when Caesar entered the Senate house, the group killed him.

**Personal Life**
After Caesar’s first wife, Cornelia, died in 68 BC, he married Pompeia, a granddaughter of Sulla. When the mysteries of the Bona Dea, over which she presided, were violated, she was maligned by gossips, and Caesar then divorced her, telling the Senate that Caesar’s wife must be above suspicion. His next marriage (59 BC) was to Calpurnia and was politically motivated. Since Caesar had no male heirs, he stipulated in his will that his grandnephew, Octavius, become his successor. It was Octavius who became Rome’s first emperor under the name of Augustus.

**Achievements**
Scholarly opinion of Caesar’s accomplishments is divided. Some regard him as an unscrupulous tyrant, with an insatiable lust for power, and
blame him for the demise of the Roman Republic. Others, admitting that he could be ruthless, insist that the Republic had already been destroyed. They maintain that to save the Roman world from chaos a new type of government had to be created. In fact, Caesar’s reforms did stabilize the Mediterranean world. Among ancient military commanders, he may be second only to Alexander the Great. Caesar was a gifted writer, with a clear and simple style. His Commentaries, in which he described Gaul and his Gallic campaigns, is a major source of information about the early Celtic and Germanic tribes.

**ROMULUS & REMUS**

Romulus and Remus fed by the Wolf.

**Romulus and Remus:** Romulus and Remus fed by the Wolf.

**Romulus,** in Roman mythology, was said to be the founder and first king of Rome. He and his twin brother, Remus, were the sons of Mars, god of war, and of Rhea Silvia, also called Ilia, one of the vestal virgins. Rhea Silvia was the daughter of Numitor, king of Alba Longa, who had been deposed by his younger brother Amulius. Amulius had made Rhea Silvia a priestess so that she would have no children to make claims against his throne. After the birth of her two boys, to remove any threat against himself, he had them thrown in a basket into the Tiber River. The twins were not drowned, however. They were rescued and nursed by a she-wolf on the slope of the Palatine Hill and were later discovered by the shepherd Faustulus and reared by his wife, Acca Larentia. When they
grew to manhood, the brothers deposed Amulius and placed their grandfather Numitor on the throne.

The brothers then decided to build a city. After quarreling over the spot, they finally chose the Palatine Hill. Romulus built a wall, over which Remus, to show its inadequacy, scornfully leaped; Remus was thereupon killed by Romulus or one of his companions, and Romulus became sole ruler of the city. He provided an asylum on the Capitoline Hill for runaway slaves and homicides and procured wives for them by seizing the Sabine women at a festival to which he had invited the Sabines. After a series of wars between Romulus and the Sabines, they were finally reconciled, with Romulus as king. According to legend, Romulus was carried up to the heavens by his father, and was later worshiped as the god Quirinus.¹

---

¹ Romulus, Remus and the Wolf
The seven kings of Rome, 753 B.C to 510 B.C.

Asylum, -I, n a sanctuary
Latium, -ii, n, Latium, a division of Italy.
Romulus and Remus: Romulus and Remus fed by the Wolf.
Aventinus, -I, m, the Aventine hill.
Ianiculum, -I, n, the Janiculum, -I, n, the Janiculum
Alba Longa, -ae, -ae, f, Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome
Ianus, -I, m, Janus, an early god of the Romans
Regno, -are, I am king, I reign
Latinus, -a, -um – Latin
Albanus, -a, -um, Alban
Iustus, -a, -um, correct, just
Finitimus, -a, -um, neighbouring
Vicinus, -a, -um – neighbouring
Cattivus, -a, -um, captive
Eos – them
Adduco, -ere, I lead, I bring to.
Claudeo, -ere – to close


THE ROMAN REPUBLIC : Conquest of Italy (510-264 BC)

On the overthrow of Tarquinius Superbus a republic was established. In place of the king, two chief executives were chosen annually by the whole body of citizens. These were known as praetors, or leaders, but later received the title of consuls. The participation of a colleague in the exercise of supreme power and the limitation of the tenure to one year
prevented the chief magistrate from becoming autocratic. The character of the Senate was altered by the enrollment of plebeian members, known as *conscripti*, and hence the official designation of the senators thereafter was *patres conscripti* (conscript fathers). As yet, only patricians were eligible for the magistracies, and the discontent of the plebs led to a violent struggle between the two orders and the gradual removal of the social and political disabilities under which the plebs had labored.

Ancient City of Rome, showing many domes and Churches. For over 2000 years Rome has been an urban center and the city’s architecture reflects the many historical changes.

In 494 BC a secession of plebeian soldiers led to the institution of the *tribuni plebis*, who were elected annually as protectors of the plebs; they had the power to veto the acts of patrician magistrates, and thus served as the leaders of the plebs in the struggles with the patricians. The appointment of the decemvirate, a commission of ten men, in 451 BC resulted in the drawing up of a famous code of laws. In 445 BC, under the Canuleian law, marriages between patricians and members of the plebs
were declared legally valid. By the Licinian-Sextian laws, passed in 367 BC, it was provided that one of the two consuls should thenceforth be plebeian. The other magistracies were gradually opened to the plebs: in 356 BC the dictatorship, an extraordinary magistracy, the incumbent of which was appointed in times of great danger; in 350 BC, the censorship; in 337 BC, the praetorship; and in 300 BC, the pontifical and augural colleges.

These political changes gave rise to a new aristocracy, composed of patrician and wealthy plebeian families, and admission to the Senate became almost the hereditary privilege of these families. The Senate, which had originally possessed little administrative power, became a powerful governing body, dealing with matters of war and peace, foreign alliances, the founding of colonies, and the handling of the state finances. The rise of this new nobilitas brought to an end the struggles between the two orders, but the position of the poorer plebeian families was not improved, and the marked contrast between the conditions of the rich and the poor led to struggles in the later Republic between the aristocratic party and the popular party.

The external history of Rome during this period was chiefly military. Rome had acquired the leadership of Latium before the close of the regal period. Assisted by their allies, the Romans fought wars against the Etruscans, the Volscians, and the Aequians. The military policy of Rome became more aggressive in the 60 years between 449 and 390 BC. The defeat of the Romans at Allia and the capture and burning of Rome by the Gauls under the leadership of the chieftain Brennus in 390 BC were great disasters, but their effect was temporary. The capture of the Etruscan city of Veii in 396 BC by the soldier and statesman Marcus Furius Camillus spelled the beginning of the end for Etruscan independence. Other Etruscan cities hastened to make peace, and by the middle of the 4th century BC all southern Etruria was kept in check by Roman garrisons and denationalized by an influx of Roman colonists.

Victories over the Volscians, the Latins, and the Hernicans gave the Romans control of central Italy and brought them into conflict with the Samnites of southern Italy, who were defeated in a series of three wars, extending from 343 to 290 BC. A revolt of the Latins and Volscians was put down, and in 338 BC the Latin League, a long-established confederation of the cities of Latium, was dissolved. A powerful coalition was at this time formed against Rome, consisting of Etruscans, Umbrians, and Gauls in the north, and of Lucanians, Bruttians, and Samnites in the south; this coalition endangered the power of Rome, but the northern confederacy was defeated in 283 BC and the southern states
soon after. The Greek colony of Tarentum (now Taranto), incurring the hostility of Rome, invited Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, to cross over from Greece and aid the Greek cities of southern Italy against Rome. His campaigns in Italy and on the island of Sicily from 280 to 276 BC were unsuccessful and he returned to Greece. During the next ten years the Romans completed their subjugation of southern Italy and thus gained control of the entire peninsula as far north as the Arno and Rubicon.
PART FOUR
ORAL LATIN EXERCISES

Introduction

Serious students of Latin, especially seminarians, aspirants, priests and religious (men and women) should have a smattering knowledge of most common Latin prayers we meet regularly in our daily prayers and readings at Holy Mass, the Breviary, and Canon Law. Not only that we should know how to read ‘with meaning’, pronounce the words, we should also try to translate the passages into correct Latin. To make sure that knowledge of these prayers and readings does not end in ‘memorization’ exercise, teachers of Latin should insist on correct ‘parsing’ of individual words and parts of speech. In fact literary translations should be preferred to idiomatic (fluent or natural) rendering of the readings.

In Oral Latin Examinations teachers and examiners should use familiar Latin Biblical passages, from Old and New Testaments, familiar Latin prayers to test the students. Fluent reading of the passages, ‘seen or un-seen’ (prepared or first-time occurrence) with the correct application of punctuation marks will be a clear manifestation of good grasp of Latin language in the modern times.

Paper 2 of our Latin Certificate Examinations should no more be taken entirely from Caesar Gallic War, which has little relevance to modern Latin. Wide readings of selected biblical passages and Latin Prayers and Readings can help our students appreciate the relevance of Latin in studies today.

We begin with some familiar Latin Prayers, selected biblical readings and passages from Caeser's Expeditions in Gaul. Can the students ‘parse’ and literarily translate the sentences and phrases?

The Rosary
D/ In nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti
P/ Amen
D/ Veni Sancte Spiritus ....
P/ Reple corda tuorum fidelium et tui amoris in eis ignem accende;
D/ Emitte Spiritum tuum et creabuntur
P/ Et renovabis faciem terrae
D&P/ Oremus: Deus qui corda fidelium, Sancti Spiritus illustratione docuisti, da nobis in eodem spiritu recta sapere,
et de eius semper consolatione gaudere, per Christum Dominum nostrum.

**Credo in Deum**, Patrem Omnipotentem, creatorem caeli et terrae. Et in Jesum Christum, Filium eius unicum, Dominum nostrum, qui conceptis est de spiritu sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine, passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus et sepultus, descendit ad inferos, tertia die resurrexit a mortuis, ascendit ad caelos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris Omnipotentem, inde venturus est judicare vivos et mortuos. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum, Sanctam ecclesiam Catholicam, sanctorum communionem, remissionem peccatorum, carnis resurrectionem vitam aeternam, Amen.


D/ **Gloria Patri**, et Filio et Spiritui Sancto  
P/ **Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculorum, Amen.**

[Fatima Prayer]: O, Jesus, remitte nobis peccata nostra, custodi nos ab igne inferi, attahe omnes animas ad coelum; principi, illas maxime egentes misericordiae tuae

**Ave Maria**, gratia plena, Dominus tecum, benedicta tu in mulieribus, et benedictus fructus ventris tui, Jesus.....**Sancta Maria, Mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatoribus nunc et in hora mortis nostrae, Amen**

**Salve Regina**, Mater misericordiae, vita dulcedo et spes nostra salve. Ad te clamamus exules filii Hevae, ad te suspiramus gementes et flentes, in hac lacrimarum valle. Eia ergo! advocate nostra, illos tuos misericordes oculos ad nos converte; Et Jesum! Benedictum fructum ventris tui; Nobis, post hoc exilium; Ostende. O clemens, O pia! O dulcis, Virgo Maria.

**Mysteria Gaudii (Joyful mysteries)**  
(1) Annunciatio Domini  
(2) Maria Sanctam Elizabeth visitat
(3) Jesus Bethleem nascitur
(4) Jesus in templo Domino prae susceptible
(5) Jesus in templo inventus

Mysteria Luminis (Luminous mysteries)
(1) Baptisma apud Jordanem
(2) Auto-revelatio apud Cananensae matrimonium
(3) Regni Dei proclamatio coniuncta cum invitamento ad conversionem
(4) Transfiguratio
(5) Eucharistiae institutio

Mysteria Doloris (Sorrowful mysteries)
(1) Jesus agonia in horto Oliarum
(2) Jesus flagellis caeditur
(3) Jesus spinis coronatur
(4) Jesus crucem in Calvariae Locum baiulat
(5) Jesus in cruce moritur

Mysteria Gloriarum (Glorious mysteries)
(1) Jesus a mortuis resurgit
(2) Jesus in caelum ascendit
(3) Descension spiritus Sancti de Pentecostes
(4) Mariae in caelum assumpta
(5) Glorificatio Mariae caeli et terrae Regina.

Prayers before meals: D/ Benedicite. Benedic, Domine, nos et haec tua dona quae de tua largitate sumus sumpturi. Per Christum Dominum nostrum


Angelus Domini
D/ Angelus Domini nuntiavit Mariae
P/ Et concepit de Spiritu Sancto
D/P/ Ave Maria, gratia plena......
D/ Ecce ancilla Domini..
P/Fiat mihi secundum verbum tuum
D/P/ Ave Maria........
D/ Et Verbum caro factum est
P/ Et habitavit in nobis
D/P/ Ave Maria.....
D/ Ora pro nobis sancta Dei Genetrix
P/ Ut digni efficiamur promissionibus Christi.

Oremus: Gratiam tuam, quaesumus Domine, mentibus nostris infunde; ut qui Angelo nuntiante, Christi Filii tui Incarnationem cognovimus; per passionem ejus et crucem, ad resurrectionis gloriam perducamur; Per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum, Amen.
D/ Dominum auxilium maneat semper nobiscum, Amen.

Regina caeli (Easter Time)
V/ Regina caeli laetare, Alleluia.
R/ Quia quem meruist portare, Alleluia.
V/ Resurrexit, sicut dixit. Alleluia
R/ Ora pro nobis, Deum. Alleluia.
V/ Gaudate et laetare, Virgo maria, Alleluia
R/ Quia surrexit Dominus vere, Alleluia

Oremus
Deus, qui per resurrectionem Filii tui, Domini nostri Iesu Christi, mundum laetificare dignatus es: praesta, quaesumus; ut, per eius Genitricem Virginem Mariam, perpetuae capiamus gaudia vitae. Per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum – Amen.

Readings from Latin Bible

GENESIS 1: 1 - 31
1. in principio creavit Deus caelum et terram
2. terra autem erat inanis et vacua et tenebrae super faciem abyssi et spiritus Dei ferebatur super aquas
3. dixitque Deus fiat lux et facta est lux
4. et vidit Deus lucem quod esset bona et divisit lucem ac tenebras
5. appellavitque lucem diem et tenebras noctem factumque est vespere et mane dies unus
6. dixit quoque Deus fiat firmamentum in medio aquarum et dividat aquas ab aquis
et fecit Deus firmamentum divisitque aquas quae erant sub firmamento ab his quae erant super firmamentum et factum est ita

t vocavitque Deus firmamentum caelum et factum est vespere et mane dies secundus

dixit vero Deus conregentur aquae quae sub caelo sunt in locum unum et appareat arida factumque est ita

et vocavit Deus aridam terram conregationesque aquarum appellavit maria et vidit Deus quod esset bonum

et ait germinet terra herbam virentem et facientem semen et lignum pomiferum faciens fructum iuxta genus suum cuius semen in semet ipso sit super terram et factum est ita

et protulit terra herbam virentem et adherentem semen iuxta genus suum lignumque faciens fructum et habens unumquodque sementem secundum speciem suam et vidit Deus quod esset bonum

factumque est vespere et mane dies tertius

dixit autem Deusiant luminaria in firmamento caeli ut dividant diem ac noctem et sint in signa et tempora et dies et annos

ut lucent in firmamento caeli et inluminent terram et factum est ita

fecitque Deus duo magna luminaria luminare maius ut praeesset diei et luminare minus ut praeesset nocti et stellas

et posuit eas in firmamento caeli ut lucerent super terram

et praeessent diei ac nocti et dividerent lucem ac tenebras et vidit Deus quod esset bonum

et factum est vespere et mane dies quartus

dixit etiam Deus producant aquae reptile animae viventis et volatile super terram sub firmamento caeli

creavitque Deus cete grandia et omnem animam viventem atque motabilem quam produxerant aquae in species suas et omne volatile secundum genus suum et vidit Deus quod esset bonum
22. benedixitque eis dicens crescite et multiplicamini et replete aquas maris avesque multiplicentur super terram
23. et factum est vespere et mane dies quintus
24. dixit quoque Deus producat terra animam viventem in genere suo iumenta et reptilia et bestias terrae secundum species suas factumque est ita
25. et fecit Deus bestias terrae iuxta species suas et iumenta et omne reptile terrae in genere suo et vidit Deus quod esset bonum
26. et ait faciamus hominem ad imaginem et similitudinem nostram et praesit piscibus maris et volatilibus caeli et bestiis universaeque terrae omnique reptili quod movetur in terra
27. et creavit Deus hominem ad imaginem suam ad imaginem Dei creavit illum masculum et feminam creavit eos
28. benedixitque illis Deus et ait crescite et multiplicamini et replete terram et subicite eam et dominamini piscibus maris et volatilibus caeli et universis animantibus quae moventur super terram
29. dixitque Deus ecce dedi vobis omnem herbam adferentem semen super terram et universa ligna quae habent in semet ipsis sementem generis sui ut sint vobis in escam
30. et cunctis animantibus terrae omnique volucri caeli et universis quae moventur in terra et in quibus est anima vivens ut habeant ad vescendum et factum est ita
31. viditque Deus cuncta quae fecit et erant valde bona et factum est vespere et mane dies sextus

GENESIS 2: 1 - 25

1. igitur perfecti sunt caeli et terra et omnis ornatus eorum
2. conplevitque Deus die septimo opus suum quod fecerat et requievit die septimo ab universo opere quod patrarat
3. et benedixit diei septimo et sanctificavit illum quia in ipso cessaverat ab omni opere suo quod creavit Deus ut faceret
4. istae generationes caeli et terrae quando creatae sunt in die quo fecit Dominus Deus caelum et terram
5. et omne virgultum agri antequam oreretur in terra omnemque herbam regionis priusquam germinaret non enim pluerat Dominus Deus super terram et homo non erat qui operaretur terram
6. sed fons ascendebat e terra inrigans universam superficiem terrae
7. formavit igitur Dominus Deus hominem de limo terrae et inspiravit in faciem eius spiraculum vitae et factus est homo in animam viventem
8. plantaverat autem Dominus Deus paradisum voluptatis a principio in quo posuit hominem quem formaverat
9. produxitque Dominus Deus de humo omne lignum pulchrum visu et ad vescendum suave lignum etiam vitae in medio paradisi lignumque scientiae boni et mali
10. et fluvius egrediebatur de loco voluptatis ad inrigandum paradisum qui inde dividitur in quattuor capita
11. nomen uni Phison ipse est qui circuit omnem terram Evilat ubi nascitur aurum
12. et aurum terrae illius optimum est ibique invenitur bdellium et lapis onychinus
13. et nomen fluvio secundo Geon ipse est qui circuit omnem terram Aethiopiae
14. nomen vero fluminis tertii Tigris ipse vadit contra Assyrios fluvius autem quartus ipse est Eufrates
15. tuit ergo Dominus Deus hominem et posuit eum in paradiso voluptatis ut operaretur et custodiret illum
16. praecipitque ei dicens ex omni ligno paradisi comede
17. de ligno autem scientiae boni et mali ne comedas in quocumque enim die comederis ex eo morte morieris
18. dixit quoque Dominus Deus non est bonum esse hominem solum faciamus ei adiutorium similem sui
19. formatis igitur Dominus Deus de humo cunctis animantibus terrae et universis volatilibus caeli adduxit ea ad Adam ut videret quid vocaret ea omne enim quod vocavit Adam animae viventis ipsum est nomen eius

20. appellavitque Adam nominibus suis cuncta animantia et universa volatilia caeli et omnes bestias terrae Adam vero non inveniebatur adiutor similis eius

21. inmisit ergo Dominus Deus soporem in Adam cumque obdormisset tulit unam de costis eius et replevit carnem pro ea

22. et aedificavit Dominus Deus costam quam tulerat de Adam in mulierem et adduxit eam ad Adam

23. dixitque Adam hoc nunc os ex ossibus meis et caro de carne mea haec vocabitur virago quoniam de viro sumpta est

24. quam ob rem relinquet homo patrem suum et matrem et adherebit uxori suae et erunt duo in carne una

25. erant autem uterque nudi Adam scilicet et uxor eius et non erubescebant

Psalmus 50 (51)

humulitatum, Deus, non despicies. Benigne fac, Domine, in bona voluntate tua Sion, ut aedificentur muri Ierusalem. Tunc acceptabis sacrificium iustitiae, oblationes et holocausta; tunc imponent super alatare tuum vitulos.

1 SAMUEL 2: 1-36

1. exultavit cor meum in Domino exaltatum est cornu meum in Domino dilatatum est os meum super inimicos meos quia laetata sum in salutari tuo
2. non est sanctus ut est Dominus neque enim est alius extra te et non est fortis sicut Deus noster
3. nolite multiplicare loqui sublimia gloriantes recedant vetera de ore vestro quoniam Deus scientiarum Dominus est et ipsi praeparantur cogitationes
4. arcus fortium superatus est et infirmi accincti sunt robore
5. saturati prius pro pane se locaverunt et famelici saturati sunt donec sterilis peperit plurimos et quae multos habebat filios infirmata est
6. Dominus mortificat et vivificat deducit ad infernum et reducit
7. Dominus pauperem facit et ditat humiliat et sublevat
8. suscitat de pulvere egenum et de stercore elevat pauperem ut sedeat cum principibus et solium gloriae teneat Domini enim sunt cardines terrae et posuit super eos orbem
9. pedes sanctorum suorum servabit et impii in tenebris conticescent quia non in fortitudine roborabitur vir
10. Dominum formidabunt adversarii eius super ipsos in caelis tonabit Dominus iudicabit fines terrae et dabit imperium regi suo et sublimabit cornu christi sui
11. et abiit Helcana Ramatha in domum suam puer autem erat minister in conspectu Domini ante faciem Heli sacerdotis
12. porro filii Heli filii Belial nescientes Dominum
13. neque officium sacerdotum ad populum sed quicumque immolasset victimam veniebat puer sacerdotis dum coquerentur carnes et habebat fuscinulam tridentem in manu sua

14. et mittebat eam in lebetem vel in caldarium aut in ollam sive in caccabum et omne quod levabat fuscinula tollebat sacerdos sibi sic faciebant universo Israheli venientium in Silo

15. etiam antequam adolerent adipem veniebat puer sacerdotis et dicebat immolanti da mihi carnem ut coquam sacerdoti non enim accipiam a te carnem coctam sed crudam

16. dicebatque illi immolans incendatur primum iuxta morem hodie adeps et tolle tibi quantumcumque desiderat anima tua qui respondens aiebat ei nequaquam nunc enim dabis alioquin tollam vi

17. erat ergo peccatum pueros grande nimis coram Domino quia detrahebant homines sacrificio Domini

18. Samuhel autem ministrabat ante faciem Domini puer accinctus ephod lineo

19. et tunicam parvam faciebat ei mater sua quam adferebat statutis diebus ascendens cum viro suo ut immolaret hostiam sollemnem

20. et benedixit Heli Helcanae et uxori eius dixitque reddat Dominus tibi semen de muliere hac pro fenore quod commodasti Domino et abierunt in locum suum

21. visitavit ergo Dominus Annam et concepit et peperit tres filios et duas filias et magnificatus est puer Samuhel apud Dominum

22. Heli autem erat senex valde et audivit omnia quae faciebant filii sui universo Israheli et quomodo dormiebant cum mulieribus quae observabant ad ostium tabernaculi

23. et dixit eis quare facitis res huiuscemodi quas ego audio res pessimas ab omni populo

24. nolite filii mi non enim est bona fama quam ego audio ut transgredi facatis populum Domini

25. si peccaverit vir in virum placari ei potest Deus si autem in Domino peccaverit vir quis orabit pro eo et non audierunt vocem patris sui quia voluit Dominus occidere eos
26. puer autem Samuhel proficiebat atque crescebat et placebat tam
Deo quam hominibus
27. venit autem vir Dei ad Heli et ait ad eum haec dicit Dominus
numquid non aperte revelatus sum domui patris tui cum essent
in Aegypto in domo Pharaonis
28. et elegi eum ex omnibus tribubus Israhel mihi in sacerdotem ut
ascenderet altare meum et adoleret mihi incensum et portaret
ephod coram me et dedi domui patris tui omnia de sacrificiis
filiorum Israhel
29. quare calce abicitis victimam meam et munera mea quae
praecepi ut offerrentur in templo et magis honorasti filios tuos
quam me ut comederetis primitias omnis sacrificii Israhel populi
mei
30. propterea ait Dominus Deus Israhel loquens locutus sum ut
domus tua et domus patris tui ministraret in conspectu meo
usque in sempiternum nunc autem dicit Dominus absit hoc a me
sed quicumque glorificaverit me glorificabo eum qui autem
contemnunt me erunt ignobiles
31. ecce dies veniunt et praecidam brachium tuum et brachium
domus patris tui ut non sit senex in domo tua
32. et videbis aemulum tuum in templo in universis prosperis
Israhel et non erit senex in domo tua omnibus diebus
33. verumtamen non auferam penitus virum ex te ab altari meo sed
ut deficiant oculi tui et tabescat anima tua et pars magna domus
tuae morietur cum ad virilem aetatem venerit
34. hoc autem erit tibi signum quod venturum est duobus filiis tuis
Ofni et Finees in die uno morientur ambo
35. et suscitabo mihi sacerdotem fidelem qui iuxta cor meum et
animam meam faciat et aedificabo ei domum fidelem et
ambulabit coram christo meo cunctis diebus
36. futurum est autem ut quicumque remanserit in domo tua veniat
ut oretur pro eo et offerat nummum argenteum et tortam panis
dicatque dimitte me obsecro ad unam partem sacerdotalem ut
comedam buccellam panis
ORDO MISSAE (CUM POPULO)

Ritus Initiales
V/ In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti.
R/ Amen
V/ Gratia Domini nostri Iesu Christi et caritas Dei, et communicatio Sancti Spiritus sit cum omnibus vobis.
R/ Et cum spiritu tuo.
V/ Fratres, agnoscamus peccata nostra, ut apti simus as sacra mysteria celebranda.
R/ Confiteor Deo omnipotenti et vobis, fratres, quia peccavi nimis cogitatione, verbo opera et omissione; mea culpa, mea culpa, mea maxima culpa. Ideo precor beatam Mariam semper Virginem, omnes Angelos et Sanctorum, et vos, fraters, orare pro me ad Dominum Deum nostrum.
V/ Misereatur nostri omnipotens Deus et, dimissis peccatis nostris, perducat nos ad vitam aeternam.
R/ Amen.

V/ Kyrie, eleison
R/ Kyrie, eleison
V/ Christe, eleison
R/ Christe, eleison
V/ Kyrie, eleison.
R/ Kyrie, eleison.

Gloria
Gloria in excelsis Deo, et in terra pax hominibus bonae voluntatis. Laudamus te, bendecimus te, adoramus te, glorificamus te, gratias agimus tibi propter magnam gloriam tuam, Domine Deus, Rex caelestis, Deus Pater omnipotens. Domine Fili unigenite, Iesu Christe, Domine Deus, Agnus Dei, Filius Patris, qui tollis peccata mundi ; miserere nobis; qui tollis peccata mundi, suscipe deprecationem nostrum. Qui sedes ad dextram Patris, Misereore nobis. Quoniam tu solus Sanctus, to solus Dominus, tu solus Altissimus, Iesu Christe, cum Sancto Spiritus: in Gloria Dei Patris. Amen

Praeparatio donorum
V/ Benedicteus es, Domine universi, quia de tua largitate accepimus panem, quem tibi offerimus, fructum terrae et operis manuum hominum: ex quo nobis fiet panis vitae.
R/ Benedictus Deus in saecula
V/ Per huius aquae et vini mysterium eius efficiamur divinitatis consortes, qui humanitatis nostrae fieri dignatus est participes.
V/ Benedictus es, Domine, Deus universi, quia de tua largitate accepimus vinum, quod tibi offerimus, fructum vitis et operas nanuum hominum, ex quo nobis fier potus spiritualis
R/ Benedictus Deus in saecula.
V/ In spiritu humilitatis et animo contrito suscipiamur a te, Domine; et sicut fiat sacrificium nostrum in conspectus tuo hodie, ut placeat tibi, Domine Deus.
V/ Lava me, Domine, ab iniquitate mea, et peccato meo munda me.
V/ Orate, fraters: ut meum ac vestrum sacrificium acceptable fiat apud Deum Patrem omnipotentem.
R/ Suscipiat Dominus sacrificium de manibus tuis, ad laudem et gloriam nominis sui, ad utilitatem quoque nostrum totiusque Ecclesiae suae sanctae.

Prex Eucharistica
V/ Dominus vobiscum
R/ Et cum spiritu tuo
V/ Sursum corda
R/ Habemus ad Dominum
V/ Gratias agamus Domino Deo nostro.
R/ Dignum et iustum est.

Praefatio (Prex Eucharistica 2)
V/ Vere dignum et iustum est, aequum et salutare, nos tibi, sancte Pater, semper et ubique gratias agere per filium dilectionis tuae Iesum Christum, Verbum tuum per quod cuncta fecisti: quem misisti nobis Salvatorem et Redemptorem, incarnatum de Spiritu Sancto et ex Virgine natum. Qui voluntatem tuam adimplens et populum tibi sanctum acquirens extendit manus cum pateritur, ut mortem solveret et resurrectionem manifestaret. Et ideo cum Angelis et omnibus Sanctis gloriam tuam praedicamus, una voce dicentes:

V/ Vere Sanctus es, Domine, fons omnis sanctitatis/ Haec ergo dona, quaesmus, Spiritus tui rore sanctificat ut nobis, corpus et sanguinis siant Domini nostri Iesu Christi/.Qui cum passioni voluntarie traderetur/acceptit panem et gratias agens/fregit/deditque discipulis
suis/dicens/ accipite et mandicate ex hoc omnes: hoc est enim corpus meum/quod pro vobis tradetur.

Simili modo, postquam cenatum est, accipiens et calicem, iterum gratias agens dedit discipulis suis dicens: accipite et bibite ex eo omnes, hic est enim calix sanguinis mei, novi et aeterni testamenti, qui pro vobis et pro multis effundetur in remissionem peccatorum. Hoc facite in meam commemorationem.

V/ Mysterium fidei:

R/ Mortem tuam annunciamus, Domine, et tuam resurrectionem confitemur, donec venias.

Memores igitur mortis et resurrectionis eius tibi, Domine, panem vitae, et calicem salutis offerimus, gratias agentes quia nos dignos habuisti astare coram te et tibi ministrare. Et supplices deprecamur ut Corporis et Sanguinis Christi participes a Spiritu Sancto congregamur in unum.

Recordare, Domine. Ecclesiae tuae toto orbe diffusae, ut eam in caritate perficias; una cum Papa nostro ________, et Episcopo nostro_______, et universo clero.

Memento etiam fratrum nostrorum, qui in spe resurrectionis domierunt, omniumque in tua miseratione defunctorum, et eo in lumen vultus tui admitte. Omnia nostrum, quasumus, Miserere ut beata Dei Genitrice Virgine Maria, beatis Apostolis et omnibus Sanctorum qui tibi a saeculo placuerunt. Aeternae vitae mereamur esse consortes, et te laudemus et glorificemus; per Filium tuum Iesum Christum.

Per ipsum, et cum ipso, et in ipso, est tibi Deo Patri omnipotenti, in unitate Spiritum Sancti, omnis honor et Gloria per omnia saecula saeculorum, Amen.

Ritus communionis

Pater Noster
V/ Praeceptis salutaribus moniti, et divina institutione formati, audemus dicere: R/ Pater noster......

V/ Libera nos, quasumus, Domine, ab omnibus malis, da propitius pacem in diebus nostris, ut, ope misericordia tuae adiuti, et a peccato simus semper liberi et ab omni perturbatione securi: exspectantes beatam sper at adventum Salvatoris nostri Iesu Christi.

R/ Quia tuum est regnum et potestas, et Gloria in saecula.

Ritus pacis
V/ Domine, Iesu Christe, qui dixisti Apostolis tuis: pacem relinquo vobis, pacem meam do vobis: ne respicias peccata nostra, sed fidem ecclesiae tuae; eamque secundum voluntatem tuam pacificare et coadunare digneris. Qui vivis et regnas in saecula saeculorum. Amen
R/ Amen
V/ Pax Domini sit semper vobiscum.
R/ Et cum spiritu tuo
V/ Offere vobis pacem!

Fractio panis
V/ Haec commixtio Corporis et Sanguinis Domini nostri Iesu Christi fiat accipietibus nobis in vitam aeternam.
V/R/ Agnus Dei qui tollis pecca mundi....
V/ Ecce Agnus Dei, ecce qui tollit peccata mundi; beati qui ad cenam Agni vocati sunt.
R/ Domine, non sum dignus ut intres sub tecum meum: sed tantum dic verbum, et sanabitur anima meam.
V/ Corpus Christi custodiat me in vitam aeternam. Sanguis Christi custodiat me in vitam aeternam.
V/ Corpus Christ.
R/Amen

Ritus conclusionis
V/ Dominus vobiscum
R/ Et cum spiritu tuo
V/ Benedicat vos omnipotens Deus, Pater, et Filius et Spiritus Sanctus
R/ Amen.
V/ Ite missa est
R/ Deo gratias

READINGS
Evangelium secundum Lucam [Lc. 9: 1-24]
Omnia quae fiebant, et haesitabat eo quod diceretur a quibusdam: "Ioannes surrexit a mortuis". A quibusdam vero: "Elias apparuit", ab aliis autem: "Propheta unus de antiquis surrexit."

Et ait Herodes: "Ioannem ego decollavit; qui autem est iste de quo audio ego talia?" Et querebat videre eum. Et reverse Apostoli narraverunt illi quaecumque fecerunt. Et assumptis illis secessit seorsum ad civitatem quae vocatur Bethsaida. Quod cum cognovisset turbae, secutae sunt illum. Et excipere illos et loquebatur illis de Regno Dei, et eos qui cura indigebant, sanabat. Dies autem coeperat declinare; et accendentes Duodecim dixerunt illi: "Dimitte turbam ut euntes in castella villasque, quae circa sunt, devertant et inveniant escas, quia hic in loco deserto sumus". Ait autem ad illos: "Vos date illis manducare". At illi dixerunt: "Non sunt nobis plus quam quinque panes et duo pisces, nisi forte nos eamus et emamus in omnem hanc turbam escas". Erant enim fere viri quinque milia. Ait autem ad discipulos suos: "Facite illos discumbere per convivia ad quinquagenos". Et ita fecerunt, et discumbere fecerunt omnes. Aceptis autem quinque panibus et duobus piscibus, respexit in caelum et benedixit illis et fregit et dabat disciplulis suis ut ponerent ante turbam.

Et manducaverunt et saturati sunt omnes; et sublatum est quod superfuit illis, fragmentorum cophini duodecim. Et factum est cum solus esset orans, erant cum illo discipuli, et interrogavit illos dicens: Quem me dicunt esse turbae?" At illi responderunt et dixerunt: "Ioannem Baptistam, alli autem Eliam, ali vero Propheta unus de prioribus surrexit". Dixit autem illis: "Vos autem quem me esse dicitis?" Respondens Petrus dixit: "Christum Dei" At ille increpans illos, praecepit ne cui dicerent hoc, dicens: "Oportet Filium hominis multa pati et reprobari a senioribus et principibus sacerdotum et scribibus et occidi et tertia die resurgere". Dicebat autem ad omnes: "Si quis vult post me venire, abneget se ipsum et tollat crucem suam cottidie, et sequatur me. Qui enim voluerit animam suam salvam facere, perdet illam; qui autem perdiderit animam suam propter me, hic salvam faciet illum.

**Evangelium Secundum Marcum: Mc. 6**

Attendite ne iustitiam vestram faciatis coram hominibus ut videamini ab eis; alioquin mercedem non habetis apud Patrem vestrum qui in caelis est. 2 Cum ergo facies eleemosynam, noli tuba canere ante te, sicut hypocrita faciunt in synagogis et in vices ut honorificentur ab hominibus; amen dico vobis : receperunt mercedem suam. 3 Te autem faciente eleemosynam, nesciat eleemosynam, quid faciat dextera tua, 4 ut sit eleemosyna tua in abscondito, et Pater tuus qui videt in abscondito reddet tibi. 5 Et cum orates, non eritis sicut hypocrita, qui amant in
synagogis et in angulis platearum stantes orare ut videantur ab hominibus; amen dico vobis: receperunt mercedem suam. Tu autem cum orabis, intra in cubiculum tuum et clauso ostis tua Patrem tuum qui est in abscondito; et Pater tuus qui videt in abscondito reddet tibi. 7 Orantes autem nolite multum loqui sicut ethnici, putant enim quia in multiloquio suo exaudiantur. Nolite ergo assimilari eis, scit enim Pater vester quibus sit vobis ante quam petatis eum. 9 Sic ergo vos qui es in cælis, sanctificetur Nomen tuum, adveniat Regnum tuum, fiat voluntas tua sicut in caelo et in terra. 11 Panem nostrum supern substantialem da nobis hodie; et dimitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris; et ne inducas nos in tentationem, sed libera nos a Malo. 14 Si enim dimiseritis hominibus ieiunis, dimittet et Pater vester dimittet peccata vestra. 16 Cum autem ieiunatis, nolite fieri sicut hypocritae tristes, demoliuntur facies suas ut parent hominibus ieiunans; amen dico vobis: receperunt mercedem suam. 17 Tu autem cum ieiunas, unge caput tuum et faciem tuam lava, ne videaris hominibus ieiunans sed Patri tuo qui est in abscondito; et Pater tuus qui videt in abscondito reddet tibi. 19 Nolite thesaurizare vobis thesaurus in terra, ubi aerugo et tinea demolitur, et ubi fures effodiunt et furantur; 20 thesaurizate autem vobis thesaurus in caelo, ubi neque aerugo neque tinea demolitur, et ubi fures non effodiunt nec furantur; 21 ubi enim est thesaurus tuus, ibi erit et cor tuum. 22 Lucerna corporis est oculus. Si ergo fuerit oculus tuus simplex, totum corpus tuum lucidum erit; si autem oculus tuus nequam fuerit, totum corpus tuum tenebrosum erit. Si ergo lumen quod in te est tenebrae sunt, tenebrae erunt. Nemo potest duobus dominis servire; aut enim unum odio habebit et alterum diligent, et alterum contemnet; non potestis Deo servire et mammonae. Nolite ergo solliciti esse dicentes: Quid manducabimus?, aut: Quid bibemus?, aut: Quid operiemur? Haec enim omnia gentes in Pater vester caelestis quia his omnibus indigetis, Quaerite autem primum Regnum Dei et iustitiam eius, et haec omnia ante, ne forte
adicientur vobis. \textsuperscript{34} Nolite ergo esse solliciti in crastinum, crastinus enim dies sollicitus erit sibi ipse; sufficit diei militia sua.

**JOHN: 1 - 14**

In principio erat Verbum, et Verbum erat apud Deum, et Deus erat Verbum. 


**Actus Apostolorum: Chapter 2: 1 - 15**

Et cum compleveretur dies Pentecostes erant omnes pariter in eodem loco. \textsuperscript{2} Et factus est repente de caelo sonus tamquam advenientis spiritus vehementis et replevit totam domum ubi erant sedentes: \textsuperscript{3} et apparuerunt illis dispersitae linguae tamquam ignis, seditque supra singulos eorum, \textsuperscript{4} et repleti sunt omnes Spiritu Sancto, et coeperunt loqui aliis linguis prout Spiritus dabat eloqui illis. \textsuperscript{5} Erant autem in Ierusalem habitantes iudaei, viri religiosi ex omni natione quæ sub caelo est; \textsuperscript{6} facta autem hac voce, convenit multitudo et confusa est, quoniam audiebat unusquisque lingua sua illos loquentes. \textsuperscript{7} Stupebant autem et mirabantur dicentes: «Nonne ecce omnes isti qui loquuntur Galilaei sunt? \textsuperscript{8} Et quomodo nos audimus unusquisque propria lingua nostra in qua nati sumus? \textsuperscript{9} Parthi et Medi et Elamitae, et qui habitant Mesopotamiam, ludeam quoque et Cappadociam Pontum et Asiam, \textsuperscript{10} Phrygiam quoque et Pamphyliam, Aegyptum et partes Libyae quæ est circa Cyrenem, et advenae Romani, \textsuperscript{11} ludei quoque et proselyti, Crete et Arabes, audimus loquentes eos nostris linguæ magnalia Dei». \textsuperscript{12} Stupebant autem omnes et haesitabant, ad invicem dicentes: «Quidnam hoc vult esse?» \textsuperscript{13} Alii autem irridentes dicebant: «Musto pleni sunt isti». \textsuperscript{14} Stans autem Petrus cum Undecim levavit vocem suam et locutus est eis: «Viri ludaei et qui habitatis Ierusalem universi, hoc vobis notum sit et auribus percipite verba mea. \textsuperscript{15}
CAESAR GALLIC WAR

ANCIENT BRITAIN – A Recap:

Ancient Britain is a term used to denote the island of Great Britain before the Germanic invasions. The name Britain comes from the Latin name Britannia, which the ancient Romans applied to the island, and the name Britain is still widely used to mean Great Britain or even all of the British Isles.

Pre-Roman Britain: Before the Roman conquest of Britain in the 1st century AD, the island was not significant in the history of Western civilization. The first detailed description of it and its inhabitants was written by the Greek navigator Pytheas, who explored the coastal region about 325 BC. Little trace, however, has been left of the language or civilization of the original inhabitants, other than megalithic monuments, such as Stonehenge, which date from the Bronze Age (circa 2000 BC). Between the Bronze Age and about the 6th century BC, Britain was inhabited by Picts and European Celts, who periodically invaded the British Isles until the 1st century BC.

Roman Britain: Julius Caesar invaded Britain in 55 BC and returned the following year to defeat the native forces. The inhabitants, referred to collectively as Britons, maintained political freedom and paid tribute to Rome for almost a century before the Roman emperor Claudius I initiated the systematic conquest of Britain in AD 43. By 47, Roman legions had occupied all the island south of the Humber River and east of the Severn River. The tribes, notably the Silures, inhabitants of what are now the Wales and Yorkshire regions, resisted stubbornly for more than 30 years, a period that was marked by the abortive and bloody rebellion in 61 led by the native queen Boudicca. At this time Britain became an imperial province of Rome, called Britannia, administered by Roman governors. About 79, Roman legions subdued the tribes in Wales and established partial control over those in Yorkshire. Between 79 and 85, Roman forces commanded by Gnaeus Julius Agricola moved through the northern section of the island, completing their conquest to the
Firth of Forth. Agricola also pushed northward into Caledonia (now called Scotland), but the region between the firths of Forth and Clyde remained disputed territory. The Caledonian tribes, the Picts, retained their independence.

During the period of conquest and military campaigns, Britain was a military stronghold of the Roman army, but the people of Britain benefited from Roman technology and cultural influences. The native tribes became familiar with many features of Roman civilization, including its legal and political systems, architecture, and engineering. Numerous towns were established, and these strongholds were linked by a vast network of military highways, many remnants of which survive. Archaeological evidence from the occupation period indicates that the Romans brought their entire culture to Britain. In general, however, only the native nobility, the wealthier classes, and the town residents accepted the Roman language and way of life, while the Britons in outlying regions retained their native culture.

At the end of the 3rd century, the Roman army began to withdraw from Britain to defend other parts of the Roman Empire. In 410, when the Visigoths invaded Rome, the last of the Roman legions were withdrawn from the island. Celtic culture again became predominant, and Roman civilization in Britain rapidly disintegrated. Roman influence virtually disappeared during the Germanic invasions in the 5th and 6th centuries. Thereafter the culture of the Angles and Saxons spread throughout the island. Historians refer to Britain after the Germanic invasions as England, Scotland, and Wales.

The Roman Army – The Roman Soldier:
The Romans fought many wars to become powerful in ancient times. Miles, militis, a, a soldier, is a very familiar word in the Latin vocabulary. The Roman Army – The Roman Soldier: The Roman army right from ancient times had been respected for its courage, endurance and discipline. The Roman army played a very important role in the establishment and maintenance of the greatest empire known in ancient times. The main unit of the army
was the **Legion**, at full strength numbering 6000 soldiers. Each legion was commanded by a **legatus**, the equivalent perhaps of a brigadier in the army of today, and six officers known as **tribunes** of the soldiers (**tribuni militum**). The mainstay of the legion, however, was the **centurions** (the sergeants and sergeant-majors of more modern days). They controlled the ordinary soldiers and enforced discipline. The legion was divided into ten **cohorts**, each of which was further sub-divided into three **maniples**. A maniple consisted of two **centuries**, and so in a legion there were sixty centuries and sixty centurions. Attached to each legion was a **squadron** of three hundred **cavalry** who fought on the flanks, charging in close order.

---

**Caesar's First Expedition to Britain (i):**
Brevi iam parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, quamquam in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones (*the north*) spectat, hiemes sunt maturae (*early*), tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit,
quod omnibus fere (almost) Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde auxilia missa esse cognoverat.

Propter anni tempus sciebat se bellum ibi gerere non posse; utilissimum autem sibi fore arbitrabatur insulam adire, genus (type) hominum perspicere (to examine), loca portusque cognoscere, quae omnia fere Gallis errant incognita. Nemo enim, nisi mercator (a trader) eo temere (without purpose) adit, mercatoribusque ipsis solum ora maritime, atque eae regions, quae sunt contra Galliam, notae sunt. Itaque vocatos ad se undique mercatores rogavit: ‘Quanta est insula? Quae aut quantae nations (tribes) ibi incolunt (dwell)? Quem usum (experience) belli habent? Qui sunt ad magnarum navium multitudinem idonei portus?’ Quibus omnibus illi nihil certum (definite) respondere potuerunt.

Quae igitur ut prius (first) cognosceret, Gaium Volusenum cum nave longa praemittit, idoneum esse arbittrus. Hunc exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum reverti (to return) iussit. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus (crossing). Huc naves undique ex vicinis regionibus, et classem, quam superiore aestate ad bellum Veneticum (with the Veneti) fecerat, iubet convenire.

Caesar in Britain (ii):
Interim (meanwhile) consilio eius cognito, et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, ab nonnullis insulae civitibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui pollicieantur se obsides daturos atque populo Romano obtemperaturos (obey). Quibus auditis, hortatus ut in ea sententia (frame of mind) manerent, eos domum remittit; et cum eis una (together) Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi2 constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium (judgment) probabat, et quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in his regionibus magna habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat ut civitates quam plurimas adeat, easque hortetur ut populi Romani fidem sequantur (seek the protection), seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet.
Volusenus, perspectis regionibus omnibus quam maxime poterat, (nave enim egredi ac (and) se barbaris committere non audebat) quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur.

Interim, navibus circiter octoginta onerariis (merchant) coactis, quod satis esse existimabat ad transportandas duas legiones, omnes naves longas, quas habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectis distribuit. Erant praeterea septemdecim onerariae naves, quae ab eo loco milia passuum octo vento tenebantur, nec in eundem portum venire poterant: has equitibus distribuit. Publium Sulpcium Refum, legatum, cum praesidio (a garrison), quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

Caesar in Britain (iii):
Hís constitutís rebus, vento ad navigandum (for sailing) idoneo, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in alterum portum progredi, et naves conscendere (embark in), et se sequi iussit.

Ipse hora circiter diei quarta cum primis navibus in Britanniam pervenit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus instructas hostium copias conspexit. Ex his locis superioribus in litus tela iaci posse sensit. Hunc ad egrediendum locum non idoneum arbitratus, as horam nonam in ancoris (at anchor) exspectavit, dum (until) reliquae naves eo convenirent (should assemble).

Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis consilia aperuit. Deinde, et vento et aestu (tide) uno tempore secundo, dato signo, et sublatis ancoris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progrssus est, et aperto ac plano (level) litore naves constituit (anchored).

At (but) barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisérunt equitatum et essedarios (charioteers), quibus plerumque (generally) in proeliis uti solent; deinde, reliquis copiis secuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibere conáti sunt.

Erat ob (on account of) has causas summa difficultras (difficulty) quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alta aqua constitui non poterant; milites autem, magno et gravi onere armorum oppressi (weighed down) simul et ed navibus desilire, et in undis consistere (get a footing) et cum hostibus pugnare decebant. Ilii interim, aut ex litore, aut paulum in aquam
progressi, omnibus membris expeditis, audacter tela in nostros coniciebant (were hurling).

Quibus rebus nostri perterriti non eadem alacritate pugnabant, qua uti solebant in proelis pedestribus (on land).

**Caesar in Britain (iv):**
Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit (noticed), naves longas paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis impelli et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis (with slings), segittis (arrows), tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri iussit; quae res magno usui (of great use) nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura (shape), et remorum motu, et inusitato (unfamiliar) genere tormentorum perterriti, barbari constiterunt, ac paulum modo pedem rettulerunt.

Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus (hesitating), maxime propter altitudinem maris, is qui decimae legionis aquilam (the eagle) ferebat, precatus (having prayed) deos ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret (might turn out), 'Desilite,' inquit, 'milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere (to betray); ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium (duty) praestitero.'

**Caesar in Britain (v):**
Pugnatum est at utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines (ranks) servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequei poterant, magnopere perturbabantur.

Hostes autem, notis omnibus vadis (the shallows), ubi ex litore milites singulares (one by one) ex nave egredientes conspexerat, incitatis equis, adoriebantur, plures paucos circumstistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant.

Quod ubi animadvertit Caesar, scaphas longarum navium militibus compleri iussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat, eis auxilium misit. Nostris, ubi primum in litore constiterant, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt (put); longius autem prosequi non potuerunt, quod equites cursum (their course) tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant.
PART FIVE

GENERAL REVISION & LATIN CERTIFICATE EXAMINATIONS

Exercise 1
(1) Give the accusative singular and nominative plural of silva, turba, saxum, hortus, puella.
(2) What is the gender of: vinum, hortus, urbs, puer, oppidum, via?
(3) Write down in full the names of the six cases.
(4) Decline together in singular and plural hasta magna, bonus puer
(5) Write down the imperative singular and plural of: dormire, portare, eo, venire, fugire, scribere,
(6) How many conjugations and how many declensions are there in Latin?
(7) Give the four principal parts of the following verbs in Latin: praise, make or do, buy, sell, read, sleep, defend, go, sing, besiege, lay waste, climb up, pray, remain, believe.
(8) Give the dative singular, gender and meaning of:- urbis, tempesta, ordo, certamen, homo, militibus, hostes.
(9) Decline in full in the singular only:- omnis, celer
(10) Decline together in the singular: - via brevis, bellum celebre.

Exercise 2
Translate into English
(1) Pueros miseris decem sententias latine reddere nunc iubebo.
(2) Nos relinquam fabulae partem de virgine Andromeda audire cupimus.
(3) Ego et dominus tuus periculum magnum non timebamus.
(4) Cives nostri multos hostes in oppidum venire prohibuerunt.
(5) Pater meus, ut iuvenis erat, magnas vires habebat.
(6) Olim civitas nostra clara fuerat: hodie magna est, quia Romani boni validique sunt.
(7) Milites nostri in oppidum paucis horis contendere potuerunt.
(8) Quis vocem tuam audivit?
(9) Mensae sunt minus utiles quam sedelia.
(10) Vidistine villam meliorem quam meam.

Exercise 3 - Translate into Latin
(1) We have not seen braver soldiers than the Romans.
(2) The city which we are attacking is beautiful.
(3) I have seen the boys whose friends are in the garden.
(4) Let us work hard and not ask for money.
(5) These stories are very old.
(6) The enemy have captured the camp which we abandoned yesterday.
(7) Here is the man whose house was burned by the soldiers.
(8) The citizens with whom we are going to make the journey are already present,
(9) They report that the enemy are fleeing and that our forces are victorious.
(10) I do not believe that these walls can be taken.

**Exercise 4 - Translate into English**
(1) Cives Romani in proelio et fortes et laeti erant.
(2) Quot consules in templo celebre Iovis sunt?
(3) Nos relinquam fabulae partem de Triano Bello audire cupimus.
(4) Ego discipulos omnes sententias latine reddere nunc iussi.
(5) Habesne memoria in tua, fabulam de Horatio?
(6) Nonne Horatius pontem defendit.
(7) “Ego fabulam,” O domine, de porcis parvis magnopere amavi.”
(8) “Cur, Sexte?”
(9) “Quia brevis et facilis erat fabula!”

**Exercises 5 - Translate into Latin**
(1) Drag the horse into the city, boys!
(2) Who will open the big gates of Troy?
(3) There is a crowd of sailors near the town.
(4) My slaves will order the messenger to enter the temple.
(5) He will see many Trojans there.
(6) The Greeks will run from the shores to the town.
(7) The messenger will show the Trojans the horse.
(8) The Trojans were dragging the monster into the town.
(9) Run, Trojans! The Greeks are coming and they will burn the town.
(10) Soon the rest of the Trojans will be sailing to Italy.

**Exercise 6 - Translate into Latin**
(1) But at last Ceres heard news about Proserpina.
(2) Therefore she went down to the Lower World
(3) There she sought Proserpina.
(4) Do not ask me about the Lower World.
(5) Pluto rules all the souls of the dead there.
(6) Do you recall to mind Proserpina’s plan?
(7) She lives on the earth as well as in the Lower World.
(8) Many boys know the story. Will you tell us a new story tomorrow?

Exercise 7 - Parse the underlined words: For example:

(1) Name the ‘Part of Speech’
(2) If a ‘verb’, name the ‘Person’, whether 1st, 2nd, or 3rd person: I, You, He etc. Its conjugation? (1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th)
(3) Number – Singular or plural
(4) Tense – present, future, perfect indicative etc.
(5) Voice – Active or passive voice.
(6) Mood – imperative, subjunctive
(7) The four principal parts of the verb – e.g. amo – amare – amavi - amatum
(9) If Adjective, is it demonstrative or? What is its Number? Degree? (positive, comparative or superlative?)
(10) If Pronoun: Personal or Relative?
(11) An article? Definite or indefinite (a, an, the?) etc.
(12) An Adverb? A Preposition?

(Passage a)

(Passage b)
Exercise 8
Give literal translations of the italicized words, phrases, clauses, and sentences:

*Apud antiquos* fabula de Theseo *celeberrima* erat. Haud *multo post natum Theseum* Athenienses Aegaeum, qui Thesei pater erat, regem suum *creaverant* et eum Athenas revocaverant. Itaque rex *excedere* Troezene, *ubi habitabat*, et pulcherrimam ad urbem Athenas *sine uxore filiique* suo *iter facere constituit*, sed primo Aethram, exorem suam, ad se vocavit et “O mea carissima,” inquit, *“ego tibi nunc filium nostrum trado: tu puerum custodi erudique et ubi primum hoc saxum tollere atque gladium meum Athenas as me portare potuerit”* – Aegeus enim suum gladium ingenti sub saxo collocauerat – “tum demum iuvenem ad me dimitte.”

Exercise 9
Translate into good English


Exercise 10

Caesar’s Second Invasion of Britain (part 1)

In 54 B.C. Caesar collected some 800 ships at Portus Itius (Boulogne) and transported five legions and two thousand cavalry across the Channel. This was his second invasion, the one in the previous year having accomplished little. After an adventurous march inland Caesar defeated the British leader, Cassivellaunus, imposed a tribute and by the third week in September had returned to Gaul. Below are given some of Caesar’s own impression of Britain.

Word list
Incolo, -ere, incolui, _____, I inhabit
Maritimus, -a, -um – Maritime, of the sea
Causa (prep, with gen) – for the sake of
Belgae, -arum, m, pl, - The Belgae, a people of northern Gaul
Multudo, -inis, f, - a number, a crowd, multitude, population
Gallicus, -a, -um, - Gallic
Plumbum album, - I, -I – tin
Mediterraneus, -a, -um, - Inland (opposed to maritus)
Cantium, -ii, n, - Kent
Humanus, -a, -um, civilized, humane; also human
Continens, -entis, f – the mainland

(1) Bitanniae pars interior a viris qui in insula nati sunt (were born) incolitur.
(2) Sed maritime pars a viris incolitur qui praedae causa ex Belgis navigaverunt et postea agros coluerunt.
(3) Ibi hominum multitude maxima esse dicitur
(4) Plurima aedificia Gallicis esse simila videntur atque incolae pecorum magnum numerum habere scintur.
(5) Reperitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius (of it) parva est copia.
(6) Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare, ut ab incolis putatur, fas non est.
(7) Insulae loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia.
(8) Haud procul est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia.
(9) Noctes breviores quam in continenti esse dicuntur.
(10) Ex omnibus incolis longe sunt humanissimi qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritime omnis.
(11) Haec omnia (these things) apud Caesarem de Britannis scribuntur.

Translation of the above chapter. Students should try literal translation themselves before referring to the following.

(1) The interior part of Britain is inhabited by men who were born in the island.
(2) But a part of the maritime (territory situated by the sea) is inhabited by men who sailed from Belgae (Belgium?) for (the sake of) plunder and afterwards cultivated the fields.
(3) A great multitude of people is said to (be) live there.
(4) Many (of) the edifices (buildings) look similar to those of the Gauls and the inhabitants are known to have great number of cattle.
(5) There tin is found in the Mediterranean region, iron in the maritime, but its supply is small.
It is not right (customary) to taste (eat) hen and goose, as the inhabitants believed.

The climate of the island is milder than in Gaul.

Ireland is not far from Britain, it is believed.

Nights are said to be shorter than in the mainland.

By far all the inhabitants who lived (dwelt) in Kent are civilized as the whole region is maritime.

All these things were written about Britain in the works of Caesar.

Exercise 11: Caesar’s Second Invasion of Britain (part 2)

Word list

Plerique, pleraequae, pleraque – most, most of
Lac, lactis, n – milk
Caro, carnis, f – flesh, meat
Me inficio, -ere, -fecí, -fectum – I dye myself
Vitrum, -í, n – woad (a plant from which blue dye is obtained).
Efficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum – I produce
Caeruleus, -a, -um – bluish, dark-blue.
Color, -oris, m – colour
Rado, -ere, rasi, rasum – I shave
Labrum, -I, n – a lip
Hiemo, -are, -avi, -atum – I winter, I spend winter
Reduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum – I lead back
Naves solvo, -ere, solvi, solutum – I set sail
Tamesis, -is, m – The Thames
Cassivellaunus, -I, m – Cassivellaunus
Me fugae mando, -are, -avi, -atum – I flee, I escape.
Legatus, -I, m – An officer: an envoy
Deditio, -onis, f – surrender, capitulation
Incolumis, -is, -e – safe, in safety

Checking with the above ‘word list’, try and translate the following into Latin!

(1) Corn is not sown by most of the Britons who live on (vivo) milk and meat. (2) But all the Britons dye themselves with woad which produces a bluish colour. And so in battle they are much more terrible. (3) The inhabitants shave every part of the body except the head and upper lip. (4) After Caesar arrived at the island, he led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus towards the river Thames. (5) On the bank of the river larger forces of the enemy are seen. (6) But our soldiers’ attack is not
withstood by the Britons, who are soon fleeing. (7) Finally envoys are sent to Caesar by Cassivellaunus about surrender. (8) Caesar, who had decided to winter in Gaul, demanded (postulo, with acc) hostages. (9) Not long afterwards the Roman forces are led back to the sea by their general. (10) Then Caesar ordered them (eos) to set sail, and by dawn all the ships had reached Gaul in safety.

**LATIN CERTIFICATE EXAMINATIONS: RECOMMENDED EXAMINATION PAPER FORMAT**

**PAPER ONE**

[Contains two parts - 1 & 2]

**Part One – Objective Questions**

**Part Two** Translation from Latin to English. Translation from English to Latin - 5 questions each.

**PAPER TWO**

**Part One** (Simple conjugations of verbs and declensions of nouns, adjectives and pronouns)  
**Part Two** (Parsing of familiar latin words)  
**Part Three** (Translations of ‘seen’ and ‘unseen’ passages, taken from Greek and Roman History and Mythologies)

**PAPER THREE – ORAL LATIN**

*Oral Latin, taken from recommended Latin textbooks, including Latin Bible, Codex Iuris Canonici (The Code of Canon Law), Latin Missal and Latin Prayer Books*

**LATIN DIPLOMA CERTIFICATE EXAMINATION SAMPLE QUESTIONS**

**PAPER ONE**

Part One - Objective

From the words lettered A – D choose the one that is **First Declension** noun.

1.
A) Servus
B) Homo
C) Silva
D) Verbum

2. Nomen, **nomin-is**, name is
A) a masc. noun of 2nd Decl.
B) a neuter noun of 1st Decl.
C) a fem. noun of 3rd Decl.
D) a neuter gen. sing of 3rd Decl. noun

3. **Amav-isti** (from amo, I love) is
A) 1st conj. verb, 1st per sing.
B) 1st conj. verb, 2nd per sing.
C) 2nd conj. verb, 3rd per sing.
D) 2nd conj. verb, 1st per sing.

4. **Dedi** (from do – I give) is
A) pluperfect, 3rd person of the verb
B) perfect ind, 1st per. of the verb
C) present infinitive, 1st per. of the verb
D) perfect, 1st per. of the verb.

5. **Dormie-bant** (from Dormio, I sleep) is
A) 1st per 3rd conj. plu. of the verb
B) 3rd per 4th conj. plu. of the verb
C) 3rd per 4th conj. plu. of the verb
D) 2nd per 2nd conj. sing.

6. Duco – ducere – duxi – **ductum** (I lead). The underlined word is
A) The pre inf. 4th principal part of the verb
B) The supine 3rd principal part of the verb
C) The perfect tense, 2nd principal part of the verb
D) The supine, 4th principal part of the verb.

7. **Mone-mus** (from moneo, I advice) is
A) 3rd person plu
B) 1st person sing
C) 4th person plu
D) 1st person plu
8. **Laudabunt** (from laudo. I praise is)
   A.) future ind. 2nd per. plu.
   B) imperfect ind. 3rd per. plu.
   C) perfect ind. 1st per. plu.
   D) future ind. 3rd per. plu.

9. **Ama-bor** (from amo, I love) is
   A) act. voice 1st per sing.
   B) passive voice 2nd per plu.
   C) passive voice 1st per sing.
   D) act. voice 3rd per plu.

10. **Laborare** (from laboro, I work) is
    A) future infinitive act.
    B) pre infinitive pass.
    C) perfect infinitive pass.
    D) pre. Infinitive act.

Nos 11 - 14  **Felix, felic-is** means/is
   A) Fly
   B) Fair
   C) Happy
   D) Easy

12. A) Noun
    B) Verb
    C) Adj.
    D) Pronoun

13. A) 1st decl. adj.
    B) 3rd Decl. noun
    C) 4th Decl. verb
    D) 3rd Decl. adj.

14. A) Felicem is in abl. case
    B) Felicem is in nom. case
    C) Felicem is in acc. case
    D) Felicem is in dat.

15. I have built means
    A) Aedificabo
    B) Aedifico
268

C) Aedicabant  
D) Aedificavi

16. He was able. He could, means  
A) Possumus  
B) Potero  
C) Poterat  
D) Poterant

17. I advised, I have advised means  
A) Monebo  
B) Moneo  
C) Monu-i  
D) Monu-ero

18. He was killed with a sword is translated  
A) Gladii interfectus est  
B) Cum gladio interfectus est  
C) Gladio interfectus est  
D) Ab gladio interfectus est

19. At home means  
A) Domo  
B) Domi  
C) Domos  
D) Domibus

20. To have praised means  
A) Laudate  
B) Laudevi  
C) Laudavisse  
D) Laudaturus

21. I am happy means  
A) Felicem sum  
B) Felix esse  
C) Felice ero  
D) Felix sum

22. “Good – better - best” means  
A) Bonus - meliori - optimo  
B) Bonus – melior - maximus
C) Bona – meliores - pessimus  
D) Bonus- melior - optimus

23. More famous is best translated
A) Clarus  
B) Clarae
C) clarior  
D) Clarissimus

24. They had advised means
A) Monuerint  
B) Monebant
C) Monuerant  
D) Monebunt

25. The word ‘ingens, ingentis – huge, immense is
A) 3rd declension adjective, masculine  
B) 2nd declension adjective, feminine
C) 3rd declension adjective, feminine  
D) 4th declension noun, masculine

26. Sum, esse, fui, fuisset: (I am)  
The underlined word is
A) Supine of the verb  
B) 4th principal part of the verb
C) Perfect tense of sum  
D) None of the above.

27. 92 is the same as ...... in Roman figure
A) XCV  
B) CCX
C) XCII  
D) IIXC

28. 2010 is the same as
A) XMM  
B) XMXM
C) MMX  
D) MXM

29. LXX is same as
A) 50
270

30. **MC is**
   A) 1100  
   B) 1200  
   C) 1010  
   D) 2001

31. **Noster – nostra – nostrum (our) is**
   A) A noun
   B) Pronoun
   C) Possessive adjective
   D) Demonstrative adjective

32. **Maximus is**
   A) Comparative degree of adj. “great”
   B) Positive degree of adj “great”
   C) Superlative degree of adj. “great”
   D) Comparative degree of “maxior”.

33. “**Cum**” which means – “with” or “together with” is
   A) An adverb
   B) A pronoun
   C) A preposition
   D) An adjective

34. **The Latin idiomatic expression “Sine die” means**
   A) with a fixed date
   B) without a fixed date or indefinitely
   C) without indefinite date
   D) with or without infinite date

35. **Sine qua non means**
   A) Without any aqua
   B) With good purpose
   C) Essential condition
   D) Without any important condition

36. **Persona-non-grata, means**
   A) A person not granted any forgiveness
B) A person not accepted or made welcome to a specified place.
C) A person in prison
D) A person expelled from his country

37. In an examination or test “viva voce” means
A) In a very loud voice
B) In a very lively voice
C) Oral
D) Written examination.

38. “Bona fide” student of IMSU means
A) Good student of IMSU
B) Genuine student of IMSU
C) Fake student of IMSU
D) Illegal student of IMSU

39. “Deo volente” means
A) True to God
B) God is all-knowing
C) God willing
D) Swearing in the name of God.

40. “Ad interim” means
A) For the mean time
B) Towards the interlude
C) For the fixed time
D) For all to wait

41. He is acting “ultra vires” means
A) Acting according to law
B) With great power and authority
C) Beyond his powers or authority granted by law
D) Within the limits of the laws of the land

42. “Vox populi” means
A) The power of the people
B) Public opinion
C) Public outrage
D) Voice of the oppressed people heard by God

43. ”Eo- ire – iri – itum” means
A) I fear
B) I look
C) I go
D) I come

44. **Amatus sum** – I have been loved is an example of
   A) Perfect indicative passive voice
   B) Perfect participle active
   C) Supine
   D) Past perfect tense

45. "**Loquor, loqui, locutus sum** (I speak) is an example of
   A) Perfect indicative tense
   B) Passive voice
   C) Deponent verb
   D) Verbs that end in "-or"

46. **Accusative plural of the personal pronoun “Tu” – “you”** is
   A) Tem
   B) Te
   C) Vestrum
   D) Vos

47. **Exercitus, exercitus, - an army is**
   A) 2nd Decl. noun
   B) 3rd Decl. noun
   C) 4th Decl. noun
   D) 5th Decl. noun

48. The “Stories” of Hercules, Tantalus, Midas, Niobe, the Argonauts and Perseus are examples of
   A) Fable
   B) Allegory
   C) Legend
   D) Myth

49. The “Stories” of “The Wolf and the Lamb”, “Three Small Pigs and the Wolf” are examples of
   A) Folklore
   B) Fable
   C) Animal story
   D) Amusing or laughable story
50. **Mount Olympus was believed by the Greeks to be**
   A) The highest mount in ancient Greece
   B) A mountain where dangerous animals dwelt
   C) The home of great warriors
   D) The home of the gods

51. **Among the following one is not a deity, a god or goddess:**
   A) Zeus
   B) Hades
   C) Apollo
   D) Horatius

52. **In ancient Rome “Pantheon” was**
   A) The palace of Roman Kings and Emperors
   B) Army barracks
   C) Temples of all gods
   D) A building where slaves were kept

53. **In ancient Rome the “Forum” was something like**
   A) Large community square
   B) A place where lions and wild animals fought with Christians
   C) Something like a big garden
   D) Where Roman generals lived

54. **The following were famous ancient Greek and Roman poets, except one.**
   A) Ovid
   B) Virgil
   C) Homer
   D) Plato.

55. **The famous work of literature called Aeneid was written by**
   A) Homer
   B) Aristotle
   C) Wole Soyinka
   D) Virgil
56. These two major epics (i.e. poetic accounts) of Greek antiquity, “The Illiad” and “The Odyssey”, were written by
A) Hercules
B) Agamemnon
C) Virgil
D) Homer

57. The Trojan War was fought between
A) Caesar and the Gauls
B) Romans and Britons
C) Greeks and Trojans
D) Athens and Sparta

58. These were great ancient Greek and Roman heroes and warriors, except one:
A) Odysseus
B) Tarquinius Superbus
C) Achilles,
D) Caesar

59. Confiteor Dio omnipotenti .... The underlined word is an example of
A) Supine
B) Imperfect tense
C) Deponent verb
D) Subjunctive mood

60. [Leader] Veni sancte spiritus.........
[Congregation] Reple tuorum corda fidelium, et tui amoris in eis ignem accende......
The underlined verbs (reple: from repleo, - ere -, -pleri, -pletum (2) meaning “to fill again, to fill up” and accende from accendo, -ere, -cendi, -censum (3),” to set on fire, kindle, inflame”) are examples of
A) Present subjunctive passive
B) Present infinitive
C) Imperative mood, singular.
D) Imperative mood plural

PAPER ONE – OBJECTIVE: ANSWERS

**Paper One – Part Two**

(A) Translate into English

(1) Nuntius: “Me audite, Romani, et ego vobis fabulam veram narrabo.”
Romani: “Cur tu nobis hoc narras?”

(2) Magister: “Timebuntne amici?”
Servus: Verba amici sciunt.

(3) Marcus: “Dic nobis, domine, aliquid de deis. Quis erat Mars?”
Dominus: “Me, pueri audite. Ego laetus sum, quia de deis audire optatis.


(5) Milites nostri in oppidum paucis horis contendere potuerunt.

(B) Translate into Latin

1. We have lived in Italy for many years.
2. The king and the queen are good.
3. He ordered me to walk and sing.
4. My friends saw the Britons inspecting the Roman city.
5. Neither the boys nor the girls are in the garden.

**Paper Two**

Part One – Simple conjugations, declensions etc

Part Two - Parsing and Translation

[A] Read these sentences carefully, taking note of the underlined words and expressions, or words in bold prints.

1. Cottidie puer Romanus *ad ludum* properabat.
2. *Per vias cum paedagogi* prima hora *ambulabat*.
3. *In ludo multas horas manebat*.
4. Secunda hora magister *ei* fabulam narrabat.
5. Tertia hora in tabellis *scribebat*.
6. Silvam magnam procul videbamus..
7. Cur Romani templum *aedificabant*?
8. Iuppiter *deus* erat atque terram regebat.
10. *Verba amici *sciunt.*

Now answer the following questions.

1. What part of speech is ‘ad’? Translate ‘ad ludum’.
2. Give the four principal parts of ‘ambulabat’.
3. Translate into English *In ludo multas horas manebat.*
4. ‘Ei’ is a 3rd personal pronoun. Decline the pronoun in both singular and plural, giving the English meanings.
5. Give the four principal parts of ‘scriebat’.
6. Translate into English: ‘Silvam magnam procul videbamus.’
7. What is the tense of ‘aedificabant?’ Conjugate it in full in the same tense.
8. What is the case of ‘deus?’ Why?
9. Translate number 9 sentence into English.
10. What is the tense of ‘sciunt?’ Give the four principal parts and its meaning. In what case is ‘verba?’ Translate the sentence.

[B] Read these sentences carefully, taking note of the underlined words and expressions, or words in bold prints.

1. Nemo apud deos hominesque, ut antique narrant, celebrior erat quam Tantalus, Iovis filius. What part of speech is ‘celebrior?’ Give the two remaining degrees of comparison. Translate ‘apud deos hominesque’.
2. Olim Galli, ubi Italiam vastabant, in oppidum Romam contendere atque Capitolium (the Capitoline Hill) obsidere in animo habuerunt. What is the tense of ‘habuerunt?’ What is its conjugation? Conjugate it in full. Give the four principal parts. What is the mood of ‘contendere’ and ‘obsidere?’ Why?
3. Nunc fabulam clamam, discipuli, audite. Translate the sentence. What is the mood of ‘audite?’ What is its number? Give the four principal parts of ‘audite’.
4. Laborare est orare. To work is to pray or Working is praying. In this sentence ‘laborare’ is the subject of the sentence. What is ‘orare’ called? What is its function?
5. *Ego et dominus tuus periculum magnum non timebamus.* What is the tense of timebamus? What is its
person? Conjugate it in full. Name the principal parts of the verb 'timebamus'.

Paper Three - Seen and Unseen Passages

[From “Everyday Latin” & “Greek and Roman mythologies”]

(A) Translate into English

1. Laus tibi, Domine.
2. Deus erat Verbum.
3. Offerte vobis pacem
4. Ecce Agnus Dei.
5. Ad hortum.
6. Ex oppido venit.
7. Ab templo venit.
8. Ad dextra patris.
10. Laborare est orare.
11. Nec pueri nec puellae....
12. Ora pro nobis.
13. Et Verbum caro factum est.
14. Audite, pueri! Tacete!
15. Et ............et
17. Mille homines.
18. Tres horas laborabant.
19. Decem annus natus est.
20. Dominus meus et Deus meus. (Act. 20.28)
20.Beatius est magis dare quam accipere. (Act. 20.35)
21. Argentum et aurum non est mihi. (Act. 3.6)

(B) Translate into Latin

1. I am who I am
2. My Lord and my queen.
3. I am ten years old.
4. They were working.
5. With the slaves
6. The words of the leader.
7. My Lord and my God.
8. The town is beautiful.
9. We are sitting there.
10. Our Father.
11. Hail Mary.
12. 1998
13. Two thousand boys.
14. Abl. plu of ‘name’.
15. The rich queen.
16. He has read the book.
17. They are listening.
18. I will rule.
19. They will advise.
20. The friends know the words.
21. Many Roman soldiers.

(C.) Give ‘unembellished’ translation of one of the following passages

1. ANCENT GREECE AND ROME


Non solum in Italia, sed etiam in aliis (other) terris Romanis pugnabant. In Graecia, Asia, Hispania magna cum gloria populus Romanus pugnabat.


Vocabulary (to help you easily translate the above passage)

*Incola, *-ae, *m* – inhabitant
*Oppidum, *-i, *n.* town
*Ager, agri, um* – field
*Aut, *conj – or
*Vicinus, *-i, *m,* - neighbor
*Bellicosus, *-a, *-um* – warlike
*Supero, *-are – overcome, defeat
*Vasto, *-are – lay waste, destroy
*Praeda, *-ae, *f – booty, prey
*Non solum...sed etiam – not only...but also
*Gloria, *-ae – glory
*Populus, *-i, *m, people
*Ruina, *-ae, *f – ruin
*Tamen, *conj – nevertheless, yet
*Etiam, *adv – even.

Nota bene: You must have read the detailed account, history of the ancient Rome, especially about the “Roman Forum” before attempting the above exercise.

2. The Story of Remus and Romulus


Frustra tamen Amulius pueros necare temptavit, nam aqua eos in sicco loco reliquit. Ibi lupa parvos pueros curavit, donec Faustulus pastor (a shepherd) eos vidit et ad maritam portavit. Ea femina bona pueros cum cura educavit.

Vocabulary (to help you easily translate the above passage)

Aeneas, Aeneae, m, Aeneas, - hero of Virgil’s poem
Amulius, -ii, m, son of Proca, a king of Alba Longa
Numitor, -oris, m, - Numitor, son of Proca, king of Alba Longa
Proca, -ae, m, Proca, a king of Alba Longa
Rhea Silva, -ae, f, mother of Remus and Romulus
Post, prep – after
Iubeo – ere, iussi, iussum – to command
Praesertim - especially
Tutus, -a, -um – safe, unharmed
Posteri, -orum, in plu, m, plur. – descendants
Is, ea, id, dem pron or adj – that, this
Regnum, regni, n – kingdom
Inundo, -are, -avi, -atum – flood
Siccus, -a, -um – dry
Lupa, -ae f, - wolf
Donec, conj, – until
Avus, -i, m, - grandfather
Iratus, irata, iratum – angry
Simulacrum, -i, n – image, statue
Summus, -a, -um – highest, greatest.

3. The Wooden Horse of Troy

The Trojan Horse: The Wooden Horse outside the walls of Troy (see “The Trojan War”). Troy was made famous by Greek poet Homer, who wrote the Iliad and Odyssey and by Virgil, the Roman poet, who wrote the Aeneid.


Iam decimus annus belli aderat. Nondum autem Troia expugnata est. Graeci muros oppidi obsidebant. Troiani intra muros fortiter
pugnabant. Graeci defessi propter bellum longum patriam et familias desiderabant.


**Vocabulary** (to help you easily translate the above passage)

- *Initium, initiī, n* – beginning
- *Navigium, navigīi, n* - boat
- *Aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum, to build, construct*
- *Decimus, -a, -um – tenth*
- *Familia, -ae, f – family*
- *Callidus, -a, -um – crafty, wily*
- *Insidia, -arum, f, plur – trick, stratagem*
- *Libero, -are – set free*
- *Lignum, -i, n, - wood*
- *Monstrum, -I, n – monster*
- *Proximus, -a, -um – near, very near, neighboring*
- *Velut, adv – as, as if*
- *Fuga, -ae, f – flight*
- *Unde, adv – whence*
- *Adsum, -esse, -fui, futurus – to be present, to last (aderat = it was)*
- *Expugno, -are – take by storm, to capture*
- *Nondum – not yet*
- *Obsideo, -ere, -sedi, sessum – besiege*
- *Defessus, -i, - tired*

---

**PAPER FOUR - ORAL LATIN**

*(to be read aloud by the students before the examiner! More alternative texts can be selected from some biblical passages)*

**CODEX IURIS CANONICI - LIBER IV: DE ECCLESIAE MUNERE SANCTIFICANDI - PARS I: DE SACRAMENTIS**
Can 840 – Sacramenta Novi Testamenti, a Christo Domino institute et Ecclesia concredita, utpote actiones Christi et Ecclesiae, signa extant ac media quibus fides exprimitur et roboratur, cultus Deo redditur et hominum sanctificatio efficitur, atque ideo ad communionem ecclesiasticam inducendam, firmandam et manifestandam summomopere conferunt; quapropter in iis celebrandis summa veneratione debitaque diligentia uti debent tum sacri ministri tum eterni christifideles.

Can 841 – Cum sacramenta eadem sint pro universa ecclesia et ad divinam depositum pertineant, unius supremae ecclesiae auctoritatis est probare vel definire quae ad eorum validate sunt requisita, atque eiusmodem alluave auctoritatis competentis, ad normam can. 838, ++ 3 et 4, est decernere quae ad eorum celebrationem, administrationem et receptionem licitam necnon ad ordinem in eorum celebratione servandum spectant.

Can. 842 - + 1. Ad cetera sacramenta valide admitti nequit, qui baptismum non receipt. + 2, Sacramenta baptismi, confirmationis et sanctissimae Eucharistiae ita inter se coalescent, ut ad plenam initiacionem christianam requirantur.

Can. 843 - + 1. Ministri sacri denegare non possunt sacramenta iis qui opportune eadem petant, rite sint dispositi, nec iure ab iis recipiendis prohibeantur.
+ 2. Animarum pastores ceterique christifideles, pro suo quisque ecclesiastico munere, officium habent curandi ut qui sacramenta petunt debita evangelizazione necnon catechetica institutione ad eadem recipienda praeparetur, attentis normis a competent auctoritate editis.

Can. 844 - + 1. Ministri Catholici sacramenta licite administrant solis christifidelibus catholiciis, qui pariter eadem a solis ministries catholicis licite recipient, salvis huius canonis ++ 2, 3, et 4, atque can. 861, + 2 praescriptis.
+ 2. Quoties necessitas id postulet aut vera spiritualis utilitas id suadeat, et dummodo pericum vitetur erroris vel indifferentismi, licet christifidelis quibus physice aut moralitut impossibile sit accedere ad ministrum catholicum, sacramenta paenitentiae, Eucharistiae et unctionis infirmorum recipere a ministries non catholicis, in quorum Ecclesia valida existunt praedicta sacramenta.
+ 3. Ministri catholici licite sacramenta paenitentiae, Eucharistiae et unctionis infirmorum administrant memberis ecclesiarum orientalium quae plenam cum ecclesiae catholica communionem non habent, si sponte id petant et rite sint disposita; quod etiam valet quoad membra aliarum ecclesiarum, quae iudicio sedis Apostolica, ad sacramenta quod attinet, in par condicione ac praedictae ecclesiae orientales versantur.

+ 4. Si adsit periculum mortis aut, iudicio episcope dioecesani aut episcoporum conferentiae, alia urget gravis necessitas, ministri catholici licite eadem sacramenta administrant ceteris quoque christianis plenam communionem cum ecclesia catholica non habentibus, qui ad suae communitatis ministrum accedere nequeant atque sponte id petant, dummodo quoad eadem sacramenta fidem catholicam manifestent et rite sint dispositi.

+ 5. Pro casibus de quibus in ++ 2, 3, et 4, episcopus dioecesanus aut episcoporum conferentiae generalis normas ne ferant, nisi post consultationem cum auctoritate competente saltem locali ecclesiae vel communitatis non catholicae, cuius interesse.

Can. 845 - + 1. Sacramenta baptismi, confirmationi et ordinis, quipped quae characterem imprimant, interari nequeunt.
+ 2. Si, diligente inquisitione peracta, prudens adhuc dubium supersit sum sacramenta de quibus in + 1 revera aut valide collate fuerint, sub condicione conferantur.

Can. 846 - + 1. In sacramentis celebrandis fideliter serventur libri liturgici a competent auctoritate probati; quapropter nemo in iisdem quidpiam proprio marte addat, demat aut mutet.
+ 2. Minister sacramenta celebret secundum proprium ritum.

Can. 847 - + 1. In administrandis sacramentis, in quibus sacra olea adhibenda sunt, minister uti debet oleis ex olivis aut aliis ex plantis expressis atque, salvo praescripto can n. 2, ab episcope consecrates vel benedictis, et quidem recenter; veteribus ne utatur, nisi adsit necessitas.

+ 2. Parochus olea sacra a proprio episcope impetret eaque decent custodia diligenter asservet.
Can. 848 – Minister, praeter oblationes a competent auctoritate definitas, pro sacramentorum administratione nihil petat, cauto semper ne egentes priventur auxilio sacramentorum ratione paupertatis.

THE CODE OF CANON LAW (English translation)

BOOK IV: THE SANCTIFYING OFFICE OF THE CHURCH
PART I: THE SACRAMENTS

Can. 840. The sacraments of the New Testament were instituted by Christ the Lord and entrusted to the Church. As actions of Christ and of the Church, they are signs and means by which faith is expressed and strengthened, worship is offered to God and our sanctification is brought about. Thus they contribute in the most effective manner to establishing, strengthening and manifesting ecclesiastical communion. Accordingly, in the celebration of the sacraments both the sacred ministers and all the other members of Christ’s faithful must show great reverence and due care.

Can. 841. Since the sacraments are the same throughout the universal Church, and belong to the divine deposit of faith, only the supreme authority in the Church can approve or define what is needed for their validity. It belongs to the same authority or to another competent authority in accordance with Can. 838 §§3 and 4, to determine what is required for their lawful celebration, administration and reception and for the order to be observed in their celebration.

Can. 842. §1 A person who has received baptism cannot validly be admitted to the other sacraments.

§2 The sacraments of baptism, confirmation and the blessed Eucharist so complement one another that all three are required for full Christian initiation.

Can. 843. §1 Sacred ministers may not deny the sacraments to those who opportunely ask for them, are properly disposed and are not prohibited by law from receiving them.

§2 According to their respective offices in the Church, both pastors of souls and all other members of Christ’s faithful have a duty to ensure that those who ask for the sacraments are prepared for their reception. This should be done through proper evangelization and catechetical instruction, in accordance with the norms laid down by the competent authority.
Can. 844. §1 Catholic ministers may lawfully administer the sacraments only to catholic members of Christ’s faithful, who equally may lawfully receive them only from catholic ministers, except as provided in §§2, 3 and 4 of this canon and in can. 861 §2.

§2 Whenever necessity requires or a genuine spiritual advantage commends it, and provided the danger of error or indifferentism is avoided, Christ’s faithful for whom it is physically or morally impossible to approach a catholic minister, may lawfully receive the sacraments of penance, the Eucharist and anointing of the sick from non-catholic ministers in whose Churches these sacraments are valid.

§3 Catholic ministers may lawfully administer the sacraments of penance, the Eucharist and anointing of the sick to members of the eastern Churches not in full communion with the Catholic Church, if they spontaneously ask for them and are properly disposed. The same applies to members of other Churches which the Apostolic See judges to be in the same position as the aforesaid eastern Churches so far as the sacraments are concerned.

§4 If there is a danger of death or if, in the judgment of the diocesan Bishop or of the Episcopal Conference, there is some other grave and pressing need, catholic ministers may lawfully administer these same sacraments to other Christians not in full communion with the catholic Church, who cannot approach a minister of their own community and who spontaneously ask for them, provided that they demonstrate the catholic faith in respect of these sacraments and are properly disposed.

§5 In respect of the cases dealt with in §§2, 3 and 4, the diocesan Bishop or the Episcopal Conference is not to issue general norms except after consultation with the competent authority, at least at the local level, of the non-catholic Church or community concerned.

Can. 845. §1 Because they imprint a character, the sacraments of baptism, confirmation and order cannot be repeated.

§2 If after diligent enquiry a prudent doubt remains as to whether the sacraments mentioned in §1 have been conferred at all, or conferred validly, they are to be conferred conditionally.

Can. 846. §1 The liturgical books, approved by the competent authority, are to be faithfully followed in the celebration of the sacraments. Accordingly, no one may on a personal initiative add to or omit or alter anything in those books.
§2 The ministers are to celebrate the sacraments according to their own rite.

Can. 857. §1 In administering sacraments, in which holy oils are to be used, the minister must use oil made from olives or other plants, which, except as provided in Can. 999, n. 2, has recently been consecrated or blessed by a Bishop. Older oil is not to be used except in a case of necessity.

§2 The parish priest is to obtain the holy oils from his own Bishop and keep them carefully in fitting custody.

Can. 848. For the administration of the sacraments the minister may not ask for anything beyond the offerings which are determined by the competent authority, and he must always ensure that the needy are not deprived of the help of the sacraments by reason of poverty.
 PART SIX

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

a, ab, prep. With abl., by, from, away from.
ab eo, -ire, abii (abivi), abitum, go away.
abhinc, adv., ago.
abscido, -ere, abscidi, abscisum, cut off, cut away.
ac, conj., and
accipio, -ere, accepi, acceptum, take, receive.
acer, acris, acre, adj., energetic, keen, sharp.
acies, aciei, f., a line of battle.
Acrisius, -ii, m., Acrisius, King of Argos, father of Donae.
acus, acus, f., a needle.
ad, prep. with acc., to, towards.
ad unum, pre. phrase, to a man, without exception.
addo, -ere, addidi, additum, add.
adduco, -ire, adduxi, adductum, lead to, bring to: induce.
adeo, -ire, adii, aditum, approach, go to.
adeo, adv., so, to such an extent.
adhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, use, employ.
adhuc, adv., still, as yet.
adicio, -ere, addieci, adiectum, throw to: add.
adsum, adesse, affui, with dat., be present, be at hand.
adulescens, -entis, adj., young: as a noun, c., a youth, a young person.
advenio, -ire, adveni, adventum, arrive at, come to, reach.
adventus, -us, m., an arrival.
adversus, -a, -um, adj., unfavourable
aedes, -is, f., a building: in the sing., a temple, in the pl., a house, a palace.
aedificium, -ii, n., a building.
aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum, build.
aedilis, -is, m., an aedile (see Bk. 1, p. 120).
Aetes, -ae,m., Aetes, king of Colchis, father of Medea.
aeger, -gra, -grum, aji., sick, ill.
Aegeus (2 syllab.), -ei, m., Aegaeus, king of Athens, father of Theseus.
Aeneas, -ae, m., acc., Aenean), Aeneas, son of Venus and Anchises, hero of the Aeneid.
Aeneis, -idis, f., the Aeneid.
aequor, -oris, n., the sea.
aestas, -atis, f., summer.
aetas, -atis, f., age: an age, a generation.
aether, -eris, m., the upper air, the heavens, the upper world.
Aethiopia, -ae, f., Ethiopia, a country in Africa.
Aethre, -ae, f., Aethra, mother of Theseus.
Aetna, -ae, f., Etna, a volcano in Sicily.
affero, affere, attuli, allatum, bring, bring to, offer.
affixus, -a, -um, adj., fastened, fixed to.
Africa, -ae, f., Africa.
ager, agrum, m., a field: agrorum, m, pl., the countryside.
aggredi, aggredio, aggressus sum, approach: attack.
agnomen, -inis, n., an agnomen (see p. 211).
agnus, -i, m., a lamb.
ago, agere, egi, actum, do, drive: pass, sepend (of time): gratias agere, with dative, to give thanks, to thank.
agricola, -ae, m., a farmer.
alae, -ae, f., a wing.
Alba Longa, -ae, f., Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome.
Albanus, -a, -um, adj., Alban.
alienus, -a, -um, adj., of another, another’s: foreign
aliquis, aliquid, indef, pron., someone, something.
alius, alia, aliud, adj., another, other: alius ... alius, one ... another, in pl., some ... others: for further uses see p. 133.
alter, altera, alterum, adj., the other (of two): alter ... alter the one ... the other.
altus, -a, -um, adj., high, deep.
alveus, -i, m., a hollow tub.
ambo, -ae, -o, num, adj., both.
ambulare, -are, -avi, -atum, walk.
amicitia, -ae, f., friendship.
amicus, -i, m., a friend.
amnis, amnis, m., a river.
amo, -are, -avi, -atum, like, love.
amor, -oris, m., love.
Anchises, -ae, m., Anchises, father of Aneas.
Andromeda, -ae, f., Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus and Cassiopea.
anglice, adj., in English, into English.
angustiae, -arum, f., pl., a mountain pass, a defile.
anima, -ae, f., life, soul.
animal, -alis, n., an animal.
animus, -i, m., courage, mind, spirit: in animo habere, to determine.
anus, -i, m., a year.
anser, -eris, m., a goose.
ante, antea, adv., before, in front: formerly.
ante, prop. with acc., before.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj., ancient, old: antique, the ancients.
anulus, -i, m., a ring.
anxius, -a, -um, adj., troubled.
aper, apri, m., a wild boar.
aperio, -ire, aperui, apertum, open, reveal, disclose.
Apoll(o), -onis, m., Apollo, god of the sun and of music.
appello, -inis, m., call, name.
appropinquo, -are, -avi, -atum, approach.
apud, prep. with acc., at, among, at the house of, in the works of.
aqua, -ae, f., water.
aquila, -ae, f., an angel.
arca, -ae, f., a box, a chest.
arbor, -oris, f., a tree.
arca, -ae, f., a box, a chest.
Arcadia, -ae, f., Arcadia, a part of Greece.
arbor, -oris, f., a tree.
arca, -ae, f., a box, a chest.
arcus, arcus, m., a bow.
ardeo, -ere, arsi, arsum, be on fire, blaze.
ardus, -a, -um, adj., dry.
arix, arcis, f., a citadel, a fortress.
arx, arcis, f., a citadel, a fortress.
ascendo, -ere, ascendii, ascensum, climb up, go up.
Asia, -ae, f., Asia.
asper, aspera, asperum, adj., rough.
aspio, -ere, aspixi, aspixum, behold, see.
asylum, -i, n., a sanctuary, a place of refuge.
at, conj., but.
Athenae, -arum, f. pl., Athens, a city in Greece.
Atheniensis, -e, adj., Athenian: Athenienses, the Athenians.
Atlas, Atlantis, m., Atlas, father of the Pleiades.
atque, conj., and, and also.
atrium, -ii, n., an atrium, the central room in a Roman house.
attonitus, -a, -um, adj, amazed, stupefied.
audacia, -ae, f., boldness.
audacter, adv., boldly.
audax, -acis, adj., bold, brave.
audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, hear.
auffero, auferre, abstuli, ablatum, take away.
augurium, -ii, n., augury: an omen.
aureus, -a, -um, adj., golden.
auriga, -ae, c., a driver, a charioteer.
aurum, -i, n., gold.
aut, conj., or: aut ... aut, either ... or.
autem, conj., but, moreover.
auxilium, -ii, n., in the sing., help, in the pl., allied forces, reinforcements.
Aventinus, -i, m., the Aventine, one of the seven hills of Rome.
avius, -a, -um, adj., pathless, untracked: as a noun, a pathless place;
avia, -orum, n. pl., a wilderness.
avus, -i, m., a grandfather.
Bacchus, -i, m., Bacchus, the god of wine.
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, uncivilized: barbari, barbarians.
basilica, -ae, f., a portico, a basilica.
Belgae, -arum, m. pl., the Belgae, a people of northern Gaul.
Bellum, -i, n., a war.
bene, adv., well.
beneficium, -ii, n., a kindness, a favour.
bibliopola, -ae, m., a book-seller.
bibo, -ere, bibi, -, drink.
bonus, -a, -um, adj., good.
braccchium, -ii, n., an arm, a fore-arm.
brevis, -e, adj., short.
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.
Britannus, -a, -um, adj., British: Britanni, the Britons.
cado, -ere, cecidi, casum, fall.
caduceus, -i, m., a staff: the wand of Mercury.
caedes, -is, f., massacre, murder, slaughter.
caelum, -i, n., the heavens, the sky.
Caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., bluish, dark blue.
Caesar, Caesris, m., Caesar.
calamus, -i, m., a pen.
calcar, calcaris, n., a spur.
Camillus, -i, m., Camillus, the liberator of Rome from the Gauls.
Campanus, -a, -um, adj., a Campanian: a citizen of Capua.
Campus, -i, m., a plain: Campus Martius the Plain of Mars.
candidus, -a, -um, adj., white: bright, sparkling.
canis, -is, c., a dog.
cano, -ere, cecini, cantum, sing.
Cantium, -ii, n., Kent.
Capella, -ae, f., Capella: a goat.
capio, -ere, cepi, captum, capture, take.
Capitolium, -ii, n., the Capitoline temple.
captivus, -a, -um, adj., captive: as a noun, m., a prisoner.
capsa, -ae, f., a book-case.
caput, -itis, n., a head.
carcer, -eris, m., a prison.
carmen, -inis, n., a song, a poem.
caro, carnis, f., flesh, meat.
carpo, -ere, carpsi, carptum, pluck.
Cartago, -inis, f., Carthage, a city in northern Africa.
carus, -a, -um, adj., dear.
casa, -ae, f., a cottage.
Cassiopea, -ae, f., Cassiopea, wife of Cepheus and mother of Andromeda.
Cassivellaunus, -i, m., Cassivellaunus, a famous British chieftain.
castrum, -i, n., in the sing., a fortress, in the pl., a camp.
causa, -ae, f., a reason: causam inferre, to seek a pretext.
causa, prep. with gen. (abl. Of causa), for the sake of.
cauda, -ae, f., a tail.
caveo, -ere, cavi, cautum, beware, take care.
cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum, yield.
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., fast, swift.
celeritas, -atis, f., speed.
celeriter, adv., quickly.
cena, -ae, f., banquet, dinner, supper.
ceno, -are, -avi, -atum, dine, sup.
censor, -oris, m., a censor: a critic (see p. 196).
centesimus, -a, -um, adj., hundredth.
centum, indecl. num, adj., hundred.
Cepheus (2 syllab.), -ei, m., Cepheus, husband of Cassiopea and king of Ethiopia.
cera, -ae, f., in the sing., wax, in the pl., waxen writing tablets.
Cerberus, -i, m.; Cerberus, the dog which guarded the entrance to the Lower World.
Ceres, -eris, f., ceres, mother of Proserpina and goddess of agriculture.
certamen, -inis, n., a contest, a struggle.
certe, adv., at any rate, certainly, yes.
certiorem aliquem facio, -ere, feci, factum, inform someone.
certo, adv., certainly, surely.
certo, -are, -avi, -atum, compete.
cervus, -i, m., a stag.
ceteri, -ae, -a, adj. pl., the rest of, the other.
Cetus, -i, m., Cetus: a large sea animal, a whale.
chaos, —, n., chaos.
charta, -ae, f., paper (made from the papyrus plant.)
cibus, -i, m., food.
cinis, -eris, m., a cinder, ashes.
circa, circum, adv., and prep. with acc., around, round about.
circumsedeo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, besiege, blockade.
circumspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, look round upon.
circus, -i, m., an oval space, a racecourse: the Circus Maximus.
cito, adv., quickly.
citra, adv., and prep. with acc., on this side, on this side of.
civis, -is, c., a citizen.
civitas, -atis, f., a state.
clades, -is, f., a defeat, a disaster.
clam, adv., secretly: prep. with abl., without the knowledge of.
clamo, -are, -avi, -atum, cry out, exclaim.
clamar, -oris, m., a shout.
clangor, -oris, m., a loud noise, a cackling (of geese).
clarus, -a, -um, adj., famous.
codex, -icis, m., a codex (see p. 68).
codicilli, -orum, m. pl., writing tablets (see p. 68).
corceo, -ere, -ui, -itum, restrain.
cognomen, -inis, n., a cognomen (see p. 211).
cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum, collect: compel.
Colchi, -orum, m. pl., the Colchians, a people who lived near the Black Sea.
colloco, -are, -avi, -atum, draw up, place.
colo, -ere, colui, cultum, worship: till.
color, -orismet., colour.
Colosseum, -i, n., the Colosseum.
comes, -itis, c., an associate, a companion.
commotus, -a, -um, adj., moved.
compluvium, -ii, n., a compluvium (see Bk. 1, p. 82).
comprehendo, -ere, -hendi, -hensusum, seize, grasp, capture.
compulsus, -a, -um, adj., driven, urged.
concilium, -i, n., a meeting, an assembly.
condicio, -onis, f., a condition: pl., terms.
condo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, found (a city, etc.): hide.
confectus, -a, -um, adj., overcome.
confiteor, confiteri, confessus sum, admit, confess.
contundo, -ere, -fudi, -fusum, hurl together, mingle.
coniungo, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum, join, unite.
coniunx, -iugis, c., a husband, a wife.
conor, conari, conatus sum, try.
conscendo, -ere, -di, -scensum, climb up: in navem conscendere, embark.
consentio, -ire, -sensi, -sensum, agree.
consido, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, sit down: encamp.
consisto, -ere, -stiti, -, halt, stand.
constituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum, establish: decide, determine.
consul, -is, m., a consul (see Bk. 1, p. 119),
consulo, -ere, -sului, -sultum, deliberate, consult: with dat., consult the interests of.
contactus, -us, m., touch.
contendo, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, hasten, march.
continens, -entis, f., the mainland (see p. 77).
contingto, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, touch.
contra, prep. with acc., against.
controversia, -ae, f., argument, dispute, quarrel.
convalesce, -ere, -valui, -, recover (from illness, etc.).
convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, assemble, meet together.
cnvoce, -ae, c., a guest.
cnvoce, -are, -avi, -atum, assemble: (tr.), call together, summon.
copia, -ae, f., in the sing., abundance, plenty, supply, in the pl., forces, troops.
cornu, -us, n., horn: wing (of an army).
corpus, -oris, n., a body.
corripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, seize, seize hold of.
corrumpo, -ere, -rupi, -ruptum, corrupt, bribe.
cresco, -ere, crevi, cretum, grow (intr.); increase in power.
cottidie, adv., every day, daily.
cras, adv., to-morrow.
credo, -ere, credidi, creditum, with dat., believe, trust.
creo, -are, -avi, -atum, appoint, elect.
Creta, -ae, f., Crete, an island in the Mediterranean Sea.
Cretensis, -e, adj., of Crete, Cretan.
crimen, -inis, n., a charge, an accusation: much more rarely, guilt.
cruelis, -e, adj., cruel.
cruelitas, -atis, f., cruelty.
crus, cruris, n., a leg.
cubiculum, -i, n., a bed-room, a room.
cubile, -is, n., a couch.
culpo, -are, -avi, -atum, blame.
cum, prep. with abl., with.
cum, conj., when, since, although: cum primum, as soon as.
cunctus, -a, -um, adj., all, all of, the whole, entire.
cupiditas, -atis, f., greed.
cupio, -ere, -ivi, -itum, be eager for, desire.
cr, interrog. adv., why?
curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum, run.
currus, -us, m., a chariot.
cursus, -us, m., a race, a racecourse: cursum flecto, -ere, flexi, flexum, turn one’s steps towards, make one’s way to.
custodio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, guard.
custos, -odis, c., a guard, a watchman.
Cynthus, -i, f., Cynthus, a mountain in the island of Delos.
dapem, dapis, f., a feast.
de, prep. with abl., down from: about, concerning, as a result of.
dea, -ae, f., a goddess.
debello, -are, -avi, -atum, subdue, vanquish.
debaio, -ere, -ui, -itum, owe, ought.
decem, indecl. Num, adj., ten.
December, -bris, -bre, adj. of December.
decido, -ere, -cidi, --, fall down.
decimus, -a, -um, adj., tenth.
decipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum, deceive.
decurro, -ere, decurri, -de curcum, flow down (of water).
deditio, -onis, f., capitulation, surrender.
defendo, -ere, -fendi, -fensum, defend, protect.
defero, deferre, detuli, delatum, carry off, take away.
deinde, adv., then, in the next place.
deleo, -ere, delevi, deletum, destroy.
delinquo, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, commit a fault, offend.
demum, adv., at last: tum demum, then at last.
denique, adv., finally.
dens, dentis, m., a tooth.
densus, -a, -um, adj., thick, dense.
deploro, -are, -avi, -atum, deplore, lament.
descendo, -ere, -scendi, -scensum, descend, go down.
desilio, -ire, -silui, -sultum, jump down.
desisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, cease, stop, desist from.
despero, -are, -avi, -atum, despair, give up hope.
despicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, look down upon: despise, scorn.
destituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum, abandon, leave.
desum, deesse, defui, with dat., be wanting, be lacking.
detrudo, -ere, -trusi, -trusum, dislodge, thrust down forcibly.
Deucalion, -onis, m., Deucalion, husband of Pyrrha.
deus, -i, m., a god.
devoro, -are, -avi, -atum, eat up.
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, right-hand side: dextra, abl., on the right.
Diana, -ae, f., Diana, goddess of the moon and of hunting.
dico, -ere, dixi, dictum, say: with dat of person., tell: male dico, with dat., abuse, slander.
dictator, -oris, m., a dictator (see p. 197).
Dido, -onis, f., Dido, a queen of Carthage.
dies, diei, m., a day: in dies, prep. phrase, daily (see footnote, p. 217).
differo, differre, distuli, dilatum, postpone, defer, put off.
difficilis, -e, adj., difficult.
difficultas, -atis, f., difficulty.
digne, adv., worthily.
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy: with abl., worthy of.
dimidio, adv. (abl. of dimidius), by a half, a half.
dimitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, send away, dispatch, dismiss.
dis (dite), adj., rich.
disceudo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, go away.
discipulus, -i, m., a pupil.
disco, -ere, didici, -i, learn.
Discordia, -ae, f., Discord, the goddess of Strife.
discrimen, -inis, n., crisis, danger: distinction.
discus, -i, m., a discus, a quoit.
dissentio, -ire, -sensi, -sensum, disagree.
dissero, -ere, -serui, -sertum, argue, discuss.
dissimilis, -e, adj., dissimilar, unlike.
dissuadeo, -ere, -suasi, -suasum, with dat., dissuade.
diu, adv., long, for a long time: diutius, longer, too long.
dives, -itis, adj., rich.
divitias, -arum, f. pl., riches.
do, dare, dedi, datum, give: poenas dare, to pay the penalty.
doctor, -a, -um, adj., clever, learned.
doleo, -ere, -ui, —, feel pain: be pained, grieve.
dolor, -oris, m., grief, pain.
dolus, -i, m., deceit, a trick.
dominus, -i, m., lord, a master: domine, sir.
domus, -us, f., a house, a home.
donum, -i, n., a gift.
dormio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, sleep.
draco, -onis, m., a dragon.
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.
ducentensimus, -a, -um, adj., two hundredth.
ducenti, -ae, -a, adj., two hundred.
duco, -ere, duxi, ductum, lead: in matrimonium ducere, to marry.
duo, -ae, -o, num, adj., pl., two.
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve.
duodecimus, -a, -um, adj., twelfth.
duodeviginti, indecl. num. adj., eighteen.
duro, -are, -avi, -atum, endure, last.
durus, -a, -um, adj., grievous, hard.
dux, ducis, c., a leader, guide, commander.
e, ex, prep. with abl., away from, out of.
ecce, interj., behold! See!
edo, esse, edi, esum, eat.
educo, -ere, eduxi, eductum, lead out.
educo, -are, -avi, -atum, bring up.
efficio, -ere, -eci, -ectum, produce, cause, accomplish.
effugio, -ere, -fugi, (-fugitum), escape, flee from.
ego, pers. pron., m. or f. sing., I.
egredior, egredi, egressum sum, go out.
eheu, interj., alas!
elephantus, -i, m., an elephant.
cluo, -ere, clui, clutum, cleanse, wash away.
emergo, -ere, emersi, emersum, come out, arise, emerge.
emo, -ere, emi, emptum, buy.
en, interj., behold! Lo!
enim, conj., usually second word, for.
eo, ire, ivi or ii, itum, go.
epistula, -ae, f., a letter, an epistle.
equidem, adv., indeed, with first person vb., for my part.
equus, -i, m., a horse.
eripio, -ere, eripui, ereptum, snatch away.
erro, -are, -avi, -atum, wander, roam about.
erudio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, educate, instruct.
et, conj., and: et ... et, both ... and.
etiam, conj., also, even: non modo ... sed etiam, not only ... but also.
Etruria, -ae, f., Etruria, a country in north-western Italy.
euge, interj., good! Well done!
Eurystheus (3 syllab.), -ie, m., Eurystheus, king of Mycene.
excedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, go out, retire.
exclamo, -are, -avi, -atum, cry out, exclaim.
exeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, go out.
exercitus, -us, m., an army.
exhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, display.
existimo, -are, -avi, -atum, believe, suppose, think.
exitium, -ii, n., destruction.
expedio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, make ready, prepare.
expello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive out, drive away.
expono, -ere, -posui, -positum, expose, place out, set forth.
expugno, -are, -avi, -atum, take by storm, capture.
exsilium, -ii, n., exile.
exspecto, -are, -avi, -atum, wait for.
exstruo, -ere, -struxi, -structum, build up.
exsus, -ulis, c., an exile.
extra, adv., and prep. with acc., outside, without.
exstremus, -a, -um, adj., farthest, last.

fabula, -ae, f., a story.
facile, adv., easily.
facilis, -e, adj., easy.
facio, -ere, feci, factum, do: make; facere arbitrium, see arbitrium: facere aliquem certiorem, see certiorem.
factum, -i, n., a deed.
Falerii, -orum, m. pl., Falerii, a city in Etruria, capital of the Falisci.

falx, falcis, f., a knife, a sickle.

fama, -ae, f., reputation: report, renown: rumour.

fames, -is, f., hunger: fame mori, to die of hunger.

fas, indecl. noun, n., right.

fauces, -ium, f. pl. (lit. jaws) a passage way.

faveo, -ere, favi, fautum with dat., favour, be favourable to.

feliciter, adv., successfully.

felix, -icis, adj., happy, successful.

femina, -ae, f., a woman.

fera, -ae, f., a wild beast.

fero, ferre, tuli, latum, bear, bring: prae se ferre, to display, show off.

ferrum, -i, n., iron: sword.

ferunt, fero, indef. Use, men say, one says.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, savage.

festus, -a, -um, adj., festal, pertaining to holidays.

fictus, -a, -um, adj., false, pretended.

fidelis, -e, adj., trustworthy.

fides, -ei, f., faith, loyalty.

fidus, -a, -um, adj., faithful, reliable.

figo, -ere, fixi, fixum, fasten, fix.

filia, -ae, f., a daughter.

filius, -ii, m., a son.

filum, -i, n., a thread.

finio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, finish.

finis, -is, m., in the sing., an end, a limit, in the pl., borders, territories, country.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., neighbouring: finitimi, neighbours.

fio, fieri, factus sum, be made, become.

fирмо, -are, -avi, -atum, make firm, strengthen.

firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, powerful.

fixus, -a, -um, adj., fixed.

flamma, -ae, f., a flame.

flecto, see cursus.

flo, -are, -avi, -atum, blow, puff.

flos, floris, m., a flower.

flumen, -inis, n., a river.

fluvius, -ii, m., a small river, a stream.

foedus, -eris, n., a treaty.

fons, fontis, m., a fountain, a source, a spring.

formido, -inis, f., a fear, terror.
forte, adv., by chance, it happened that ....

fortis, -e, adj., brave.

fortiter, adv., bravery.

fortitude, -inis, f., bravery, courage.

fortuna, -ae, f., fortune: fortuna secunda, good fortune, fortuna adversa;

badfortune

: in the pl., property, possessions.

Forum, -i, n., the Forum: a market place.

frater, -tris, m., a brother.

fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, fraud: fraude, adv., deceitfully.

frenum, -i, n., usually in the pl., a horse’s bit, a bridle.

frigus, -oris, n., cold.

frons, frondis, f., a leaf, in the pl., foliage.

frons, frontis, f., front, a forehead: a fronte, in front.

frugem, -is, f., fruit.

frumentum, -i, n., corn, food.

frustra, adv., in vain.

fuga, -ae, f., flight: se fugae mandare, see mando.

fugio, -ere, fugi, (fugitum), escape, flee.

fulmen, -inis, n., a thunder-bolt, lightning.

fumo, -are, -avi, -atum, smoke.

fundus, -ere, fudi, fusum, pour: scatter, rout.

fur, furis, m., a thief.

Gades, -ium, f. pl., Cadiz, a town in Spain.

galea, -ae, f., a helmet.

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., Gallic.

gallina, -ae, f., a hen.

Gasillus, -a, -um, adj., Gallio: Galli, the Gauls.

gaudium, -ii, n., joy.

gemmatus, -a, -um, adj., bejeweled, adorned with gems.

gens, gentis, f., a clan, a race, a tribe.

genu, -us, n., a knee.

genus, -eris, n., a race (of people, etc.): a kind, class, sort.

gerio, -ere, gessi, gestum, carry, wear: carry on, wage (war).

gladiator, -orius, m., a gladiator.

gladius, -ii, m., a sword.

glæba, -ae, f., a clod of earth.

Gorgo, -onis, f., a Gorgon.

gracilis, -e, adj., graceful.
gradior, gradi, gressus sum, step, walk.
gradus, -us, m., a step.
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek: Graeci, the Greeks.
gratia, -ae, f., in the sing., esteem, influence, popularity, in the pl.,
gratitude, thanks: gratias ago, -ere, egi, actum, with dat., give
thanks, thank.
gratus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing.
gravis, -e, adj., heavy, grievous, serious.
graviter, adv., badly, hard, seriously.
grex, gregis, m., a flock.
gusto, -are, -avi, -atum, taste, partake.
guttur, -uris, n., a throat.

habeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, have, hold, possess: in animo habere, to
determine.
habito, -are, -avi, -atum, with in and abl., dwell, live in.
Hannibal, -alis, m., Hannibal, the famous Carthaginian general.
harena, -ae, f., sand: an arena.
hasta, -ae, f., a spear.
haud, adv., not: haud multo post, not long afterwards.
Helena, -ae, f., Helen, wife of Menelaus.
Helle, Helles (Gk. Gen.), f., Helle, sister of Phrixus.
Hellespontus, -i, m., the Hellespont, the strait connecting the
Propontis with the Aegean Sea – the modern Dardanelles.
Hercules, -is, m., Hercules, son of Jupiter, hero of the story of twelve
labours.
heri, adv., yesterday.
heros, -ois, m., a hero.
hiberna, -orum, n. pl., winter quarters.
Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland.
hic, haec, hoc, dem, adj. and pron., this: he, she, it: hic ... ille, the
latter ... the former (see p. 95).
hic, adv., here.
hierno, -are, -avi, -atum, spend the winter, winter.
Hispania, -ae, f., Spain.
hodie, adv., to-day.
homo, -inis, m., a man: hominess, mankind.
honos, -oris, n., public office, position.
hora, -ae, f., an hour: in general, time.
hortor, hortari, hortatus sum, encourage.
horribilis, -e, adj., awful, terrible.
hortus, -i, m., a garden.
hospes, -itis, m., a host, a guest.
hostis, -is, c., an enemy.
humanus, -a, -um, adj., human: civilized, humane, cultured.
humilis, -e, adj., humble, lowly.
humus, -i, f., the ground.

Jason, -onis, m., Jason, the leader of the Argonauts.
ibi, adv., there.
idem, eadem, idem, dem. Adj and pron., the same: idem ... qui, the same ... as.
idoneus, -a, -um, adj., suitable.
igitur, adv., usually second word, therefore.
ignis, -is, n., fire.
ille, illa, illud, dem. adj. and pron., that: he, she, it: hic ... ille, the latter ... the former (see p. 95).
imago, -inis, f., an image, a reflection.
imbellis, -e, adj., unwarlike.
imber, -bris, m., a shower, rain.
immemor, -oris, adj., with gen., forgetful, forgetful of.
imensus, -a, -un, adj., boundless, vast.
immortalis, -e, adj., immortal.
impedimentum, -i, n., in the sing., hindrance, in the pl., baggage.
impedio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, entangle, hamper, hinder.
impeditus, -a, -um, adj., hindered.
impendeo, -ere, -posui, -positum, impose, inflict upon.
imperium, -ii, n., dominion power, sovereignty: order, command: empire.
impero, -are, -avi, -atum, with dat., order, command.
impetus, -us, m., an attack.
impiger, -gra, -grum, adj., active, energetic.
impluvium, -ii, n., an impluvium (see Bk. 1, p. 82).
impono, -ere, -posui, -positum, impose, inflict upon.
imus, -a, -um, superl. Adj., the bottom of, lowest.
in, prep. with acc., against, into: with abl., in, on, within: in dies, daily:
in praeceps, headlong.
incendo, -ere, -cendi, -censum, set on fire, burn.
incipio, -ere, incepi, inceptum, begin.
incitatus, -a, -um, adj., aroused, encouraged.
includo, -ere, -clusi, -clusum, shut in, imprison.
incola, -ae, c., an inhabitant.
incolo, -ere, -colui, −, inhabit, live in, dwell in.
incolumis, -e, adj., safe, unhurt.
incursion, -onis, f., an attack, an assault.
incursus, -are, -avi, -atum, dash against, strike against.
inde, adv., from there, thence: then.
index, -icis, m., a title, see titulus.
indico, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, declare publicly, proclaim.
indutiae, -arum, f. pl., a truce.
ineo, -ire, -ii, -itum, enter, go into: consilium inire, to form a plan.
infero, inferred, intuli, illatum, bring forward, bring in: se inferred, to run forward: causam inferred, to seek a pretext.
inficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, dye, stain.
infra, adv. and prep. with acc., below.
ingens, -entis, adj., huge, immense.
ingredi, ingredi, ingressus sum, enter.
inicio, -ere, inieci, iniectum, enter into, throw upon.
inimicus, -as, -um, adj., hostile.
iniuria, -ae, f., injury, wrong.
iniuria, adv., wrongfully, unjustly.
iniustus, -a, -um, adj., unjust, unfair.
inocens, -entis, adj., innocent.
inquam, defective vb., I say: inquit, he says, he said.
insania, -ae, f., madness.
insanus, -a, -um, adj., mad.
insidia, -arum, f. pl., an ambush, a trap.
insula, -ae, f., an island.
invellego, -ere, intellexi, intellectum, know, find out, understand.
inter, prep. with acc., among, between, within.
intercession, -onis, f., a tribune’s veto (see p. 198).
interpello, -are, -avi, -atum, interrupt.
intro, -are, -avi, -atum, enter.
nutilis, -e, adj., useless.
invenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum, find, come upon.
invidia, -ae, f., envy, hatred, jealousy.
inviso, -are, -avi, -atum, entertain, invite.
invisus, -a, -um, adj., against one’s will, unwilling.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, pron. and adj., he himself, she herself: self (see p. 96).
ira, -ae, f., anger.
irasceor, irasci, iratus sum, with dat., be angry, be angry with.
iratus, -a, -um, adj., angry.
is, ea, id, dem, adj. and pron., tha: he, she, it.
iste, ista, istud, dem. adj. and pron., that, that of yours (see p. 96).
ita, adv., in this way, so, thus.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy.
itque, adv., usually first word, therefore, accordingly, and so.
iter, itineris, n., a journey, a way.
iterum, adv., a second time, again.
lulus, -i, m., Iulus, son of Aeneas.
iaceo, -ere, -ui, -itum, lie.
iacio, -ere, ieci, iatum, throw.
iacto, -are, -avi, -atum, throw, cast: discuss, boast.
iactus, -a, -um, adj., thrown.
iam, adv., already, now.
Ianiculum, -i, n., the Janiculum, one of the seven hills of Rome.
Ianus, -i, m., Janus, an early Italian deity.
iudeo, -ere, iussi, iussum, command, order.
iucundus, -a, -um, adj., agreeable, pleasant.
iudex, -icis, c., a judge, a juryman.
iungo, -ere, iunxi, iunctum, join, unite, yoke.
iugum, -i, n., the yoke.
Iuno, -onis, f., Juno, wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods.
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, the chief god of the Romans.
iure, adv., legally, rightfully.
iurium, -ii, n., a quarrel.
ius, iuris, n., justice, law, right.
iussu (abl. used as adv.), by command, by order.
iussum, -i, n., a command, an order.
iustus, -a, -um, adj., just, correct.
invenis, -e, adj., young: as a noun, c., a young person, a youth.
iuvo, -are, iuvi, iutum, aid, help.
labor, -oris, m., a work, a task, toil.
laboro, -are, -avi, -atum, toil, work.
labrum, -i, n., a lip.
labyrinthus, -i, m., a labyrinth.
lac, lactis, n., milk.
lacer, -era, -erum, adj., torn, mutilated.
lacero, -are, -avi, -atum, tear apart, tear to pieces.
lacrima, -ae, f., a tear.
lautus, -a, -um, adj., glad, happy.
laevus, -a, -um, adj., left.
lambo, -ere, lambi, –, lick.
lapis, -idis, m., a stone.
later, -eris, m., a brick.
latine, adv., in Latin, into Latin.
Latinus, -a, -um, adj., Latin.
Latium, -ii, n., Latium, a country in Italy in which Rome was situated.
Latona, -ae, f., Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.
latro, -onis, m., a brigand, a robber.
latus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.
laudo, -are, -avi, -atum, praise.
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory.
lectus, -i, m., a couch, a bed.
legatus, -i, m., an officer, an envoy.
legio, -onis, f., a legion: a division of Roman infantry consisting of ten cohorts and numbering, in theory, approximately 5,000 men.
lego, -ere, legi, lectum, read.
leo, -onis, m., a lion.
lepus, -oris, m., a hare.
Lerna, -ae, f., Lerna, a forest and marsh near Argos in Greece.
lex, legis, f., a law, a statute.
libenter, adv., willingly.
liber, libri, m., a book.
liber, -era, -erum, adj., free.
liberatus, -a, -um, adj., with abl., freed from.
libere, adv., freely.
liberi, liberorum, m. pl., children.
libero, -are, -avi, -atum, set free.
libertas, -atis, f., freedom.
librarii, librarium, m. pl., scribes, professional copy-writers.
Libya, -ae, f., Libya, the northern part of Africa.
ligneus, -a, -um, adj., wooden.
lingua, -ae, f., a tongue: a language.
linter, -tris, f., a small boat, a skiff.
littera, -ae, f., in the sing., a letter (of the alphabet), in the pl., a letter (epistle), literature.
litus, -oris, n., the sea shore, the beach.
locus, -i, m., a place, a position: also n. pl., form loca, -orum, climate, regions.
longe, adv., far away: greatly, utterly.
longus, -a, -um, adj., long.
loquor, loqui, locutus sum, speak.
lorum, -i, n., a thong: in the pl., reins.
Luceria, -ae, f., Luceria, a town in Apulia in Italy.
ludo, -ere, lusi, lusum, play.
ludus, -i, m., in the sing., a game, a school, in the pl., public games.
lumen, -inis, n., light.
lupa, -ae, f., a she-wolf.
lupus, -i, m., a wolf.
lux, lucis, f., light: prima lux, daybreak, dawn.
lydus, -a, -um, adj., Lydian, of Lydia, a country in Asia Minor.

magicus, -a, -um, adj., magic.
magister, -tri, m., a master, a teacher.
magnificus, -a, -um, adj., splendid.
magnitude, -inis, f., greatness, size, power.
magnopere, adv., greatly: comp., magic, more, rather: superl.,
maxime, most, very, especially.
magnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large, important.
males, adv., badly.
males dico, -ere, dixi, dictum, with dat., abuse, slander.
malo, malle, malui, -., prefer.
malum, -i, n., an apple.
malus, -a, -um, adj., bad.
mendo, -are, -avi, -atum, entrust: se fugae mandare, to flee.
mensos, -ere, mansi, mansum, stay, remain.
manso, -are, avi, -., flow, be wet with.
manus, -us, f., a hand: a corps (of soldiers).
Marcus, -i, m., Marcus.
mare, maris, n., the sea.
marinus, -a, -um, adj., of the sea, marine.
maritimus, -a, -um, adj., maritime, of the sea.
Mars, Martis, m., Mars, the god of war and father of Romulus.
Martius, -a, -um, adj., martial, warlike, belonging to Mars.
massa, -ae, f., a mass, a lump.
mater, matris, f., a mother.
matrionium, -ii, n., marriage: in matrimonium ducere, to marry (man as the subject). See also nubo.
Medea, -ae, f., Medea, daughter of king Aeetes.
mediterraneus, -a, -um, adj., inland (opp. to maritimus).
medius, -a, -um, adj., middle.
Medusa, -ae, f., Medusa, one of the Gorgons.
memento, imper. of defective vb., memini, remember.
memoria, -ae, f., memory: tenere memoria, to remember.
mensa, -ae, f., a table.
mensis, -is, m., a month.
mercator, -oris, m., a merchant.
Mercurius, -ii, m., Mercury, the messenger of the gods.
meridies, meridiei, m., midday.
metuo, -ere, metui, –, fear.
metus, -us, m., fear.
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj., my, mine.
Midas, -ae, m., Midas, a king of Phrygia.
miles, -it is, c., a soldier.
Miletus, -i, f., Miletus, a city in Asia Minor.
milia, milium, n. pl., thousands: tria milia passuum three miles.
mille, indecl. adj., a thousand: mille passus, a mile.
millensimus, -a, -um, adj., thousandth.
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, goddess of the arts, of wisdom and of spinning.
minime, adv., least.
minor, minari, minatus sum, threaten.
Minos, Minois, m., Minos, a king of Crete.
minotaurus, -i, m., the minotaur, a monster, half-man, half-beast.
minus, adv., less.
mirabilis, -e, adj., marvelous, wonderful.
miror, mirari, miratus sum, with acc. and infin., wonder, wonder at, be surprised.
misceo, -ere, -ui, mixtum, mix.
miser, -era, -erum, adj., miserable, wretched, poor.
misericordia, -ae, f., pity.
mittis, -e, adj., kindly, merciful.
mitto, -ere, misi, missum, send.
modo, adv., lately, just now: only, almost: non modo … sed etiam, not only … but also.
omenia, -ium, n. pl., town walls, fortifications.
omneo, -ere, -ui, -itum, advise, warn.
omns, montis, m., a mountain, a hill.
omstro, -are, -avi, -atum, show, point out.
omstrum,-i, n., a monster.
omra, -ae, f., delay: sine mora, without delay, immediately.
omdeo, -ere, momordi, morsum, bite, sting.
omrior, mori, mortus sum (fut. partic., moriturus), die.
omro, morari, moratus sum, delay.
omrs, mortis, f., death.
omtalis, -e, adj., mortal: in the pl., mankind.
omtuus, -a, -um, adj., dead: mortui, the dead.
mos, moris, m., a custom: in pl., customs, character.
moveo, -ere, movi, motum, move (trans.).
mox, adv., soon.
mulier, -eris, f., a woman.
multitude, -inis, f., a number, crowd, population.
multo, adv., by much, much.
multum, adv., much, greatly, considerably.
multus, -a, -um, adj., much: in pl., many.
mundus, -i, m., the universe, the world.
munio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, fortify, defend, protect.
munus, -eris, n., a gift.
murus, -i, m., a wall.
Musa, -ae, f., a Muse, a goddess.
muto, -are, -avi, -atum, change.
Mycenae, -arum, f. pl., Mycene, a city in Argolis in Greece.
Mycenaean, -a, -um, adj., Mycenean, of Mycene.
nam, namque, conj., usually first word, for.
narro, -are, -avi, -atum, narrate, tell.
nato, -are, -avi, -atum, swim.
natus, -a, -um, adj., born.
nauta, -ae, m., a sailor.
navigo, -are, -avi, -atum, sail.
navis, -is, f., a boat: naves solvere (see solvo), to set sail.
Naxos, -i, f., Naxos, an island in the Aegean Sea.
-ne, enclitic: used to introduce a question to which the answer may be positive or negative.
ne, negative used with the jussive subjunctive, not.
ne, conj., used the subjunctive, lest, that ... not.
ne ... quidem, adv., not ... even.
nec, conj., and not, nor (see neque).
nefas, indecl. noun, n., wrong, impiety.
neglego, -ere, -lexi, -lectum, neglect.
nego, -are, -avi, -atum, deny.
nemo, c., no one, nobody.
nepos, -otis, m., a grandson: in general, a descendant.
Neptunus, -i, m., Neptune, the god of the sea.
neque, (nec), conj., and not, nor.
neque ... neque, nec ... nec, nether ... nor: neque enim, for ... not.
nescio, -re, -scivi, -scitum, do not know, am ignorant of.
neu, conj., and not, nor (see neve).
neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., and pron., neither (of two).
neve (neu), conj., and not, nor: neve ... neve, neu ... neu, neither ... nor.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black.
nihil, indecl. noun, n., nothing.
nimis, adv., too much.

Nioba, -ae, f., Niobe, queen of Thebes.
nisi, conj., unless: except.
nix, nivis, f., snow.
nobilis, -e, adj., famous, noble.

noli (sing.), nolite (pl.), imper. of nolo, be unwilling, do not (with infin.).

nolo, nolle, nolui, —, do not wish, be unwilling.
nomen, -inis, n., a name: nomine, by name, named. (See also p. 211).

nomino, -are, -avi, -atum, name.

non, adv., not: non iam, no longer, not now.

non modo ... sed etiam, advs., not only ... but also.
nonagensimus, -a, -um, adj., ninetieth.
nonaginta, indecl. num. adj., ninety.
nondum, adv., not yet.
nongentensimus, -a, -um, adj., nine hundredth.
nongenti, -ae, -a, adj., nine hundred.
nonne, adv., used in questions expecting a positive answer.

nonnullus, -a, -um, pron. adj., some, several, many a ...
nonus, -a, -um, adj., ninth.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., our, ours.

nota, -ae, f., a mark, a brand.
novem, indecl. num. adj., nine.

November, -bris, -bre, adj., of November.
novendecim, indecl. num. adj., nineteen.
noverca, -ae, f., a stepmother.
novitas, -atis, f., strangeness.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new, recent.

nox, noctis, f., night.
nubes, nubis, f., a cloud.
nubo, -ere, nupsi, nuptum, with dat., marry (woman as subject).
nullus, -a, -um, adj., not any, no.
num, adv., used in questions expecting a negative answer.
numen, -inis, n., deity, divine majesty, divine power.
numerus, -i, m., a number.
numquam, adv., never.
nunc, adv., now.

nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, announce, report.
nuntius, -ii, m., a messenger: news
nusquam, adv., nowhere.

O, interj., O! Oh!
ob, prep. with acc., on account of.
oborior, oboriri, obtorutus sum, appear, rise up before.
obscerus, -a, -um, adj., dark.
obsecro, -are, -avi, -atum, beg.
obses, -idis, c., a hostage.
obsideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, besiege, blockade.
obtrunco, -are, -avi, -atum, slaughter.
ocasio, -onis, f., an opportunity.
occido, -ere, -cidi, -cism, kill.
occupo, -are, -avi, -atum, seize, gain possession of.
octatus, -a, -um, adj., eighth.
oc tingentensimus, -a, -um, adj., eight hundredth.
oc tingenti, -ae, -a, adj., eight hundred.
icto, indecl. num. adj., eight.
October, -bris, -bre, adj., of October.
octodecim, indecl. num. adj., eighteen.
oc tingentensimus, -a, -um, adj., eightieth.
oc toginta, indecl. num. adj., eighty.
occulus, -i, m., an eye.
odit, defective vb., he hates.
offendo, -ere, -fendi, -fensum, hurt, annoy.
offero, offere, obtuli, oblatum, offer.
olim, adv., once upon a time, formerly.
Olympus, -i, m., Olympus, a mountain in Greece, regarded as the home of the gods.
omen, -inis, n., a sign, an omen.
omnis, -e, adj., all, every.
onus, -eris, n., a burden, a weight.
opem, opis, f., in the sing., help, in the pl., wealth, resources.
oppidum, -i, n., a town.
opprimo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, overpower, overwhelm, strike down.
oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum, attack, assault, assail.
opto, -are, -avi, -atum, choose, desire, seek.
opus, -eris, n., work, labour.
ora, -ae, f., the sea shore, the coast.
oraculum, -i, n., an oracle, a prophecy: the place where oracles were delivered. i.e. the Oracle (see p. 178).
oratio, -onis, f., a speech.
orator, -oris, m., a speaker, an orator, an ambassador.
orbis, -is, m., a circle: orbis terrarum, the world (i.e. the earth.)
orbus, -a, -um, adj., bereaved, parentless: as a noun, c., an orphan.
Orcus, -i, m., Orcus, the Lower World, abode of the Dead.
ordior, ordiri, orsus sum, begin.
ordo, -inis, m., arrangement, method, order.
Orion, -onis, m., Orion, a famous huntsman, later a constellation.
orior, oriri, ortus sum, arise.
orro, -are, -avi-atum, adorn, equip, fit out.
oro, -are, -avi, -atum, ask, ask for, beg, request.
os, ossis, n., a bone.
Ovidius, -ii, m., Ovid, the Roman poet.

Pactolus, -i, m., the Pactolus, a river in Lydia.
paene, adv., almost, nearly.
Pagina, -ae, f., a page.
Palatinus, -a, -um, adj., Palatinus: the Palatine.
Palatium, -ii, n., the Palatine, one of the seven hills of Rome: also the Palace on the Palatine.
pallesco, -ere, pallui, —, turn pale.
parco, -ere, peperci, parsurn, with dat., spare.
parens, entis, c., a parent.
pareo, -ere, -ui, -itum, with dat., obey.
Paris, -idis, m., Paris, son of Priam, who carried off Helen to Troy.
pardo, -are, -avi, -atum, acquire: prepare, prepare for.
pars, parties, f., a part, a share: a side, direction.
parum, adv., too little.
parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little.
passus, -us, m., a pace: mille passus, a thousand paces, i.e. a mile.
pastor, -oris, m., a shepherd.
pater, patris, m., a father.
paternus, -a, -um, adj., father’s, of a father.
patrior, pati, passus sum, suffer: allow, permit.
patria, -ae, f., a country, a native-land.
auci, -ae, -a, adj., few.
paulo, adv., by a little, a little.
paulum, adv., little.
pauper, -eris, adj., poor.
pax, pacis, f., peace.
pecco, -are, -avi, -atum, do wrong, sin.
pecunia, -ae, f., money, wealth.
pecus, -oris, n. and -udis, f., cattle (see Bk. 1. p. 114).
pegasusus, -i, m., Pegasus, a winged horse.
Peleus (2 syllab.), -ie, m., Peleus, father of Achilles.
penitus, adv., utterly, thoroughly.
penetro, -are, -avi, -atum, make one’s way into, penetrate.
per, prep. with acc., through, along, by means of.
pera, -ae, f., a bag, a wallet.
peregrinus, -a, -um, adj., foreign.
pereo, -ire, perii, peritum, perish, be killed.
perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum, accomplish, complete, finish.
perfidia, -ae, f., treachery, deceit.
perfidus, -a, -um, adj., treacherous.
Pergamena (sc. Membrane), -ae, f., parchment (see pp. 67-68).
prego, -ere, perrexi, perrectum, continue, proceed, advance.
periculosus, -a, -um, adj., dangerous.
periculum, -i, n., danger, peril, risk.
peristylium, -i, n., a peristyle, the garden of a Roman house.
peritus, -a, -um, adj., skilful: with gen., skilled in.
pernicies, perniciei, f., destruction, disaster.
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., uninterrupted, permanent.
Perseus, (2 syllab.), -ei, m., Perseus, son of Jupiter and Danae.
persuadeo, -ere, suasi, -suasum, with dat., advise, persuade.
perterritus, -a, -um, adj., greatly frightened, terrified.
pes, pedis, m., a foot.
peto, -ere, petivi or petii, petitum, attack: make for (i.e., a place): ask, ask for, request.
Phaethon, -ontis, m., Phaethon, the son of Apollo.
Philippi, -orum, m. pl., Philippi, a city in Greece.
Phoebus, -i, m., Phoebus, Phoebus Apollo.
Phrixus, -i, m., Phrixus, brother of Helle.
Phryges, -um, m. pl., the Phrygians, a people of Asia Minor.
pictura, -ae, f., a picture.
piger, -gra, -grum, adj., lazy.
pirata, -ae, m., a pirate.
piscis, piscis, m., a fish.
placeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, with dat., please.
plebs, plebis, f., the common people.
Pleiades, -um, f. pl., the Pleiades, seven daughters of Atlas and Plenione: later, a constellation.
plenus, -a, -um, adj., full: with gen. or abl., full of.
plerique, -aeque, -aque, adj., most, most of.
plumbumalbum, -i-i, n., tin.
Pluto, -onis, m., Pluto, king of the Lower World.
poena, -ae, f., a punishment, a penalty: poenas dare, to pay a penalty.
Poenus, -a, -um, adj., Carthaginian.
poeta, -ae, m., a poet.
Pompous, -ii, m., Pompey.
pomum, -i, n., an apple.
pondus, -eris, n., weight.
one, adv., and prep. with acc., after, behind.
pons, pontis, m., a bridge.
Pontius, -ii, m., Pontius, a Samnite leader.
populus, -i, m., a nation, a people: pl., tribes, peoples.
porcus, -i, m., a pig.
porta, -ae, f., a door, a gate.
porto, -are, -avi, -atum, bring, carry.
portus, -us, m., a harbour.
posco, -ere, poposci, —, demand.
possum, posse, potui, —, to able, can.
post, adv., and prep. with acc., afterwards, later: behind, after.
postea, adv., afterwards.
postquam, conj., after.
postulo, -are, -avi, -atum, demand.
potestas, -atis, f., power: in potestatem venire, to fall into the power of.
potius, potiri, potitus sum, with abl., sometimes gens., to get possession of.
potius, adv., rather.
praeterea, adv., moreover.
praetereo, -ere, -ui, -itum, go past.
praetor, -oris, m., a praetor.
precem (rare), —, f., a prayer: more commonly in pl., preces, prayers.
pretiosus, -a, -um, adj., valuable.
primo, adv., at first.
primum, adv., first, in the first place.
primus, -a, -um, adj., first: primi, the chief men: quam primum, as quickly as possible.
princeps, -ipis, c., a chief, a leader: as an adj., first, chief.
pro, prep. with abl., in front of: on behalf of: in return for: before.
procedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, advance, go forward.
proconsul, -is, m., a proconsul (see p. 197).
procul, adv., after, at a distance.
proelium, -ii, n., a battle.
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out.
profluo, -ere, -ifluxi, —, flow.
progredior, progredi, progressus sum, advance.
prohibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, stop, prevent: with infinit., prevent from.
proicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum, throw into, throw away: se proicere, to throw oneself into.
proles, prolis, f., descendants, offspring.
promitto, -ere, -misi, -missum, promise.
prope, adv., and prep. with acc., almost, nearly: near.
propero, are, -avi, -atum, hasten, hurry.
proprietor, -oris, m., a proprietor.
proprius, -a, -um, adj., one’s own, personal.
propter, adv., and prep. with acc., close by, near: on account of.
Proserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina, daughter of Ceres.
protego, -ere, -texti, -pectum, protect.
publicus, -a, -um, adj., public.
Publius, -ii, m., Publius.
pulla, -ae, f., a girl.
puer, -eri, m., a boy: a slave.
puerilis, -e, adj., childish.
pugna, -ae, f., a battle.
pugno, -are, -avi, -atum, fight.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.
pulchre, adv., beautifully, finely.
puto, -are, -avi, -atum, think, suppose, consider.
Pyrrha, -ae, f., Pyrrha, wife of Deucalion.

quadragensimus, -a, -um, adj., fortieth.
quadraginta, indecl. num. adj., forty.
quadringentensimus, -a, -um, adj., four hundredth.
quadringenti, -ae, a, adj., four hundred.
quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum, inquire, seek, look for, ask.
quaestor, -oris, m., a quaestor.
quam, adv. and conj. Interrog., how?: rel., as, than: with superls., as ... as possible.quamdiu, adv., interrog., how long?: rel. as long as.
quamquam, conj., although.quando, interrog. adv., when? Si quando, if at any time, whenever.quantus, -a, -um, adj., how great? how large?quartus, -a, -um, adj., fourth.quartus decimus (both words all genders), adj., fourteenth.quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four.quattuordecim, indecl. num adj., fourteenth.-que, enclitic: conj., and.querela, -ae, f., a complaint.queror, queri, questus sum, complain.qui, quae, quod, interrog. adj., which? what?qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, that.quia, conj. because.quicquid, pron., whatever.quidem, adv., indeed, at least: ne ... quidem, not ... even.quindecimus, -a, -um, adj., fiftieth.quinque, indecl. num. adj., five.quintus, -a, -um, adj., fifth.quintus decimus (both words all genders), adj., fifteenth.quis, quis, quid, interrog. pron., who? which? what?: indef. Use, ne quis, lest anyone.quinquagimensimus, -a, -um, adj., fiftieth.quinquaginta, indecl. num. adj., fifty.quingentensimus, -a, -um, adj., five hundredth.quingenti, -ae, -a, adj., five hundred.quo, interrog. adv., whither? where ... to?: conj. with comparatives in final clauses, in order that, that: quo ... eo (lit.), by which ... by that.quomodo, interrog. adv., how? in what way?quoque, conj., also.quot, indecl. interrog. adj., how many?quotannis, adv., every year, yearly.quotiens, quoties, interrog. adv., how often?radix, -icis, f., a root.rado, -ere, rasi, rasum, shave.ramus, -i, m., a bough, a branch.rapio, -ere, rapui, raptum, carry off, seize.recedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, retreat.
**recipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum**, recover, receive: **se recipere**, to retreat.

**recito, -are, -avi, -atum**, read aloud.

**recordor, recordari, recordatus sum**, remember.

**redo, -ere, reddidi, redditum**, give back: translate.

**redeo, -ire, redii, reditum**, return.

**reduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum**, lead back.


**regia, -ae, f.**, a palace.

**regio, onis, f.**, a district, a region.

**regina, -ae, f.**, a queen.

**regius, -a, -um**, adj., royal.

**regno, -are, -avi, -atum**, rule, reign, be king.

**regnum, -i, n.**, a kingdom.

**rego, -ere, rexi, rectum**, rule.

**regredior, regredi, regressus sum**, return.

**relevo, -are, -avi, -atum**, satisfy (*hunger, thirst, etc.*).

**relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictum**, abandon, leave.

**reliquus, -a, -um**, adj., the other, remaining.

**remio, -e, -misi, -missum**, send back: let go, relax.

**remus, -i, m.**, an oar.

**reor, reri, ratus sum**, think.

**reporto, -are, -avi, -atum**, carry back.

**repetinus, -a, -um**, adj., sudden.

**reperio, -ire, repperi, repertum**, find.

**repletus, -a, -um**, adj., filled.

**res, rei, f.**, a thing, matter, property: **res Romana**, the Roman State. **re vera**, adv. phrase, in truth, really.

**resisto, -ere, -stiti, —, with dat., resist, withstand.**

**respondeo, -ere, respondi, responsum**, answer, reply.

**responsum, -i, n.**, an answer, a reply.

**respublica, reipublicae, f.**, the republic, the state.

**resto, -are, -stiti, —, remain, be left over.**

**rete, retis, n.**, a net.

**retineo, -ere, -ui, retentum**, keep, keep back.

**revoco, -are, -avi, -atum**, call back: recall.

**rex, Regis, m.**, a king.

**ripa, -ae, f.**, a bank (*of a river*)

**robur, -oris, n.**, oak: strength.
rogo, -are, -avi, -atum, ask, ask for.
Roma, -ae, f., Rome.
Romanus, -a, -um, adj., Roman: Romani, the Romans.
Romulus, -i, m., Romulus, founder and first king of Rome.
rostra, -orum, n. pl., the Rostra, a raised platform.
ruo, -ere, rui, -rutum, rush on, hasten.
rursus, adv., again.
rus, ruris, n., the country, the countryside.

Sabinus, -a, -um, adj., Sabine (see Samnites).
sacer, -cra, -cram, adj., sacred.
sacra, sacrocum, n. pl., (adj., used as a noun), sacred rites.
sacrificio, -are, -avi, -atum, sacrifice, offer to the gods.
saepe, adv., often.
saepto, -ire, saepsi, saeptum, block up, barricade.
saevus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, savage.
sagitta, -ae, f., an arrow.
sal, salis, m., in the sing., salt, in the pl., intellectual cleverness, wit.
salus, -utis, f., safety.
saluto, -are, -avi, -atum, hail.
Samnites, -ium, m. pl., the Samnites, a tribe of central Italy. Eng. Adj., Sabine.
sapiens, -entis, adj., wise.
sapientia, ae, f., wisdom.
Sardes, -ium, f. pl., Sardis, the capital of Lydia.
satis, adv., enough, sufficient, sufficiently.
saxum, -i, n., a rock: a monument.
scapha, -ae, f., a small boat, a skiff.
sceleratus, -a, -um, adj., rascally.
scelus, -eris, n., a crime.
scilicet, adv., of course.
socio, -ire, scivi, scitum, know.
scopulus, -i, m., a rock, a cliff.
scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write.
scriptor, -oris, m., a writer.
scutum, -i, n., a shield.
se, reft. Pron., himself, herself, themselves.
secundus, -a, -um, adj., second: favourable.
sed, conj., but.
sedecim, indecl. num. adj., sixteen.
sedeo, -ere, sedi, sessum, sit, sit down.
sedile, -is, n., a seat.
semper, adv., always.

senator, -oris, m., a Senator.

senatus, -us, m., the Senate.

senex, senis, m., an old man: as an adj., old.

sentential, -ae, f., an opinion, a purpose: a sentence.

sentio, -ire, sensi, sensum, know, perceive, think, see.

sepelio, -ire, -pelivi, -pultum, bury.

septem, indecl. num. adj., seven.

September, -bris, -bre, adj., of September.

septendecim, indecl. num. adj., seventeen.

septimus, -a, -um, adj., seventh.

septimius decimus (both words all genders), adj., seventeenth.

septingenisimus, -a, -um, adj., seven hundredth.

septingenti, -ae, -a, adj., seven hundred.

septuagensimus, -a, -um, adj., seventieth.

septuaginta, indecl. num. adj., seventy.

sequo, sequi, secutus sum, follow.

servo, -are, -avi, -atum, save, keep.

servus, -i, m., a slave.

sescentimus, -a, -um, adj., six hundredth.

sescenti, -ae, -a, adj., six hundred.

sex, indecl. num. adj., six.

sexagenisimus, -a, -um, adj., sixtieth.

sexaginta, indecl. num. adj., sixty.

Sextus, -i, m., Sextus.

sextus, -a, -um, adj., sixth.

sextus decimus (both words all gender), adj., sixteenth.

si, conj., if: si vis, please.

sic, adv., so, thus, yes.

cynos, -a, -um, adj., dry: siccum, -i, n., dry land.

gignum, -i, n., a signal: in pl., military standards.

silentium, -ii, n., silence.

Silenus, -i, m., Silenus, guardian of Bacchus.

silva, -ae, f., a wood.

similis, -e, adj., like, similar.
simplex, -icus, adj., simple.
simul, adv., at the same time, together, at once.
sine, prep. with abl., without.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left, left-hand side: sinistra, abl., on the left.
Sirius, -ii, m., Sirius, the Dog-star.
sitis, sitis, f., thirst.
situs, -a, -um, adj., lying, situate.
societas, -atis, f., alliance, union.
socius, -ii, m., a companion, an ally.
sol, solis, m., the sun.
solitudo, inis, f., a wilderness: solitude.
solus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.
solve, -ere, solvi, solutum, loose: naves solvere, to set sail.
soror, -oris, f., a sister.
sors, sortis, f., one's lot (in life): chance, destiny.
species, speciei, f., shape, form: appearance, display.
spectaculum, -i, n., a public show, a spectacle.
specto, -are, -avi, -atum, look at, behold.
speculum, -i, n., a mirror.
spero, -are, -avi, -atum, hope.
spes, spei, f., hope.
sponte, adv., of one's own accord, voluntarily.
statim, adv., immediately.
statua, -ae, f., a statue.
stella, -ae, f., a star.
stilus, -i, m., a pen (see p. 68): stilum verto, -ere, verti, versum, correct.
stimulus, -i, m., a good.
sto, stare, steti, statum, stand.
stramentum, -i, n., straw.
strangulo, -are, - avi, -atum, strangle, throttle.
 studiosus, -a, -um, adj., eager, keen.
 stadium, -ii, n., eagerness, zeal: study (i.e. work).
stultus, -a, -um, adj., silly, foolish.
stupeo, -ere, stupui, —, be confounded, be stupefied.
suadeo, -ere, suasi, suasum, with dat., advise, persuade.
sub, prep. with acc., up to, close to, towards (of time).
sub, prep. with abl., under.
subdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, put under, plunge beneath.
subdeo, -ire, subii, subitum, go to, undergo.
subiecti, -ae, a, adj., lying near: subiecti, subject peoples.
subito, *adv.*, suddenly.
subsido, -ere, -sedi, -sessum, abate, settle down, sink down.
subter, *adv.*, and prep. with acc. and abl., under, beneath.
sum, esse, fui, (*fut. partic., futurus*), be.
summus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, topmost, highest: very great.
sumo, -ere, sumpsi, sumptum, acquire, take.
super, *adv.*, and prep. with acc. and abl., above, over upon.
superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, proud, haughty.
supero, -are, -avi, -atum, overcome, conquer, surpass.
supersum, -esse, -fui, *with dat.*, survive.
supra, *adv.*, and prep. with acc., above, beyond.
supremus, -a, -um, *superl. Adj.*, last.
suscipio, -ere, suscepi, susceptum, undertake.
suspendo, -ere, -pendi, -pensum, hang up.
sustineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, endure, hold out against, withstand.
suus, -a, -um, *refl. Poss. adj.*, his, her, its, their own.
taberna, -ae, *f.*, a shop.
tablinum, -i, *n.*, a tablinum, the study of a Roman house.
tabula, -ae, *f.*, a document: a picture.
taceo, -ere, -ui, -itum, be silent, keep quiet.
talaria, -ium, *n. pl.*, winged sandals.
talis, -e, *adj.*, such.
tam, *adv. (used with adjs. and advs.)*, so: tam ... quam, so ... as.
tamen, *conj.*, nevertheless, however, yet.
Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames.
tandum, *adv.*, at last, at length.
Tantalus, -i, *m.*, Tantalus, son of Jupiter.
tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great.
tantum, *adv.*, only.
tarpeius, -ii, *m.*, Tarpeius.
Tartara, -orum, *n. pl.*, the Lower World.
taurus, -i, *m.*, a bull.
tellus, -uris, *f.*, the earth.
telum, -i, *n.*, a weapon, a javelin.
temperatus, -a, -um, *adj.*, mild, temperate.
tempestas, -atis, *f.*, the weather: a storm.
templum, -i, *n.*, a temple.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time: an occasion, opportunity.
tenebrae, -arum, *f. pl.*, darkness.
teneo, -ere, -ui, tentum, hold, retain, keep.
tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender, young.
tento, -are, -avi, -atum, try.
tenuis, -e, adj., thin: shallow.
tergum, -i, n., a back: a tergo, in the rear.
terra, -ae, f., earth: the earth: region.
terreo, -ere, -ui, -itum, frighten.
terribilis, -e, adj., dreadful, terrible, frightful.
tertius, -a, -um, adj., third.
tertius decimus (both words all genders), adj., thirteenth.
theatrum, -i, n., a theatre.
Thebea, -arum, f. pl., Thebes, the capital of Boeotia, in Greece.
Thebaides, -um, f. pl., the women of Thebes.
Thebanus, -a, -um, adj., Theban.
Themis, -idis, f., Themis, the goddess of justice and prophecy.
thesaurus, -i, m., a treasure: a treasure-house.
Theseus (2-syllab.), ei, m., Theseus, son of Aegaeus and Aethra.
Thetis, -idis, f., Thetis, wife of Peleus and mother of Achilles.
Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber, the river flowing through Rome.
timeo, -ere, -ui, —, fear, be afraid of.
timidus, -a, -um, adj., frightened.
tingo, -ere, tinxii, tintum, dye, tinge, colour.
titulus, -i, m., title, inscription, see index.
Titus Tatius, -i –ii, m., Titus Tatius, king of the Sabines.
tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatum, lift, pick up: remove, take away.
tot, indecl. adj., so many.
totidem, indecl. adj., just as many.
totiens, toties, adv., so often.
totus, -a, -um, adj., all, whole, the whole of.
trado, -ere, -didi, -ditum, hand over, give up, surrender.
tradunt, men say, they hand down, they relate.
traho, -ere, traxi, tractum, drag, draw.
trans, prep. with acc., across.
transseo, -ire, -ii, -itum, cross, go across, pass through.
transilio, -ire, -ui, —, jump over.
trecentensimus, -a, -um, adj., three hundredth.
trecenti, -ae, -a, adj., three hundred.
tredcem, indecl. num. adj., thirteen.
tremo, -ere, -ui, —, tremble.
tres, tres, trai, num. adj. pl., three.
tribus, -us, f., a tribe.
tribunus plebes, -i, -is, m., a tribune of the people.
tricentenimus, -a, -um, adj., three hundredth.
tricentenwi, -a, -um, adj., three hundredth.
triclinium, -i, n., a triclinium, the dining-room of a Roman house.
triginta, indecl. num. adj., thirty.
tristis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy, grim.
triste, adv., sadly.
Troezen, -enis, f., Troezen, a city in Greece.
Troia, -ae, f., Troy, a city in Asia Minor.
Troianus, -a, -um, adj., Trojan: Trojan: Trojan, the Trojans.
tu, pres. pron., nom. m. or f. sing., you.
Tullianum, -i, n., the Tullianum, the state prison of Rome

tum, adv., then, at that time.
tunc, adv., then.
turba, -ae, f., a crowd.
turbulentus, -a, -um, adj., stirred up, muddy.
tus, turis, n., incense, an offering of incense.
tuto, adv., safely.
tutus, -a, -um, adj., safe.
tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., your, yours.

ubi, interrog. adv. and conj., where? when.
ullus, -a, -um, adj., any.
ultimus, -a, -um, superl. adj., last.
ultra, adv., and prep. with acc., beyond.
ultro, adv., of one's own accord, voluntarily.
umbra, -ae, f., shade, shadow.
umquam, adv., ever.
una, adv., together: una cum, with abl., together with.
unda, -ae, f., a wave.
unde, interrog. adv., whence? where ... from?
undecim, indecl. num. adj., eleven.
undecimus, -a, -um, adj., eleventh.
undevicensimus, -a, -um, adj., nineteenth.
undeviginti, indecl. num. adj., nineteen.
unguentum, -i, n., an ointment.
unus, -a, -um, num. adj., sing. and pl., one.
urbs, urbis, f., a city.
uro, -ere, ussi, ustum, burn, set fire to.
usquam, adv., anywhere.
usus, -us, m., use, benefit.
ut, adv. and conj., how?: when, as, since: with the subj., that, in order that, so that.
uter, utra, utrum, adj. and pron., which (of two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj. and pron., both.
utilis, -e, adj., useful.
UTOR, UTI, USUS SUM, WITH ABL., USE, EMPLOY: POSSESS, ENJOY.
UXOR, -ORIS, F., A WIFE.

VAGITUS, -US, M., A CRYING, A WAILING.
VALE, VALETE, IMPER., GOOD-BYE! FAREWELL!
VALEO, -ERE, -EUI, -, BE IN HEALTH: BENE VALERE, TO BE WELL: MALE
VALERE, TO BE ILL.
VALIDUS, -A, -UM, ADJ., STRONG.
VANUS, -A, -UM, ADJ., FUTILE, VAIN.
VASTO, -ARE, -AVI, -ATUM, LAY WASTE, DESTROY, RAVAGE.
VEHEMENTER, ADV., BITTERLY.
VEL ... VEL, CONJ., EITHER ... OR: VEL, EVEN, OR.
VELA, -ORUM, N. PL., SALES.
VELUS, -ERIS, N., A FLEECE.
VELO, -ARE, -AVI, -ATUM, VEIL, COVER UP.
VELOX, -OCIS, ADJ., SWIFT.
VENDO, -ERE, -DIDI, -DITUM, SELL.
VENEFICA, -AE, F., A SORCERESS.
VENENUM, -I, N., POISON.
VENIA, -AE, F., PARDON.
VENIO, -IRE, VENI, VENTUM, COME.
VENUS, -ERIS, F., VENUS, GODDESS OF LOVE AND MOTHER OF AENEAS.
VER, VERIS, N., THE SPRING, SPRINGTIME.
VERBERO, -ARE, -AVI, -ATUM, BEAT, SCOURGE.
VERBUM, -I, N., A WORD.
VEREOR, VERERI, VERITUS SUM, FEAR.
Vergilius, -ii, M., Virgil.
VERTEX, -ICIS, M., A PEAK, A SUMMIT.
VERTO, -ERE, VERTI, VERSUM, TURN: TERGA VERTERE, TO FLEE: STILUM
VERTERE, TO CORRECT.
VERU, -US, N., A SPIT.
VERUM, CONJ., BUT.
VERUS, -A, -UM, ADJ., TRUE: VERA DICERE, TO SPEAK THE TRUTH: RE VERA, IN
TRUTH, REALLY.
EVENING.
VESTA, -AE, F., VESTA, GODDESS OF FIRE AND THE HEARTH.
VESTER, -TRA, -TRUM, POSS. PRON., YOUR, YOURS.
VESTIBULUM, -I, N., AN ENTRANCE, PASSAGE, PORCH.
VETO, -ARE, VETUI, VETITUM, FORBID.
VETUS, -ERIS, ADJ., OLD., OF LONG STANDING.
VI, ADV., VIOLENTLY.
via, -ae, f., a road, a way.
vicem, vices, f., change.
vicensimus, -a, -um, adj., twentieth.
vicinus, -a, -um, adj., near, neighbouring: vicini, neighbours.
victima, -ae, f., a victim.
victor, -oris, m., a conqueror, a victor: as adj., victorious.
victoria, -ae, f., a victory.
video, -are, vidi, visum, see, observe.
vdeor, videri, visus sum, seem.
vidua, -ae, f., a widow.
viduus, -a, -um, adj., bereaved.
vigilo, -are, -avi, -atum, keep watch.
viginti, indecl. num. adj., twenty.
villa, -ae, f., a country house, a residence.
vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum, bind, throw into chains.
vinco, -ere, vicī, victum, conquer, defeat.
vinculum, -i, n., a chain, a bond: in vincula iacere, to cast into prison.
vindico, -are, -avi, -atum, claim, demand, avenge.
vinum, -i, n., wine.
vir, viri, m., a man, a husband.
virga, -ae, f., a rod, a twig.
virgo, -inis, f., a maiden.
virtus, -utis, f., courage, valour: virtue.
vis, -f., force, strength, violence.
vita, -ae, f., life: e vita excedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, to die.
vitium, -ii, n., a fault.
vitrum, -i, n., woad.
vivo, -ere, vixi, victum, live.
vivus, -a, -um, adj., alive, living.
vix, adv., scarcely.
voco, -are, -avi, -atum, call, summon, invite.
volo, velle, volui, -e, wish.
volo, -are, -avi, -atum, fly.
volumen, inis, n., a book-roll, a volume.
voveo, -ere, vovi, votum, pray for (rare): vow.
vox, vocis, f., a voice.
Vulvanus, -i, m., Vulcan, god of fire.
vulgo, adv., generally, commonly.
vulnero, -are, -avi, -atum, wound.
vulneris, -eris, n., a wound.
vulture, -uris, m., a vulture.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

The nominative, genitive and gender of proper nouns will be found in the following vocabulary. Brief information about each noun will be found in the Latin-English vocabulary.

abandon, destituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum.
abate, subsido, -ere, -sedi, -sessum.
able (be), possum, posse, potui, —.
about, prep., de, with abl.
above, prep., supra, with acc.: super, with acc. and abl.: also used adverbially.
abundance, copia, -ae, f.
abuse, male dico, -ere, dixi, dictum, with dat.
accomplish, efficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum: perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum.
accord, of one’s own, adv., spontaneous, retrospect.
accordingly, adv., igitur (second word): itaque (first word).
account, on account of, prep., ob, propter, with acc.
acquire, sumo, -ere, sumpsi, sumptum.
Acrisius, Acrisius, -ii, m.
across, prep., trans, with acc.
active, adj., impiger, -gra, -grum.
add, addo, -ere, addidi, additum: adicio, -ere, adieci, adiectum.
admit, Confiteor, confiteri, confessus sum.
adorn, orno, -are, -avi, -atum.
adorned with gems, adj., gemmatus, -a, -um.
advance, procedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum: progredior, progredi,
progressus sum.
adverse, adj., adversus, -a, -um.
advise, moneo, -ere, -ui, -itum: suadeo, -ere, suasi, suasum and
persuadeo, both with dat.
aedile, aedilis, -is, m.
Aeetes, Aeetes, -ae, m.
Aegeus, Aegeus, -ei, m.
Aeneas, Aeneas, -ae, m.
Aeneid, the, Aeneis, -idis, f.
Aethra, Aethra, -ae, f.
afar, adv., procul.
afraid (be), timeo, -ere, -ui, —: vereor, vereri, veritus sum.
Africa, Africa, -ae, f.
after, conj., postquam: prep., post, with acc.: also used adverbially.
afterwards, adv., postea.
again, adv., iterum (a second time): rursus.
against, prep., contra, with acc.
against one’s will, adj., invitus, -a, -um.
age, an age, aetas, -atis, f.
agnomen, agnomen, -inis, n.
ago, adv., abhinc.
agree, consentio, -ire, -sensi, -sensum.
agreeable, adj., iucundus, -a, -um.
alas! Interj., eheu.
Alba Longa, Alba Longa, -ae ae, f.
Alban, adj., Albanus, -a, -um.
alive, adj., vivus, -a, -um.
all, adj., omnis, -e: all of, the whole, adj., totus, -a, -um: cunctus, -a,
-um.
alliance, societas, -atis, f.
allied forces, auxilia, -orum, n. pl.
allow, patior, pati, passus sum.
ally, socius, -ii, m.
almost, adv., paene, modo.
alone, adj., solus, -a, -um.
along, prep., per, with acc.
already, adv., iam.
also, *conj.*, *etiam, quoque*: not only ... *sed etiam.*
atar, *ara, -ae, f.*
although, *conj.*, *quamquam: cum, with subj.*
always, *adv.*, *semper.*
am (I), *sum, esse, fui, - - , (fut. partic., futurus).*
amazed, *adj.*, *attonitus, -a, -um.*
ambush, *insidiae, -arum, f. pl.*
among, *prep.*, *inter, with acc.*
Anchises, *Anchises, -ae, m.*
ancient, *adj.*, *antiquus, -a, -um*: the ancients, *antique.*
and, and also, *conj.*, *et, -que, atque, ac.*
Andromeda, *Andromeda, -ae, f.*
anger, *ira, -ae, f.*
angry, *adj.*, *iratus, -a, -um.*
angry with (be), *irascor, irasci, iratus sum, with dat.*
animal, *animal, -alis, n.*
announce, *nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum.*
annoy, *offendo, -ere, -fendi, -fensum.*
another’s, of, *adj.*, *alienus, -a, -um.*
answer (to), *respondeo, -ere, -di, responsum.*
answer, *responsum, -i, n.*
anxious, *adj.*, *anxius, -a, -um.*
any, *adj.*, *ullus, -a, -um.*
anywhere, *adv.*, *usquam.*
Apollo, *Apollo, -inis, m.*
appear, rise up, *oborior, oboriri, obortus sum.*
appearance, *species, speciei, f.*
apple, *malum, -i, n.; pomum, -i, n.*
appoint, *creo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
approach, *appropinquo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
Arcadia, *Arcadia, -ae, f.*
arena, *harena, -ae, f.*
Argo, *Argo, Argus, f.*
Argonauts, *Argonautae, -arum, m. pl.*
argue, *dissero, -ere, -serui, -sertum.*
argument, *controversia, -ae, f.*
Ariadne, *Ariadna, -ae, f.*
arise, *surgo, ere, surrexi, surrectum; orior, oriri, ortus sum.*
arm (limb), *brachium, -ii, n.*
armed, *adj.*, *armatus, -a, -um.*
arms (weapons), *arma, -orum, n. pl.*
avmy, *exercitus, ous, m.*
around, prep., circa, circum, with acc.: also used adverbially.
aroused, adj., incitatus, -a, -um.
arrangement, ordo, -inis, n.
arrival, adventus, -u, m.
arrive, advenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum.
arow, sagitta, -ae, f.
art, ars, artis, f.
as, conj., ut: so ... as, tam ... quam.
as yet, adv., adhuc.
ascend, ascendo, -ere, -di, ascensum.
ashe, cinis, -eris, m.
Asia, Asia, -ae, f.
ask, ask for, oro, -are, -avi, -atum
ask: peto, -ere, petivi or petii, petitum
ask, rogo, -are, -avi, -atum.
assault, incursio, -onis, f.
assemble, call together, convoco, -are, -avi, -atum
assemble, come together, convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum.
assemble, concilium, -ii, n.
Athenian, adj., Atheniensis, -e: the Athenians, Athenienses.
Athens, Athenae, -arum, f. pl.
Atlas, Atlas, -antis, m.
atrium, atrium, -ii, n.
attack (to), oppugno, -are, -avi, -atum: peto, -ere, petivi or petii, petitum: aggradior, aggredi, agressus sum.
attack, impetus, -us, m.: incursio, -onis, f.
augury, augurium, -ii, n.: an augury, augurium, -ii, n.
Aventine, Aventinus, -i, m.
avay, far away, adv., longe.
avful, adj., horribilis, -e.

Bacchus, Bacchus, -I, m.
back, tergum, -I, n.
bad, adj., malus, -a, -um.
badly, adv., male, graviter.
bag, pera, -ae, f.
baggage, impedimenta, -orum, n. pl.
ban (of a river), ripa, -ae, f.
barbarous, adj., barbarus, -a, -um.
barricade, saepio, -ire, saepsi, saeptum.
basilica, basilica, -ae, f.
battle, proelium, -ii, n.: pugna, -ae, f.
battle, line of, **acies, aciei, f.**
be, **sum, esse, fui, —, (fut. partic., futurus).**
bear, **fero, ferre, tuli, latum.**
beat, **fera, -ae, f.**
beast, **verbero, -are, -avi, atum.**
beautiful, **adj., pulcher, -chra, -chrum.**
beautifully, **adv., pulchre.**
because, **conj., quia.**
because of, **prep., ob, propter, with acc.**
become, **fio, fieri, factus sum.**
bearoom, **cubiculum, -i, n before, prep., ante, with acc.: also used adverbially: prep., prae, pro, with abl.**
beg, **obsecro, -are, -avi, -atum.**
beg, **incipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum: ordior, ordiri, orsus sum.**
before, **antea.**
beg, on behalf of, **prep., pro, with abl.**
beg, **antea.**
behind, **prep., pone, with acc.: also used adverbially.**
behold, **aspicio, -ere, aspexi, aspectum.**
behold! **interj., en, ecce.**
bejewelled, **adj., gemmatus, -a, -um.**
Belgae, **Belgae, -arum, m. pl.**
believe, **credo, -ere, credidi, creditum, with dat. of person or acc. and infin.**
below, **infra, with acc.: also used adverbially.**
beneath, **subter, with acc. and abl.: also used adverbially.**
benefit, **usus, -us, m.**
bereaved, **adj., viduus, -a, -um.**
besiege, **circumsedeo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum.**
beware, **caveo, -ere, cavi, cautum.**
beyond, **supra, ultra, with acc.: also used adverbially.**
bind, **vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum.**
bit (horse’s), **frenum, -i, n.**
bite, **mordeo, -ere, momordi, morsum.**
bitterly, **adv., vehementer.**
black, **adj., niger, -gra, -grum.**
blame, **culpo, -are, -avi, -atum.**
blaze, **ardeo, -ere, arsi, arsum.**
blockade, **obsideo, -ere, -sedi, -sessum.**
block up, **saepio, -ire, saepsi, seaptum.**
blow, **flo, -are, -avi, -atum.**
bluish, dark blue, **adj., caeruleus, -a, -um.**
boar, *aper, apri, m.*
boat, *linter, -tris, f.: scapha, -ae, f.*
body, *corpus, -oris, n.*
bold, *audax, -acis.*
boldly, *audacter.*
boldness, *audacia, -ae, f.*
bone, *os, ossis, n.*
book, *liber, libri, m.*
book-case, *capsa, -ae, f.*
bookseller, *bibliopola, -ae, m.*
booty, *praeda, -ae, f.*
borders, territories, *finis, -is, m., in pl.*
born, *natus, -a, -um.*
both, *uterque, utraque, utrumque:* *ambo, -ae, -o.*
both ... and, *et ... et.*
bottom, *imus, -a, -um.*
bough, *ramus, -i, m.*
boundless, *immensus, -a, -um.*
bow, *arcus, -us, m.*
box, *arca, -ae, f.*
boy, *puer, pueri, m.*
bracelet, *armilla, -ae, f.*
branch, *ramus, -i, m.*
brand, *nota, -ae, f.*
brave, *audax, -acis: fortis, -e.*
bravely, *audacter: fortiter.*
bravery, *fortitude, -inis, f.: virtus, virtutis, f.*
bribe, *corrumpo, -ere, corupi, corruptum.*
brick, *later, -eris, m.*
bridge, *pons, pontis, m.*
bridle, *frenum, -i, n.*
bright, *candidus, -a, -um.*
bring to, *adduco, -ere, adduxi, adductum.*
bring back, *refero, referre, rettuli, relatum.*
bring forward, *infero, inferred, intuli, illatum.*
bring up, *educo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
Britain, *Britannia, -ae, f.*
British, *Britannus, -a, -um: the Britons, Britannii.*
broad, *latus, -a, -um.*
brother, *frater, -tris, m.*
build, aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum.
build up, exstruo, -ere, exstruxi, exstructum.
building, aedificium, -ii, n.
bull, taurus, -i, m.
burden, onus, oneris, n.
burn, set light to, incendo, -ere, incendi, incensum: uro, -ere, ussi, ustum.
bury, sepelio, -ire, sepelivi, sepultum.
but, conj., sed, autem (usually second word), at, verum.
buy, emo, -ere, emi, emptum.
by, prep., a, ab, with abl.
cackling, clangor, -oris, m.
Cadiz, Gades, -ium, f. pl.
Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, m.
call, appello, -are, -avi, -atum: voco, -are, -avi, -atum.
call together, convoco, are, -avi, -atum.
calm, adj., serenus, -a, -um.
Camillus, Camillus, -i, m.
camp, castra, -orum, n. pl.
Campanian, adj., Campanus, -a, -um.
Campus Martius, Campus Martius, -i, -ii, m.
can, be able, possum, posse, potui, —.
Capella, Capella, -ae, f.
Capitolium, Capitolium, -ii, n.
capitulation, deditio, -onis, f.
captive, adj., captivus, -a, -um: prisoners, captive.
capture, capio, -ere, cepi, captum.
care, take care, caveo, ere, cavi, cautum.
carry,porto, -are, -avi, -atum.
carry off, defero, deferre, detuli, delatum: rapio, -ere, rapui, raptum.
carry on, wage, gero, -ere, gessi, gestum.
Carthage, Carthago, -inis, f.
Carthaginian, adj., Poenus, -a, -um: the Carthaginians, Poeni.
Cassiopea, Cassiopea, -ae, f.
Cassivellaunus, Cassivellaunus, -i, m.
cattle, pecus, pectoris, n., and pecudis, f. (see Bk. 1, p. 114).
cause (to), efficio, -ere, effeci, effectum.
 cease, desisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, intrans.
celebrate (games, etc.), celebro, -are, -avi, -atum.
censor, censor, -oris, m.
Cepheus, **Cepheus**, -ei, m.
Cerberus, **Cerberus**, -i, m.
Ceres, **Ceres**, -eris, f.
certainly, **adu.**, certe, certo.
Cetus, **Cetus**, -i, m.
chains, throw into chains, **vincio**, -ire, vinxi, vinctum.
chance, **sors**, sortis, f.
chance, by, **adv.**, **forte**.
change (to), **muto**, -are, -avi, -atum.
change, **vicem**, vices, f.
chaos, **chaos**, —, n.
chariot, **currus**, -us, m.
charioteer, **auriga**, -ae, c.
chest, box, **arca**, -ae, f.
chief, chieftain, **princes**, **principis**, c.
chief man, **primus**, -i, m., (**primus** used as a noun).
childish, **adj.**, **puerilis**, -e.
children, **liberi**, liberorum, m. pl.
choice, to give a choice, **arbitrium facio**, -ere, feci, factum.
circle, **orbis**, -is, m.
Circus, **Circus**, -i, m.
citadel, **arx**, arcis, f.
citizen, **civis**, -is, c.
citizen of Capua, **adj.**, **Campanus**, -a, -um.
city, **urbs**, urbis, f.
civilized, **adj.**, **humanus**, -a, -um.
claim, **vindico**, -are, -avi, -atum.
clan, **gens**, gentis, f.
cleanse, **eluo**, -ere, elui, elutum.
clever, **adj.**, **doctus**, -a, -um.
climate, **loca**, -orum, n. pl.: special use of **locus**.
climb up, **ascendo**, -ere, -di, ascensum.
clod, clod of earth, **glaeba**, -ae, f.
cloud, **nubes**, nubis, f.
codex, **codex**, -icis, m.
cognomen, **cognomen**, -inis, n.
Colchians, the, **Volchi**, -orum, m. pl.
cold, **frigus**, -oris, n.
cold, **adj.**, **frigidus**, -a, -um.
collect, **eogo**, -ere, coegi, coactum.
Colosseum, **Colosseum**, -i, n.
colour, **color**, -onis, m.
come, venio, -ire, veni, ventum.
come out from, emergo, -ere, emersi, emersum.
come to, arrive, advenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum.
command (to), iubeo, -ere, iussi, iussum: impero, -are, -avi, -atum, with dat.
command, iussum, -i, n.
command, by command, iussu.
command, to be in command of, praesum, praeesse, praefui, --, with dat.
common, the common people, plebs, plebes, f.
commonly, adv., vulgo.
companion, comes, comitis, c.
compel, cogo, -ere, coegi, coactum.
compete, certo, -are, -avi, -atum.
complain, complain of, queror, queri, questus sum (see Ex. XXXVc p. 128).
complaint, querela, -ae, f.
complete, perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum.
compluvium, compluvium, -ii, n.
concerning, prep., de, with abl.
condition, condicio, -onis, f.: in pl., terms.
confess, Confiteor, confiteri, confessus sum.
confounded (be), stupeo, -ere, stupui, --.
conquer, vinco, -ere, vici, victum: supero, -are, -avi, -atum.
conqueror, victor, -oris, m.
considerably, adv., multum.
consult, consul, -ulis, m.
consult, consulto, -ere, -sului, -sultum: with dat., consult the interest of.
contest, certamen, -inis, n.
continue, pergo, -ere, perrexi, perrectum.
conversation, sermo, -onis, m.
corn, frumentum, -i, n.
corps, manus, -us, f.
correct, stilum verto, -ere, verti, versum.
correct, adj., iustus, -a, -um.
cottage, casa, -ae, f.
couch, cubile, -is, n.: lectus, -i, m.
country, countryside, rus, ruris, n.: agri, agrorum, m. pl.
country (i.e. native-land), patria, -ae, f.
courage, animus, -i, m.: fortitude, -inis, f.: virtus, virtutis, f.
course, a race-course, cursus, -us, m.
course, of course, adv., scilicet.
cover up, velo, are, -avi, -atum.
Crete, Creta, -ae, f.
Cretan, adj., Cretensis, -e.
crime, scelus, -eris, n.
crisis, discriminem, -inis, n.
critic, censor, -oris, m.
cross, go across, transeo, -ire, -ii, -itum.
crowd, multitude, -inis, f: turba, -ae, f.
cruel, adj., crudelis, -e.
cruelty, crudelitas, -atis, f.
cry out, clamo, -are, -avi, -atum.
crying, wailing, vagitus, -us, m.
custom, mos, moris, m.
cut off, abscido, -ere, abscidi, abscisum.
Cynthus, Cynthus, -i, f.
daily, adv., cottidue; with idea of increase or decrease, in dies.
danger, periculum, -i, n.
dangerous, adj., periculosus, -a, -um.
dark, adj., obscurus, -a, -um.
darkness, tenebrae, -arum, f. pl.
dash against, incurso, -are, -avi, -atum, with acc. and dat. (see Ex. XXXVIIIc, p. 163).
daughter, filia, -ae, f.
day, dies, diei, m.
day, every day, see daily.
day break, prima lux, primae lucis, f.
deal, adj., mortuus, -a, -um: the dead, mortui.
dear, adj., carus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, f.
deceit, fraus, fraudis, f.: perfidia, -ae, f.
deceive, decipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum.
December, of December, adj., December, -bris, -bre.
decide, in animo habeo, -ere, -ui, -itum: constituo, -ere, constitui, contituo, -ere, constitutum.
declare publicly, indico, -ere, -dixi, -dictum.
deed, adj., altus, -a, -um.
defeat (to), vinco, -ere, vici, victum: supero, -are, -avi, -atum.
defeat, clades, cladis, f.
defend, defendo, -ere, defendi, defensum.
defer, differro, differre, distuli, dilatum.
defile, angustiae, -arum, f. pl.
deity, numen, -inis, n.
delay (to), moror, morari, moratus sum.
delay, mora, -ae, f.
demand, posco, -ere, poposci, -: postulo, -are, -avi, -atum.
deny, nego, -are, -avi, -atum.
depart, abeo, -ire, -ii, -itum: discedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum.
deplore, deplorel, -are, -avi, -atum.
descendants, proles, -is, f.
desire, cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum: opto, -are, -avi, -atum.
despair, despero, -are, -avi, -atum.
destiny, sors, sortis, f.
destroy, deleo, -ere, delevi, deletum.
destinction, exitium, -ii, n.
determine, see decide.
Deucalion, Deucalion, -onis, m.
devour, see eat up.
Diana, Diana, -ae, f.
dictator, dictator, -oris, m.
Dido, Dido, -onis, f.
die, morior, mori, mortuus sum (fut. partic., moriturus): e vita
excedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum.
different, one thing ... another thing, alii ... aliud: different people say
different things, alii alia dicunt.
difficult, adj., difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultas, -atis, f.
dine, ceno, -are, -avi, -atum.
dining-room, triclinium, -ii, n.
dinner, cena, -ae, f.
disagree, dissentio, -ire, -sensi, -sensum.
disaster, clades, -is, f.: pernicies, perniciei, f.
Discord, Discordia, -ae, f.
discus, discus, -i, m.
discuss, dissero, -ere, -serui, -sertum.
dislodge, detrudo, -ere, detrusi, detrusum.
display (to), exhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum: display, boast, prae se ferre
(see fero).
display, species, speciei, f.
dispute, controversai, -ae, f.
dissuade, dissuadeo, -ere, -suasi, -suasum, with dat.
dissimilar, adj. dissimilis, -e
distance, in the distance, adv., procul
distinction, **discriminen, -inis, n**
do, **ago, agree, egi, actum:**
  - facio, facere, feci, factum
do not...noli (sing), nolite (plu), with infin.
dog, **canis, -is, c.**
**dominion, imperium, -ii, n**
doubtful, adj, **dubius, -a –um**
drag, **traho, -ere, traxi, tractum**
dragon, **draco, -onis, m**
draw up, **colloco, -are, -avi, -atum**
drink, **bibo, -ere, bibi**
drive, **ago, agree, egi, actum**
drive out, **expelleo, -ere, expuli, expulum**
driven, compelled, adj. **compulsus, -a, -um**
driver, **auriga, -ae, c.**
dry, adj, **aridus, -a, -um.**
dry land, **sicuum, -i, n**
dye, **tingo, -ere, tinxi, tinctum**
dye oneself, **me inficio se inficere, me infeci, infectum.**

eager, adj, **studiosus, -a, -um**
eagerness, **stadium, -ii, n**
eagle, **aquila, -ae**
everth, **terra, -ae, f (region):P orbis terrarium, -is –arum, m (the earth); tellus, -uris , f, (the globe, country, region)**
easily, adv. **Facile**
easy, adj. **facilis, -e**
eat, **edo, esse, edi, esum**
eat up, **devoro, -are, -avi, -atum**
educate, **erudio, -ire, -ivi, -itum**
eight, **indcl, num, adj, octo.**
eight, adj, **octavus, -a, -um**
either (of two) the one....the other, alter.....alter.
either...or, conj, **aut.....aut: vel....vel.**
elect, **creo, -are, -avi, -atum**
elephant, **elephantus, -I, m**
embark, in navem **conscendo, -ere, -di, -scesum**
encamp, **consido, -ere, -sedi, -sessum**
encourage, **horto, hortari, hortatus sum**
end, **finis, -is, m**
end, **endmost, adj., extremus, -a, -um**
endure, **duro, -are, -avi, -atum: sustineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum.**
enemy, hostis, -is, c
energetic, adj. acer, acris, acre
English, in, into, adv., anglice
enough, adv, sat is
enter, in eo, -ire, ini i, initum: ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum:
intro, -are, -avi, -atum
entertain, invito, -are, -avi, -atum
entrance (to a house), vestibulum, -i, n
entrust, mando, -are, -avi, -atum
envoy, legatus, -i, m
envy, invidia, -ae, f
escape, fugio, -ere, fugi, (fugitum): effugio, -ere, -fugi, (-fugitum).
estee m, gratia, -ae, f
esteem before, praefero, -ferre, praetuli, praelatum
Ethiopia. Athiopia, -ae, f
Etna, Aetna, -ae, f
Etruria, Etruria, -ae, f
even, conj, etiam, vel: not even, ne.....quidem
evening, vespri, -eris, m: also, vespera, -ae, f, in the evening, vespere
ever, adv, umquam
every, adj, omnis, -e
every day, adv, cottidie.
every year, adv, quotannis
except, prep, praeter, with acc.
exception, without exception, prep phrase, ad unum
exclaim, clamo, -are, -avi, -atum
exile, an exile, exul, exsulis, c
expose, expono, -ere, -posui, -positum.
eye, oc ulus, -i, m
faith, fides, fidei, f
faithful, adj. fidus, -a, -um
Falerii, Falerii, -orum, m, pl.
fall, cado, -ere, cecidi, casum
fall down, decid o, -ere, -cidi, --
fal l into the power of, in potestatem venio, -ire, veni, ventum.
false, adj, fictus, -a, -um
famous, adj, celeber, -bris, -bre: clarus -a, -um: nobilis, -e
far, far away, adv Ionge.
f armer, agricola, -ae, m.
f asten, figo, -ere, fixi, fixum
fastened, adj, affixus, -a, -um.
father, *pater*, *patris*, m
father's of a father's, adj, *paternus*, -a, -um
fault, *vitium*, -ii, n
fault, commit a fault, *delinqvo, -ere, liqui, -lictum*.
favour (to), *faveo, -ere, favi, factum*, (with dat).
favour, a famous, *beneficium*, -ii, n.
favourable. adj, *secundus*, -a, -um
fear (to), *metuo, -ere, metui, ____: timeo, -ere, -ui, ____; vereor, vereri, veritus* sum.
fear, *formido, -inis, f, metus*, -us, m.
feast, *dapem, dapis*, f
feastal, adj. *festus*, -a, -um,
few, a few, adj, *pauci, -ae, -a*
field, *ager, agri*, m, in plu.
  fields, i.e countryside.
Fierce, adj, ferus, -a, -um; saevus, -a, um; barbarus -a, -um.
fight, *pugno, -are, -avi, -atum*
filled, adj, *repletus, -a, -um*
finally, adv, *denique*
find, *invenio, -ie, -veni, -ventum; reperio, -ire, reperri, repertum*
finish, *perficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum; finio, -ire, -ivi, -itum*.
fire, *ignis, ignis*, m
fire, be on fire, ardeo, -ere, arsi, arsum.
Fire, set fire on, *incendo, -ere, -cendo, -censum; uro, -ere, ussi, ustum*.
firm, make firm, *firmo, -are, -avi, -atum*.
first, adj, *primus*, -a, -um.
fish, piscis, *piscis*, m.
fix, *figo, -ere, fixi, fixum*.
fixed, adj, *affixus, -a, -um; fixus, -a, -um*
flame, *flamma, -ae, f.*
flee, flee from, *fugo, effugio* (see ‘escape’).
Fleece, *vellus, -eris*, n
flesh, *caro, carnis*, f
flight, *fuga, -ae, f.*
flock, *grex, gregis*, m
flow, *profluo, -ere, -fluxi, ____*
flow down, *decurro, -ere, -curri, -cursum*
flower, flos, florish, m
fly, *volo, -are, -avi, -atum*.
follow, sequor, sequi, secutus sum.
food, cibus, -i, m.: frumentum, -i, n
foolish, adj, stultus, -a, -um
foot, ped, pedis, m.
for, conj, enim: nam, namque
forbid, veto, -are, vetui, vetitum
force, vis, -i, f
forces, copiae, -arum, f, pl.
fore-arm, brachium, -ii, n
forehead, frons, frontis, f
foreign, adj, alienus, -a, -um; peregrimus, -a, -um
forgetful, forgetful of, adj, immemor, -oris, with gen.
form, species, speciei, f
former, the former, -e, illa, iluid
formerly, adv, antea, olim
fort, castellum, -i, n.: castrum, -i, n. (rare).
fortifications, moenia, -ium, n. pl.
fortieth, adj, quaragensimus -a, -um.
fortify, munio, -ire, -ive, -itum.
forsake, see fort.
fortune, fortuna, -ae, f.
good fortune, fortuna secunda; bad fortune, fortuna adversa.
forty, indecl. num. adj., quadraginta.
forum, forum, -i, n.
found (a city, etc.), condo, -ere, -didi, -ditum.
fountain, fontis, f.
four, indecl. num. adj., quattour.
four hundred, adj., quadringenti, -ae, -a.
garden, hortus, -i, m.: peristylium, -ii, n.
garrison, praesidium, -ii, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul,a Gaul, gallus, -i, m.
general, dux, ducis, c.
generally, adv., vulgo.
generation aetas, -atis, f.
gift, donum, -i, n.; munus, -eris, n
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, do, dare, dedi, datum.
give up, surrender, trado,
-ere, tradidi, traditum.
gladiator, gladiator, -oris, m.
go, eo, ire, ivi or ii, itum
go across, transeo, -ire, -ii, -itum.
go away, abeo, -ire, -ii, -itum; discedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum.
go down, descend, -ere, -di, -scensum.
go forward, procedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum.
go out, excedo, -ere, cessi, -cessum; exeo, -ire, -ii, -itum;
egredior, egredi, egressus sum.
go past, praetereo, -ire, -ii,
go up, ascendo, -ere, -di, -scensum; subeo, -ire, -ii, -itum.
goad, stimulus, -i, m.
goat, capella, -ae, f.
god, deus, dei, m.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.: musa, -ae, f.
gold, aurum, -i, n.
golden, adj., aureus, -a, -um.
good, adj., bonus, -a, -um.
good! well done! interj., euge.
good-bye! imper., vale (sing.) valete (pl.).
goose, anser, -eris, m.
Gorgon, Gorgo, -onis, f.
graceful, adj., gracilis, -e.
grandfather, avus, -i, m.
grandson, nepos, -otis, m.
grasp, comprehendo, -ere-di, -sum.
gratitude, gratiae, -arum, f. pl.
great, adj., magnus, -a, -um
great, how great? adj., quantus, -um
great, so great, adj., taurus, -a, -um.
great, very great, adj., summus, -a, -um. greatly, adv. magnopere, multum, longe.
greatness, magnitudo, -inis, f.
greece, graecia, -ae, f.
greed, cupiditas, -atis, f.
Greek, adj., graecus, -a, -um; the greeks, graeci.
grief, dolor, -oris, m.
grieve, doleo, -ere, -ui,
grievous, adj., gravis, -e; durus, -a, -um.
grim, adj., tristis, -e.
ground, humus, -i, f.
grow, cresco, -ere, crevi, cretum, intrans.
guard (to), custodio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
guard, a, custos, custodies, c.
guest, conviva, -ae, c.: hospes, hospitis, m.

hail, saluto, -ari, -avi, -atum.
half, by a half, adv., dimidio
half (of a house), atrium, -ii, n.
halt, consisto, -ere, -stii,
hand, manus, -us, f.
hand, be at hand, adsum,
adessem affui, - with dat.
hand over, hand down, trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum.
hand down, they, tradunt.
hang over, impendo, -ere, --, --.
hand up, suspendo, -ere, -pendi, -pensum.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, m.
happened, it happened that, adv., forte.
happy, adj., felix, -icis; laetus, -a, -um.
harbour, portus, -us, m.
hard, adj., durus, -a, -um.
hard, adv., graviter.
hare, lepus, -oris, m.
hasten, propero, -are, -avi, -atum; hasten violently, rush on, ruo, ruere, rui, -rutum.
hates, he, def. vb., odit.
have, habeo, -ere, -ui, -itum.
he himself, refl. pron., se, acc. case: non-refl. pron. ipse, -a, -um,
head, caput, capitis, n.
headfirst, adj., praeceps, -cipitis.
health, be in, valeo, -ere, -ui, ---.
heap upon, congero, -ere, -gessi, -gestum, with acc. and dat.
hear, audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
heavens, the, aether, -eris, m.: caelum, -i, n.
heavy, adj., gravis, -e.
Helen, Helena, -ae, f.
Helle, Helle, Helles (gk.gen.), f.
Hellespont, Hellespontus, -i, m.
helmet, galea, -ae, f.
help (to), iuvo, -arc, iuvi, iatum.
help, auxilium, -ii, n.: opem, opis, f.
hen, gallina, -ae, f.
her own, refl. poss. adj., suus, sua, suum.
hercules, hercules, -is, m. here, adv., hic.
hero, heros, herosis, m.
hide, condo, -ere, condidi, conditum.
high, adj., altus, -a, -um.
highest, superl. adj., summus, -a, -um.
hill, mons, montis, m.
hinder, impedio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
hindered, adj., impeditus, -a, -um.
his own, refl. poss. adj., suus, -a, -um.
hither, to here, adv., huc.
hold, teno, -ere, -ui, tentum.
hold (games, etc), celebro, are, -avi, -atum.
hold out, hold out against, sustineo, -ere, -ui, -tentum, with acc.:
resisto, -ere, -stiti, ---, with dat.
hold together, contineo, -ere, -ui, -tentum.
home, domus, -us, f.
hope (to), spero, are, -avi, -atum.
hope, spes, spei, f.
horn, cornu, -us, n.
horse, equus, -i, m.
host, hospes, -itis, m.
hostile, adj., inimicus, -a, -um.
hostage, obses, -idis, c.
hour, hora, -ae, f.
house, aedes, -ium, f. pl.:
domus, -us, f.: tectum, -i, n.: a country residence, villa, -ae, f.
house, at the house of, prep., apud, with acc.
how? interrog. adv., quam (with adjs, and advs.): how? in what way?
quomodo. how often? interrog. adv., quotiens.
however, conj., tamen (usually second or third word).
huge, adj., immanis, -e: ingens, -entis.
humane, adj., humanus, -a, -um, also, human.
humble, adj., humilis, -e.
humour, sal, salis, m., in pl.
hundred, indeed. num. adj., centum.
hundredth, adj., centensimus, -a, -um.
hunger, names, -is, f.: to die of hunger, fame mori.
hurl together, confundo, -ere, -fudi, -fusum.
husband, coniunx, -iugis, m.

I, pers. pro., ego.
if, conj., si.
il, adj., aeger, -gra, -grum.
ill, be, male valeo, -ere, valui,-----
image, imago, -inis, f.
immediately, adv., statim: prep. phrase, sine mora.
immense, adj, ingens, -en-tis: vastus, -a, -um.
immortal, adj, immortallis, -e.
impety, nefas, indecl. noun, n.
impluvium, impluvium, -ii, n.
impose, impono, -ere, -posui, -positum.
in, prep, in, with abl.
incense, an offering of incense, tus, turis, n.
increase, increase in power, cresco, -ere, crevi, cretum, intrans.
indeed, adv., quidem, equidem.
influence, gratia, -ae, f.
inform, aliquem certiororem facio, -ere, feci, factum: nuntio, -are,
-avi, -atum, with dat. of person.
inhabit, incolo, -ere, -colui, -cultum, with acc.: habio –are, -avi, -atum, with i and abl. inhabitant, incola, -ae, c. injury, iniuria, -ae, f.
ink atramentum, -i, n.
inland, adj., mediterraneus, -a, -um.
innocent, adj., innocens, -entis.
iinstead of; prep., pro, with abl.
instruct, erudio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
interrupt, interpello, -are, -avi, -atum.
into, prep. in, with acc. invite, invito, -are, -avi, -atum: voco, -are, -avi, -atum.
Ireland, hibernia, -ae, f. iron, ferrum, -i, n.
island, f. , insula, -ae, f.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
its own, reft. poss. adj., suus, -a, -um.
Iulus, iulus, -, m.

Janiculum, Ianiculum, -i, n.
Janus, Ianus, -i, m.
Jason, Iason, -onis, m.
jaws, fauces, -ium, f. pl.: also, a passage way.
jealousy, invidia, -ae, f.
join, iungo, -ere, iunxi, iunctum: coniungo, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum.
journey, iter, itineris, n.
joy, gaudium, -ii, n.
judge, iudex, -icus, c.
judgment, arbitrium, -ii, n.
jump down, desilio, -ire, -silui, -sultum.
jump over, transilio, -ire, -ui, ---.
Juno, Iuno, -onis, f.
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, n.
Juryman, l Judex, -icus, c.
just, adj., iustus, -a, -um.

keen, adj., acer, acri, aca: studiosus, -a, -um.
keep keep back, retineo, -ere watch, vigilo, -are, -avi, -atum.
Kent, cantium, -ii, n.
kill, interficio, -ere, -eci, -fectum: occido, -ere, occidi, occisum: obtrunco, -are, -avi, -atum.
kind, be kind to, faveo, -ere, fava, fautum, with dat.
kind, a, genus, -eris, n.
kind, (adj.), benignus, -a, -um
kindly, adj., mitis, -e.
kindness, beneficium, -ii, n.
king, rex, regis, m.
king, be, regno, -are, -avi, -atum.
kingsdom, regnum, -i, n.
knee, genu, -us, n.
knife, falx, facis, f.
know, scio -ire, scivi, scitum.
know, do not, nescio, -ire, nescivi, nescitum.

Iabyrinth, labyrinthus, -i, m.
lacking, be, desum, deesse, defui, ---, with dat.
lamb, agnus, -i, m.
lament, deploro, -are, -avi, -atum.
land, terra, -ae, f.
land, dry land, siccum, -i, n.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
last (to), duro, -are, -avi, -atum.
last, adj., extremus, -a, -um: supremus, -a, -um: ultimus, -um.
last, at last, adv., tandem:
then at last, tum demum:
late, adj, serus, -a, -um.
lately, adv. modo.
Latin, adj., Latinus, -a, -um.
Latin, in, into, adv. latine.
Latium, Latium, -ii, n.
Latona, Latona, -ae, f.
latter, the latter, hic, haec, hoc.
law, a single law, a statute, lex, legis, f.
lay waste, vasto -are, -avi, -atum.
lazy, adj., piger, -gra, -grum.
lead duco, -ere, duxi, ductum.
lead back, reduco, -ere, -duxi, ductum.
lead out, educo, -ere, -duxi, -ductum.
lead to, adduco, -ere, -duxi, -ductum.
leader, dux, ducis, c.
leaf, frons, frondis, f.
learn, disco, -ere, didici, ---
learned, adj., doctus, -a, -um.
least, adv., minime.
leave relinquuo, -ere, reliqui, relictum, -ere, reli- -ere, -stitui, -stitutum.
left, on the left, sinistra, (abl, used adverbially).
leg, crus, cruris, n.
legally, adv., iure.
legion, legio, -onis, f. (see legio, Latin vocabulary).
length, at adv, tandem.
Lerna, Lerna, -ae, f.
less, adv., minus.
lest, conj., ne.
let go, remitto, -ere, -misi, -missum.
letter, littera, -ae, f. (of alphabet): litterae, -arum f. pl., epistula, -ae, f. (epistle).
Libya, Libya, -ae, f.
lick, lambo -ere, lambi, ---
lie, iaceo, -ui, -itum.
life, vita, -ae, f.
lift, tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublatum.
light, lumen, -inis, n.: lux, lucis, f.
light, set light to, incendo, -ere, -cendi, -censum: uro, -ere, ussi, uustum.
lightening, fulmen, -inis, n.
like (to), amo, -are, -avi, atum.
like, adj., similes, -e.
limbs, artus, -uum, m. pl.
limit, finis, -is, m.
lion, leo, -onis, m.
lip, labrum, -i, n.
literature, litterae, -arum, f. pl.
little, adj., parvus, -a, -um.
little, adv., paulum.
little, by a little, adv., Paulo.
little, too little, adv. parum.
live, vivo, -ere, vixi, victum.
live in, incolō, -ere -colui, -cultum, with acc.: habito, -are, -avi, -atum, with in and abl.
living, adj., vivus, -a, -um
lo! interj., en.
long, adj., longus, -a, -um.
long, as long as, rel. adv., quamdiu.
long, how long? interrog. adv. quamdiu.
long, for a long time, adv., diu.
long, not long afterwards, haud multo post.
look at, specto, -are, -avi, -atum.
look down upon, despicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum.
look for, quaero, -ere, quae-sivi, equaesitum.
look round upon, circuspicio, -spexi, -spectum.
lord, dominus, -i, m.
lot, one's lot (in life), sors, sortis, f.
love (to), amo, -are, -avi, -atum.
love, amor, -oris, m.
lowest, adj., imus, -a, -um.
lowly, adj., humilis, -e.
loyalty, fides, fidei, f.
Luceria, Luceria, -ae, f.
lump, massa, -ae, f.
Lydian, adj., Lydus, -a, -um.
Lying, situate, adj., situs, -a, -um.

mad, adj., insanus, -um.
made, be, fio, fleri, factus sum.
madness, insania, -ae, f.
magic, adj., magicus, -a -um.
magnificent, adj., magnificus, -a, -um.
maiden, virgo, -inis, f.
mainland, continens, -entis, f.
majesty, divine majesty, numen, -inis, n. make, facio, -ere, feci, factum.
make firm, firmo, -are, -avi, -atum.
make for (a place), peto, -ere, petivi or petii, petitum.
man, vir, viri, m.: homo, -inis, m.
man, to a man, without exception, prep. phrase, adunum.
mankind, hominess, see also mortal.
many, adj., multi, -ae, -a.
many a . . ., adj., nonnulli, -ae, -a.
many, how many? indecl. adj., quot.
many, just as many, indeed. adj., quot.
many, just as many, indeed. adj., totidem.
many, so many, indeed, adj. tot.
march, contendo, -ere, -tendi, -tentum.
Marcus, Marcus, -i, m.
marine, adj., marinus, -a, -um.
maritime, adj., martimus, -a, -um.
mark, brand, nota, -ae, f.
marrige, matrimonium, -ii, n.
marry, in matrimonium duco, -ere, duxi, ductum (man as subject):
nubo, -ere, nupsi, nuptum, with dat, (woman as subject).
Mars, Mars, Martis, m.
Mars, of Mars adj., Martius, -a, -um.
marvelous, adj., mirabilis, -e.
mass, massa, -ae, f.
massacre, caedes, -is, f.
master, dominus, -i, m.: magister, -tri, m.
matter, res, rei, f.
means, by means of, prep., per, with acc.
meantime, meanwhile, adv., interim.
meat, caro, carnis, f.
Medea, Medea, -ae, f.
Medusa, Medusa, -ae, f.
meet together, convenio, -ire, -veni, -ventum.
meeting, concillium, -ii, n.
memory, memoria, -ae, f.
merchant, mercator, -oris,
merciful, mercurius, -ii, m.
messenger, nuntius, -ii, m.
midday, meridies, meridiei, m.
middle, adj., medius, -a -um.
mild, adj., temperatus, -a, -um.
mile, mille passus, mille passuum, m.pl.
Miletus, Miletus, -I, f.
milk, lac, lactis, n.
mind, animus, -i, m.
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, f.
mingle, *confundo*, -ere, -fusi, -fusum.
Minos, *Minos*, *Minois*, m.
minotaur, *minotaurus*, -i, m.
mirror, *speculum*, -i, n.
miserable, adj., *miser*, -era, -erum.
mix, *misceo*, -ere, -ui, mixtum.
money, *pecunia*, -ae, f.
monster, *monstrum*, -i, n.
month, *mensis*, -is, m.
monument, *saxum*, -i, n.
more, rather, adv., *magis*.
moreover, conj., *autem*: adv., *praeterea*.
mortal, adj., *mortalis*, -e: mankind, *mortales*.
most, most of, adj., *plerique*, *pleraque*, *pleraque*.
most, very great, adv., *maxime*.
mother, *mater*, *matris*, f.
mountain, *mons*, *montis*, m.
moved, adj., *commontus*, -a, -um.
much, adj., *multus*, -a, -um.
much, adv., *multum*.
much, by much, adv., *multo*.
much, too much, adv., *nimis*.
muddy, adj., *turbulentus*, -a, -um.
Muse, *Musa*, -ae, f.
my, mine, poss. adj., *meus*, -a, -um.
Mycenean, adj., *Mycenaeus*, -a, -um.

name (to), *appello*, -are, -avi, -atum: nomino, -are, -avi, -atum.
name, *nomen*, -inis, n.
named, abl. of nomen, *nomine*.
nation, *populus*, -i, m.
near, prep., *prope*, with acc.: also used adverbially: prep., *propter*, with acc.
near (be), *adsum*, *adesse*, *affui*, ---, with dat.
needle, *acus*, -us, f.
 neglect, *neglego*, -ere, -exi, -lectum.
not, adv., *non*.
nothing, *nihil*, indeed. noun, n.
November, of November, adj., ,
November, -bris, -bre.
now, adv., nunc, iam.
now, just now, recently, adv., modo.
nowhere, adv., nusquam.
number (of people, etc.), multitude, -inis, f.: numerus, -i, m.

O, interj., O.
oar, remus, -i, m.
obey, pareo, -ere, -ui, -itum, with dat.
October, of October, adj.,
October, -bris, -bre.
of, concerning, prep., de, with abl.
offend, commit a fault, delinquuo –ere, -liqui, -licitum.
offer, offero, offerre, obtuli, oblatum.
offer to the gods, sacrifice, -are, -avi, -atum.
officer, legatus, -i, m.
offspring, descendants, proles, -is, f.
often, how often? interrog. adv., quotiens, quoties.
often, so often, adv., totiens, toties.
ointment, unguentum, -i, n.
old, adj., vetus,-eris.
Olympus, Olympus, -i, m.
omen, augurium, -ii, n.: omen, -inis, n.
on, prep., in, with abl.
one, at once, adv., simul.
one, num. adj., sing. and pl., unus, -a, -um.
one, the one... the other (of two), adj., alter... alter.
only, alone, adj., solus, -a, -um.
only, adv., solum, tantum, modo.
only, not only... but also, non modo ... sed etiam.
open, aperio, -ire, aperui, apertum.
option, sentential, -ae, f.
oportunity, occasion, -onis, f.
or, conj., aut: vel.
or, either... or, conj., aut... aut: vel... vel,
oracle, oraculum, -i, n.
Orcus, Orcus, -i, m.
order (to), iubeo, -ere iussi, iussum, with acc.: impero, -are, -avi, -atum, with dat.
order, iussum, -i, n.: imperium, -ii, n.
order, by order, iussu.
Orion, Orion, -onis, m.
orphan, *orbus*, -i, m.: *orba*, -ae, f., see adj., *orbus.*
other, the other, adj., *relisquus*, -a, -*um*: adj. pl., *ceteri*, -ae, -a: the others, *ceteri.*
other, another, adj., *alius*, alia, aliud.
other’s, of another, adj., *alienus*, -a, -um.
ought *debeo*, -ere, -ui, -itum.
our, ours, poss. adj., *noster*, -tra, -trum: our men, *nostri.*
outside, prep., *extra*, with acc: also used adverbially.
over, prep., super, with acc. and abl.: also used adverbially.
overcome, conquer, *supero*, -are, -avi, -atum: vinco, -ere, vici, victum.
overcome, overcome by, adj., *confectus*, -a, -um.
overpower, overwhelm, *opprimo*, -ere, oppressi, oppressum.
Ovid, Ovidius, -ii, m.
own, his, her, its, their, refl. poss. adj., suus, -a, -um.
own, one’s own, adj., *proprius*, -a, -um.
pace, *passus*, -us, m.
Page, * pagina*, -ae, f.
pain, feel pain, *doleo*, -ere, -ui, ---
pain, *dolor*, -oris, m.
palace, *regia*, -ae, f.: *aedes*, -is, f., in pl.
Palatine, adj., *Palatinus*, -a, -um.
Palatium, the Palace on the Palatium, *Palatium*, -ii, n.
pale, turn pale, *pallesco*, -ere, pallui, ---.
paper, charta, -ae, f.
parchment, *Pergamena* (see membrane), -ae, f.
pardon, *venia*, -ae, f.
parent, *parens*, -entis, c.
permit, *patior*, pati, passus, sum.
Perseus, *Perseus*, -ei, m.
personal, adj., *proprius*, -a, -um.
persuade, *suadeo*, -ere, suasi, suasum,
with dat.: *Persuadeo*, -ere, -suasi, - suasum, with dat.
Phaethon, Phaethon, -ontis, m.
Philippi, *Philippi*, -orum, m. pl.
Phoebus, *Phoebus*, -i, m.
Phrixus, *Phrixus*, -i, m.
Phrygians, *Phryges*, -um, m. pl.
pick up, *tollo*, -ere, sustuli, sublatum.
picture, *tabula*, -ae, f.: pictura, -ae, f.
pig, *porcus*, -i, m.
pirate, *pirata*, -ae, m.
pity, *miseriordia*, -ae, f.
place (to), *colloco*, -are, -avi, -atum.
place, *locus*, -i, .
place, in the next place, adv., *deinde*.
plain, *campus*, -i, m.
plan, *consilium*, -ii, n.
play, *ludo*, -ere, lusi, lusum.
pleasant, adj., *iucundus*, -a, -um.
please, placeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, with dat.
please, if you please, *si vis*.
pleasing, adj., *gratus*, -a, -um.
plough, -aro, -avi, -atum.
pluck, *carpo*, -ere, carpsi, carptum.
plunder, *praeda*, -ae, f.
plunge beneath, subdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum.
Pluto Pluto, -onis, m.
poet, *poeta*, -ae, m.
poison, *venenum*, -i, n.
pompey, *pompeius*, -ii, m.
Pontius, *Pontius*, -ii, m.
poor, adj., *pauper*, -eris.
populace, *plebs*, plebes, f.
popularity, *gratia*, -ae, f.
population, *multitudo*, -inis, f.
porch, *vestibulum*, -i, n.
portico, basilica, -ae, f.
position, *locus*, -i, m.
position, public office, *honos*, -oris, m.
possession, get possession of, potior, potiri, potitus, sum, with abl.,
sometimes gen.
possible, as ... as possible, quam, with the superl.
postpone, differo, differe, distuli, dilatum.
pour, *fundo*, -ere, fudi, fusum.
power, *imperium*, -ii, n.: magnitudo, -inis, f.: potestas, -atis, f., fall
into the power of, in potestatem venio, -ire, veni, ventum.
power, divine power, *numen*, -inis, n.
powerful, adj., *firmus*, -a, -um: potens, -entis.
praenomen, praenomen, -inis, n.
praetor, praetor, -oris, m.
praise, laus, laudis, f.
pray for, voveo, -ere, vovi, votum (rare).
prayer, precem, ---, f. (rare): more commonly in pl., preces, prayers.
prefer, malo, malle, malui, ---: praefero, praeferre, prepare,
prepare for, paro, -aro, -avi, -atum: expedio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
present, be, adsum, adesse, affui, ----with dat.
pretended, adj, fictus, -a, -um.
prevent, prohibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum, followed by the infinitive.
prison, carcer, -eris, m.: cast
into prison: in vincula iacio, -ere, ieci, iactum.
prisoner, captive, captivus -i, m.
prize, praemium, -ii, n.
proceed, pergo, -ere, perrexi, perrectum.
proclaim, indico, -ere, indixi, indictum
proconsul, proconsul, -is, m.
produce, efficio, -ere, effeci, effectum,
promise, promitto, -ere, -misi, -missum.
property, res, rei, f.: fortunae, arum. f. pl.
proprietor, proprietor, -oris, m.
Proserpina, proserpina, -ae, f.
protect, protego, -ere, -texti, -tectum.
proud, adj, superbus, -a, -um.
public, adj, publicus, -a, -um.
Publius, Publius, -ii, m.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
pupil, discipulus, -i, m.
put under, subdo, -ere, -didi, -dictum.
Pyrrha, Pyrrha, -ae, f.
quaestor, quaestor, -oris, m.
quarrel, controversia, -ae, f.: iurgium, -ii, n.
queen, regina, -ae, f.

questions:
1. Expecting the answer 'no' num.
2. Expecting the answer 'yes' nonne.
3. Expecting either answer, -ne (enclitic).
quickly, adv., celeriter: cito.
quiet, be quiet, taceo, -ere, -ui, -itum.
race (of people, etc), genus, -eris, n.: gens, gentis, f. ram, aries, arietis, m.
rascally, adj., sceleratus, -a, -um.
rate, at any rate, adv., certe.
rather, adv., potius: magis.
rather, somewhat, use comp. degree.
ravage, vasto, -are, -avi, -atum.
read, lego, -ere legi, lectum.
read aloud, recito –are, -avi, -atum.
really, adv. phrase, re vera.
rear, in the rear, prep. phrase, a tergo.
reason, a, causa, -ae, f.
recall, revoco, -are, -avi, -atum.
receive, accipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum: recipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum.
recover (from illness), convalesco, -ere, -ui, ---:
recover oneself, me recipio, se recipere, me recepi, receptum.
reflection, imago, -inis, f.
refuge, place of, asylum, -i, n.
region, region, -onis, f.
regions, loca, -orum, n. pl.
reign, regno, -are, -avi, -atum.
reinforcements, auxilia, -orum, n. pl. novae copiae, -arum –arum, f. pl.
reins, lora, -orum, n. pl.
relate, narro, -are, -avi, -atum.
relate, they relate, tradunt.
relax, remitto, -ere, -misi, -missum.
reliable, adj., fidus, -a, -um.
remain, maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum: resto, -are, -stiti---, (i.e. to be left over).
remaining, adj., reliquus, -a, -um.
remedy, remedium, -ii, n.
remember, memoria teneo, -ere, -ui, tentum: recordor, recordari, recordatus sum.
remember! imper of defective vb. memini, memento.
renown, fama, -ae, f.
reply, responsum, -i, n.
report (to), nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum: refero, referre, rettuli, relatum.
report, fama, -ae, f.
republic, respublica, reipublicae, f.
reputation, villa, -ae, f.
resist, sustineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, with acc.: resisto, -ere, restiti, ----, with dat.
rest, the rest of, adj., ceteri, -ae, -a: reliqui, -ae, -a.
restrain, coercio, -ere, -ui, -itum.
result, as a result of, prep., de, with abl.
retreat, pedem refero, referre, rettuli, relatum: me recepi, receptum: recedo, -ere, -essi, -cessum.
return, redeo, -ire, redii, redivum: regredior, regredior, redii, reditum: regredior, regredi, regressus sum.
return, give back, restore, redo, -ere, reddidi, rreditum.
return, in return for, prep., pro, with abl.
reveal, apperio, -ire, aperui, apertum.
reward, praemium, -ii, n
rich, adj., dives, -it is: dis (dite).
riches, divitiae, -arum, f. pl.
right, on the right, dextra (abl., used adverbially).
right, right-hand side, adj., dexter, -tra, -trum.
rightfully, adv., iure.
ring, annulus, -i, m.
rise, surgo, -ere, surrexi, surrectum.
rise up before, oborior, oboriri, obortus sum.
rites, sacred rites, sacra, sacrorum, n. pl.
river, amnis, -is, m.: flumen, -inis, n.: fluvius, -ii, m.
road, via, -ae, f.
roam about, erro, -are, -avi, -atum.
robber, latro, -onis, m.
rock, saxum, -i, n.: scopulus, -i, m.
rod, virga, -ae, f.
Roman, adj., Romanus, -a, -um: the Romans, Romani.
Rome, Roma, -ae, f.
Romulus, Romulus, -i, m. roof, tectum, -i, n.
room, bedroom, cubiculum, -i, n. dining-room, triclinium, -ii, n.
hall, atrium, -ii, n. study, tablinum, -i, n. roof, radix, -icus, f. rough, adj., asper, -era, -erum.
round, prep., circa, circum, with acc.: also used adverbially.
rout, fundo, -ere, fudi, fusum.
row, remigo, -are, -avi, -atum.
rower, remix, -igis, m.
royal, adj., regius, -a, -um.
rule, rego, -ere, rexi, rectum.
rumour, *fama, -ae, f.*
run, *curro, -ere, current, cursum.*
rush on, *ruo, -ere, rui, -rutum.*

Sabine, adj., *Sabinus, -a, -um.*
sacred, adj., *sacer, sacra, sacrum.*
sacredrites, *sacra, sacrorum,* n. pl.
sacrifice, sacrifice, *-are, -avi, -atum.*
sad, adj., *tristis, -e.*
sadly, adv., *triste.*
safe, adj., *incolumis, -e: tutus, -a, -um.*
safly, adv., *tuto.*
salty, *slus, salutis,* f.
sail, (to), *navigo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
sails, *vela, -orum,* n. pl.
sail, set sail, *naves solvo, solvere, solvi, solutum.*
sailor, *nauta, -ae,* m.
sake, for the sake of, prep., *causa,* with gen.
salt, *sal, salis,* m.
same, dem. adj., and pron., *idem, eadem, idem.*
Samnites, *Samnites, -ium,* m. pl.
sanctuary, *asylum, -i,* n.
Sardis, *Sardes, -ium,* f. pl.
satisfy (hunger, etc.), *relevo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
savage, adj., *ferus, -a, -um: saevus, -a, -um.*
save, *servo, -are, -avi, -atum.*
say, I say, he says, *inquam, inquit* (with direct speech).
say, men say, they say, *ferunt.*
sarcely, adv., *vix.*
school, *ludus, -i,* m.
scorn, *despicio, spexi, spectum.*
scribes, *libraii, librarioorum,* m. pl.
sea, *mare, maris,* n.: *ae-quor, -oris,* n.
sea, of the sea, marine, adj., *marinus, -a, -um.*
sea, of the sea, maritime, adj., *maritimus, -a, -um.*
sea-shore, ora, -ae, f.: *litus, -oris,* n.
seat, , -is, n.
second, adj., *secundus, -a, -um.*
sneerly, adv., *seretol, clam.*
see, aspicio, *-ere, aspexi, aspectum: video, -ere, vidi, visum.*
see! interj., *ecce.*
seek, **opto**, -are, -avi, -atum : peto, -ere, petivi or petii, petitum : quaero, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum.
seek a pretext, causam infero, inferred, intuli, illatum.
seem, **videor**, videri, visus sum.
seize, comprehendo, -ere, -di, comprehensum : occupo, -are, -avi, -atum : rapio, -ere, rapui, raptum.
seize hold of, corripio, -ere, corripui, correptum.
self, pron. and adj., ipses, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
sell, vendo, -ere, vendidi, venditum.

senate, senatus, -us, m.

senator, **senator**, -oris, m.

send, mitto, -ere, misi, missum.

send away, dimitto, -ere, -misi, -missum.

sentence, sentential, -ae, f.

serious, adj., gravis, -e.

seriously, adv. graviter.

Seriphus, Seriphus, -i, f.

serpent, snake, serpens, serpentis, f.

serve, servio, -ire, -ii or -ivi, -itum, with dat.

set out, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum.

seven, indeed. num. adj., septem.
seven hundred, adj., septingenti, -ae, -a.
seven hundredth, adj., septingentnssimus, -a, -um.
seventeen, indeed. num. adj., septendecim.
seventeenth, adj., septimius decimus (both words all genders).
seventh, adj., **septimus**, -a, -um.
seventieth, adj., **septuagensimus**, -a, -um. seventy, indeed. num. adj., septuaginta.

several, adj., nonnulli, -ae, -a.

Sextus, Sextus, -i, m.

shade, shadow, umbra, -ae, f.

shallow, adj., tenuis, -e.

shape, species, speciei, f.

sharp, adj., **acer**, acris, acre.

shave, rado, -ere, rasi, rasum.

she, herself, refl. pron., se, acc. case: **non-refl. pron.**, use ipse.

shepherd, **pastor**, -oris, m.

shield, **scutum**, -i, n.

ship, navis, -is, f.

shop, navis, -is, f. shop, **taberna**, -ae, f.

short, adj., brevis, -e.

shout, clamar, -oris, m.
show, **monstro, -are, -avi, -atum.**
show off, **praefero, ferre, tuli, latum.**
show, a public show, **spectaculum, -i, n.**
shower (of rain, weapon, etc.), **imber, imbris, m.**
shut in, include, **-ere, -clusi, -clusum.**
sick, adj., **aeger, -gra – graum.**
sickle, **falx, falcis, f.**
side, on this side, on this side of, prep., **citra, with acc.: also used adverbially.**
signal, **signum, -i, n.**
sign, **omen, -inis, n.**
silence, **silentium, -ii, -i, m.**
silent, keep silent, **taceo, -ere, -ui, -itum.**
Silenus, **Silenus, -i, m.**
silly, adj., **stultus, -a, -um.**
silver, **argentum, -i, n.**
similar, adj., **similes, -e.**
simple, adj., **simplex, -is.**
sin, **pecco, -are, -avi, -atum.**
since, conj. **cum, with subj. : ut, with indic.**
sing, **cano, -ere, cecini, cantum.**
sink down, **subsido, -ere, -sedi, -sessum.**
sir, **domine.**
Sirus, **Sirius, -ii, m.**
sister, **soror, -oris, f.**
sit, sit down, **sedeo, -ere, sedi, sessum. -um.**
situate, adj., **situs, -a, -um.**
six hundred, adj., **sescenti, -ae, -a.**
six hundredth, adj., **sescentensimus, -a, -um.**
sixteen, indeed. num. adj., **sexdecim.**
sixteenth, adj., **sextus decimus** (both words all genders).
sixth, adj., **sextus, -a, -um.**
sixtieth, adj., **sexagensimus, -a, -um.**
sexty, indeed. num. adj., **sexaginta.**
size, magnitude, **-inis, f.**
skilful, adj., **peritus, -a, -um** : with gen., skilled in.
skill, **ars, artis, f.**
sky, **caelum, -i, n.**
slander, male **dico, dicere, dixi, dictum,** with dat.
slaughter, **caedes, -is, f.**
slave, **servus, -i, m.**
sleep, **dormio, -ire, -ivi, -itum.**
small, adj., parvus, -a, -um.
smoke, fumo, -are, -avi, -atum.
snatch away, eripio, -ere, eripui, ereptum.

snow, nix, nivis, f.
so, adv. sic: tam (with adjs. and advs.) : in such a way, ita : to such an extent, adeo.
so . . . as, tam . . . quam.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
so many, indeed. adj., tot.
soldier, miles, -it is, c.
solitude, solitudo, -inis, f.
some, a considerable number. adj., nonnulli, -ae, -a.
some . . . others, alii . . . alii.
someone, something, indef. pron., aliquid.
some . . . others, alii . . . alii.
someone, something, indef. pron., aliquis, aliquid.
sometimes, adv., interdum. somewhat, use comparative degree.
son, filius, -ii, m.
song, Carmen, -inis, n.
soon, adv., mox.
soreeress, venefica, -ae, f.
soul, anima, -ae, f.
source (of a dream), fons, fontis, m.
sovereignty, imperium, -ii, n.
sow, sero, -ere, sevi, satum.
Spain, Hispania, -ae, f.
spare, parco, -ere, peperci, parsum, with dat.
sparkling, adj., candidus, -a, -um.
speak, loquo, loqui, locutus sum.
speaker, orator, -oris, m.
spear, hasta, -ae, f.
spectacle, spectaculum, -i, n.
speech, oratio, -onis, f.
speed, celeritas, -atis, f.
spend the winter, hiemo, -are, -avi, -atum: spend (of time), ago, -ere egi, actum.
spirit, animus, -i, m.
spit, veru, -us, n.
splendid, adj., magnificus, -a, -um.
spiring, ver, veris, n.
spur, calcar, calcarts, n.
staff, caduceus, -i, m.
stag, cervus, -i, m.
stand, sto, stare, steti, statum: consisto, -ere, -stiti, ---.
standards, military standards, signa, -orum, n. pl.
star stella, -ae, f.
state, civitas, -atis, f. : respublica, reipublicae, f. : the Roman State,
res Romanae.
statue, statua, -ae, f.
stay, maneo, -ere, mansi, mansum.
step, gradus, us, m.
step-mother, noverca, -ae, f.
still, adv., adhuc.
sting, mordeo, -ere, momordii, morsum.
estone, lapis, -idis, m.
stop, desisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, intrans.
storm, take by storm, expugno, -are, -avi, -atum.
storm, bad weather, tempestas, -atis, f.
story, fibula, -ae, f.
strangeness, novitas, -atis, f.
strangle, strangulo, -are, -avi, -atum.
straw, stramentum, -i, n.
strength, vis, ---, f. : robur, -oris, n.
strength, firmo, -are, -avi, -atum.
strike against, incursus, -are, -avi, -atum.
strike down, opprimo, -ere, oppressi, oppressum.
strong, adj., firmus, -a, -um : validus, -a, -um.
study, (room), tablinum, -i, n.
study (work), stadium, -ii, n.
stupefied, adj., attonitus, -a, -um.
stupefied, be, stupo, -ere, stupui, ----.
subbue, debello, -are, -avi, -atum.
subject peoples, subjecti, -orum, m. pl. (partic. used as a noun).
such, adj., talis, -e.
successful, adj., felix, -icis.
successfully, adv., feliciter.
sudden, adj., repentinus, -a, -um.
suddenly, adv., subito.
suffer, patior, pati, passus sum.
sufficiently, adv., satis.
suitable, adj., idoneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestas, -atis, f.
summit, vertex, -icis, m.
summon, convoco, -are, -avi, -atum.
sun, sol, solis, m.
sup, cenno, -are, -avi, -atum.
supper, cena, -ae, f.
supply (to), praebe: -ere, -ui, -itum.
supply, copia, -ae, f.
surely, adv., certo.
surpass, supero, -are, -avi, -atum.
surprised, be, mirror, mirrari, miratus sum: be surprised at, mirror, with acc. or acc. and infin.
surrender, dedittio, -onis, f.
surrender (to), trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum.
surpass, supero, -are, -avi, -atum.
surprise, copia, -ae, f.
surely, adv., certo.
surpass, supero, -are, -avi, -atum.
surprise, be, mirror, mirrari, miratus sum: be surprised at, mirror, with acc. or acc. and infin.
surrender, dedittio, -onis, f.
surrender (to), trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum.
surpass, supero, -are, -avi, -atum.
surprise, be, mirror, mirrari, miratus sum: be surprised at, mirror, with acc. or acc. and infin.
surrender, dedittio, -onis, f.
surrender (to), trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum.
surprise, be, mirror, mirrari, miratus sum: be surprised at, mirror, with acc. or acc. and infin.
surrender, dedittio, -onis, f.
surrender (to), trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum.
surprise, be, mirror, mirrari, miratus sum: be surprised at, mirror, with acc. or acc. and infin.
surrender, dedittio, -onis, f.
surrender (to), trado, -ere, tradidi, traditum.
than, conj., quam.
thank, gratias ago, agree, egi, actum, with dat.
thanks, gratiae, -arum, f. pl.
that, dem, adj., and pron., ille, illud : that of yours, iste, ista, istud.
that, in order that, conj., ut : so that, ut : in order that ... not, ne : so that ...
... not, ut... non.
thought, theatrum, -i, n.
Theban. adj., Thebanus, -a, -um, f. pl.
Thebes, Thebae, -arum, f. pl.
their own, refl. poss. adj., suus, -a, -um.
thence, then, adv., inde.
Themis, Themis, -idis, f.
themsevles, refl. pron., se (acc.) : non-refl. pron., use ipse.
then, adv., tum, tunc.
then, in the next place, adv., deinde.
there, adv., ibi.
there, thither, adv., illuc.
therefore, adv., igitur (second word) : itaque (first word).
Theseus, Theseus, -ei, m.
Thetis, Thetis, -idis, f.
they themselves, see themselves.
thick, adj., densus, -a, -um.
thief, fur, furis, m.
think, existimo, -are, -avi, -atum : puto, -are, -avi, -atum : arbitrator, arbitrary, arbitratus sum : reor, reri, ratus sum.
thing, res, rei, f.
third, sitis, -is, f.
three, indeed. num. adj., tredecim.
three, third, tertius decimus (both words all genders).
three, adj., tricensimus, -a, -um.
three, thirty, indeed. num. adj., triginta.
this, dem, adj., and pron., hic, haec, hoc.
thread, filum, -i, n.
thoroughly, indeed. adv., penitus.
thousand, indeed. adj., mille.
thousands, milia, milium, n. pl.
thousand, thousandth, adj., millensimus, -a, -um.
threads, threads, filium, -i, n.
threaten, minor, minari, minatus sum. three, num. adj., pl., tres, tres, tria.
three, num. adj., pl., tres, tres, tria.
three hundred, adj., trecenti, -ae, -a.
three hundredth, adj., trescentensimus, -a, -um.
throat, guttur, -uris, n.
through, prep., per, with acc. throw, iacio, -ere, ieci, jactum : iacto,
-are, -avi, -atum.
throw into, iacio, -ere – ieci, -iectum.
throw oneself into, me proieci, proiectum.
throw into chains, vincio, -ire, vinxi, vincetum.
thrown, adj., iactus, -a, -um.
thrust down, detrudo, -ere, detrusi, detratum.
thunderbolt, fulmen, -inis, n.
thus, in this way, adv., ita. sic.
Tiber, Tiberis, -is, m.
till (to), colo, -ere, colui, cultum.
time, hora, -ae, f. : -oris, n.
time, at the same time, adv., simul.
time, a longer time, diutius.
time, for a long time, adv., diu.
time, once upon a time, adv., olim.
tin, plumbum album, -i – i, n.
title, index, -icis, m. : titulus – i, m.
Titus Tatius, Tius Tatius, -i – ii, m.
to, towards, prep., ad, with acc.
today, adv., Hodie.
together, together with, una cum, with abl.
together, at the same time, adv., simul.
toll, labor, -oris, m.
to-morrow, adv., eras.
torque, lingua, -ae, f.
too, use comparative degree.
too little, adv., parum.
too much, adv., nimis.
tooth, dens, dentis, m.
top, topmost, superl. adj., summus, -a, -um.
torn, adj., lacer, -era, -erum.
touch (to), contingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum.
touch, contactus, -us, m.
town, oppidum, -i, n.
translate, reddo, -ere, reddidi, reddatum.
trap, insidiae, -arum, f. pl.
treachery, adj., perfidus, -a, -um.
treachery, perfida, -ae, f.
treasure, treasure-house, thesaurus, -i, m.
treaty, foedo, -eris, n.
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
tremble, tremor, -ere, tremui---.
tribe, gens, gentis, f.: tribus, -us, f.
tribes, populi, -orum, m. pl. tribune, tribunus, -i, m.
trick, dolus, -i, m.
triclinium, triclinium, -ii, n.
Troezen, Troezen, -enis, f. –um : the Trojans, Troiani.
troopes, copiae, -arum, f. pl.
Troy, Troia, -ae, f.
troubled, adj., anxius, -a, -um.
true, adj., verus, -a, -um.
trustworthy, adj., fidelis, -e.
truth, in truth, re vera : to speak the truth, vera dico, -ere, dixi, dictum.
try, conor, conari, conatus sum : tento, -are, -avi, -atum.
tub, alveus, -i, m.
Tullianum, Tullianum, -i, n.
turn, verto, -ere, verti, versum.
turn one's steps towards, cursum flecto, -ere, flexi, flexum.
twelfth, adj., duodecimos, -a, -um.
twelve, indeed. num. adj., duodecim.
twentieth, adj., vicensimus, -a, -um.
twenty, indeed. num. adj., viginti.
twig, virga, -ae, f.
two, num. adj., pl., duo, duae, duo.
two hundred, adj., ducenti, -ae, -a. two hundredth, adj., ducentensimus, -a, -um.
uncivilized, adj., barbarus, -a, -um.
under, prep. sub, with acc. and abl.
undergo, subeo, -ire, -ii, -itum.
understand, intelligo, -ere, intellexi, intellectum.
undertake, suscipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum.
undertake, suscipio, -ere, -cepi, -ceptum.
uninterrupted, adj., perpetuus, -a, -um.
union, societas, -atis, f.
universe, mundus, -i, m.
unjust, unfair, adj., iniustus, -a –um.
unjustly, adv., iniuria.
unless, conj., nisi.
unlike, adj., dissimilllis, -e.
untouched, unharmed, adj., integer, -gra, -grum.
untracked, adj., avius, -a, -um.
unwarlike, adj., imbellis, -e.
unwilling, adj., invitus, -a, -um.
unwilling (to be), nolo, nolle, nolui,----.
unwilling, be unwilling, imper noli (sing.), nolite (plural), with infi.
urged, urged on, adj., compulsus, -a, -um.
use (to), adhibeo, -ere, -ui, -itum : utor, uti, usus sum, with abl.
use, usus, -us, m.
useful, adj., utilis, -e.
useless, adj., inutilis, -e.
utterly, adv., longe, penitus.
upon, prep., super, with acc. and abl. : also used adverbially.

vain, adj., vanus, -a, -um.
vain, in vain, adv., frustra
valuable, adj., pretiosus, -a, -um.
vanzhish, debello, -are, -avi, -atum.
vast, adj., immensus, -a, -um.
veil, velo, -are, -avi, -atum.
Venus, Venus, -eris, f.
Vesta, Vesta, -ae, f.
veto, a tribune’s veto, intercession, -onis, f.
victim, vittima, -ae, f.
victorious, victor, -oris, m. : noun used as adj.
vviolence, vis, ---, f.
violencely, adv., vi.
Virgil, Vergilius, -ii, m.
virtue, virtus, -utis, f.
voice, vosx, vocis, f.
volume, volumen, -inis, n.
voluntary, adv., uporto, sponde.
vow, voveo, -ere, vovi, votum.
Vulcan, Vulcanus, -i, m.
vulture, vulture, -uris, m.

wage (war), gero, -ere, gessi, gestum.
wailing, vagitus, -us, m.
wait for, exspecto, -are, -avi, -atrum.
walk, ambulo, -are, -avi, -atum : gradior, gradi, gressus sum.
wail, murus, -i, m.
wallet, *pera*, -ae, f.
walls, town walls, *moenia*, -ium, n. pl.
wand, *caduceus*, -i, m.
wander, *erro*, -are, -avi -atum.
war, *bellum*, -i, n.
wash away, *eluio*, -ere, elui, elutum.
watch, keep watch, *vigilo*, -are, -avi, -atum.
water, *aqua*, -ae, f.
wave, *unda*, -ae, f.
wax, *cera*, -ae, f.
waxen tablets, *cerae*, -arum, f. pl.
way, in this way, thus, adv. *ita*, *sic*.
way, make one’s way into, *penetro*, -are, -avi, -atum.
way, make one’s way to, *cursum flecto*, flectere, flexi, flexum.
weapon, *telnum* -i, n.
wear, *gero*, gessi, gestum.
weather, *tempestas*, -astis, f.
weight, *pondus*, -eris, n.
well (to be), *bene valeo*, -ere, -ui, ----.
well done! interj., *euge*.
wet, be wet with, *mano*, -are, -avi, -atum, with acc.
what? interrog. adj., see which?
when? interrog. adv., *quado*, used in questions only: also, *ubi*.
when, conj., *ubi*, with indic.: *cum*, with subjunctive: sometimes ut, with indic.
whence? where… from? interrog. adv., *unde*.
which, by which… by that, *quo…eo*.
which (of two)? adj. and pron., *uter*, utra, utrum.
white, adj., *candidus*, -a, -um.
who, which, rel. pron., *qui quae*, quod.
whoever, whatever, pron., *quisquis* (m) : *quicquid* (n).
whole, unharmed, adj., *integer*, -gra, -grum.
whole, all, complete, adj., *totus*, -a, -um.
why, adj., *fatus*, -a, -um.
widow, *vidua, -ae, f.*
wife, *coniunx, -iugis, f.* : *uxor, -oris, f.*
wild beast, *fera, -ae, f.*
wild boar, *aper, apri, m.*
Will, against one’s will, adj., *invitus, -a, -um.*
willingly, adv., *libenter.*
wine, *vinum, -i, n.*
wing, *ala, -ae, f.*
winged, sandals, *talaria, -ium, n.* pl.
wisdom, *sapiencia, -ae, f.*
wise, adj., *sapiens, -entis.*
winter, to spend the winter, *hiemo, -are, -atum.*
winter quarters, *hiberna, -orum, n.* pl.
wit, prep., *cum,* with abl. together with, *una cum,* with abl.
within, prep. *intra,* with acc : also used adverbially.
without, prep. sine, withabl.
without, outside, prep. extra, with acc. : also used adverbially.
without exception, prep. phrase, *ad unum.*

wish, be willing, *volo, velle, volui,* ****.

wish, do not wish, be unwilling, *nolo nolle, nloui,* ****.
woad, *vitrum, -i, n.*
wolf, she-wolf, *lupa, -ae, f.*
woman, *femina, -ae, f.* : *mulier, -eris, f.*
womenof Thebes, *Thebaides, -um, f.* pl.

wonder, wonder at, mirror, *ari, miratus sum.*

wonderful, adj., *mirabilis, -e.*
wood, forest, *silva, -ae, f.*
wooden, of wood, adj., *ligneus, -a, -um.*
word, *verbum, -i, n.*

work, (to), *laboro, -are, -avi, -atum.*
work, *labor, -oris, m.* : *opus, operas, n.*
works, in the works of, prep., *apud,* with acc.
world (universe), *mundus, -i, m.* : (the earth), *orbis terrarium, -is – arum, m.*
world, the upper world, *aether, -eris, m.*
worship, *colo, -ere, colui, cultum.*
worthy, adj., *dignus, -a, -um : worthy of dignus,* with obl.
worthily, adv. *digne.*
wound (to), vulnerno, -are, -avi, -atum. wound, vulnus, -eris, n.
wretched, adj., miser, -era, -erum.
write, scribo, -ere, scripsi, scriptum.
write to, scribo ad, with acc.
writer, scriptor, -oris, m.
wrong, nefas, indeed. noun, n.
wrong, do wrong, pecco, -are, -avi, -atum.
wrongfully, adv., iniuria.

year, annus, -i, m.
yes, affirm. adv., certe, sic.
yesterday, adv., heri.
yet, as yet, adv., adhuc.
yet, however, conj., tamen (usually second or third word).
yield, cedo, -ere, cessi, cessum.
yoke (to), iungo, -ere, iunxi, iunctum.
yoke, iugum, -i, n.
you, pers. pron. tu.
young, adj., tener, -era, -erum.
young person, youth, adolescens, -entis, c. : iuvenisis, c.
your, yours, poss. adj., tuus, -a, -um : vester, -tra, -tum.

zeal, stadium, -ii, n.

VOCABULARY OF PROPER NAMES

Achates, -is (3), m, Achates, faithful companion of Aeneas.
Achilles, -is (3), m., Achilles, a Greek warrior, much distinguished at the
siege of Troy. He slew the Trojan hero, Hector.
Aegyptus, -i (2), f., Egypt.
Aeneas –ae (1), m., Aeneas, a Trojan prince who came to Italy, and whose descendants founded Rome.
Africa, -ae (r), f., Africa.
Agamemnon, -onis (3), m., a Greek King of Mycenae, who led the besiegers of Troy. Brother of Menelaus.
Agrippa, -ae (I), m., Marcus Vipsanius Agripppa, friend of Augustus and commander of his fleet at the battle of Actium.
Alexandria, -ae, (I), f., Alexandria, city of Egypt.
Alpes, -ium (3), f. pl., the Alps.
Alpici, -orum (2), m pl., the dwellers in the Alps.
Antonius, -i (2), m., Marcus Antonius ("Mark Anthony") friend and lieutenant of Julius Casear.
Appollo, -inis (3), m., Apollo, one of the great gods of the Greeks, worshipped later by the Romans also.
Appenninus, -i (2), m., the Appennines.
Appius Claudius, -i (2), m., Appius Clausdius, a celebrated Roman, distinguished as the builder of the Appian Way, and for advising the rejection of the peace offers of King Pyrrhus.
Apulia, -ae (I), f., Apulia, district in the heel of Italy.
Ariminum, -i (2), n., Ariminum (now Rimini), town on the Adriatic coast, on the frontier of Italy proper.
Arion, -onis (3), m., Arion, celebrated Greek musician.
Asia, -ae (I), f., Asia.
Athenae, -arum (I), f. pl., Athens.
Atrebates, -ium (3), m. pl., the Atrebates, a Gallic tribe; Arras, which preserves their name, was the ancient capital.
Bithynia, -ae (I), f., Bithynia, a district of Asia Minor.
Bithyni, -orum (2), m. pl., Bithynians.
Boudicca, -ae (1), f., Boadicea.
Britannia, -ae (I), f., Britain.
Britannus, -i (2), m., Briton.
Brutus, -i (2), m., Marcus Junius Brutus, friend of Julius Caesar and later leader of the conspiracy against him.
Caledonia, -ae (1), f., Caledonia, North Britain.
Campi Elysii (2), m., pl. the Elysian fields.
Cannae, -arum (I), f. pl., Cannae, village in south-east Italy, near which the Romans suffered their most severe defeat at the hands of Hannibal, 216 B.C.
Capitolinus, -a, -um, of, or belonging to, the Capitol.
Capitolum, -i (2), n., the Capitol, one of the hills of Rome, site of the citadel and the chief temple of Jupiter.
Capua, -ae (I), f., Capua, city of Campania, in southern Italy, famous for its luxury, which was said to have demoralized the army of Hannibal during its stay there.

Carthago, -inis (3), f., Carthage, Phoenician city in North Africa, near modern Tunis, founded by Tyrian queen, Dido. In later times, Rome's most formidable enemy.

Cassandra, -ae (I), f., Cassandra, Trojan prophetess of Troy's fall, fated to have her warnings unheeded.

Cassius, -i (2), m., Gaius Cassius Longinus, fellow-conspirator of Brutus against Caesar.

Castor, -oris, (3), m., Castor, mortal brother of the divine Pollux, with whom he was worshipped as the protector of sailors.

Catullina, -ae (1), m., Lucius Sergius Catullina, leader of a revolutionary conspiracy, 61 B.C. Killed in battle against the forces of the Republic.

Cato, -onis (3), m., Marcus Porcius Cato; (i) famous Roman Caensor, celebrated for uncompromising adherence to old-fashioned ways; (ii) a descendant of the above who vainly defended the Republic against Julius Caesar, and slew himself at Utica in North Africa.

Charon, -onis (3), m., the ferryman who transported the souls of the dead across the Styx.

Cincinnatus, -i (2), m., Lucius Quintus Cincinnatus, early the armies of the Republic.

Cleopatra, -ae (1), f., Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt.

Corinthus, -i (2), f., famous mercantile city of Greece, sacked by the Romans in 146 B.C.

Coriolanus, -i (2), m., Caius Marcius, surnamed Coriolanus, a famous Roman Patrician, who banished from Rome for his arrogence, assisted the city's enemies against her.

Crassus, -i (2), m., MarLicinius Crassus, wealthiest Roman of his time, fellow-triumvir with Caesar and Pompey.

Creta, -ae (1), f., pl., Cumae, a town just north of the Bay of Naples, near which lived the Sybil.

Curio, -onis (3), m., Caius Curio, a Roman tribune and partisan of Caesar, killed in Africa during the civil war.

Dido, -onis (3), f., Dido, Queen of Carthage, who slew herself for love of Aeneas.

Dyrrachium, -I (2), m., Dyrrachium (now Durazzo), a city on the east coast of the Adriatic, and the port complementary to Brundisium on the Italian side. Near the town Caesar was blockaded by Pompey in the Civil War.
Eclogae, -arum (I), f. pl., the Eclogues, title of ten pastoral poems by Virgil, his first great work.

Etruria, -ae (I), f., district, and nation of Italy to the north of Rome. The Etrurians were, until the rise of Rome, powerful in Italy.

Fabius, -i (2), m., Quintus Fabius Maximus, ‘Cunctator’, Roman dictator, famous for the delaying tactics he employed against Hannibal.

Flaminia, -ae (I), f., one of the great roads of Italy, leading from Rome N.E. to Ariminum on the Adriatic coast; built by C. Flaminius, 220 B.C.

Flamininus, -i (2), m., Titus Quinctius Flamininus, a famous Roman general who defeated the Macedonians at Cynoscephalae, 197 B.C.

Gades, -ium (3), f., pl., Gades, city south-west of Spain, now Cadiz.

Gaius, -i (2), m., common Roman praenomen, or first name.

Gallia, -ae (I), Gaul, an area corresponding to modern France, the Rhineland and North Italy, subdued by Julius Caesar in a war lasting ten years.

Gracchus, -i (2), m., the name of two brothers, great popular leaders, and tribunes of the people, Tiberius and Gaius Sempronius Gracchus. Both, as a result of the hostility they incurred in proposing drastic constitutional reforms, died violent deaths, in 133 and 123 B.C. respectively.

Graecia, -ae (I), f., Greece.

Hamilcar, -is (3), m., Hector, son of Priam, King of Troy, and chief defender of the city. Slain by Achilles, who’ dragged Hector’s body fastened to a chariot round the city walls.

Helena, -ae (I), f., Helen, wife of Menelaus, celebrated for her beauty; her elopement with Paris occasioned, according to Homer, the Trojan War.

Helvetii, -orum (2), m., pl., the Helvetii, a powerful Celtic tribe, living in Switzerland, whose attempted migration into Gaul was checked, with great slaughter, by Julius Caesar.

Hellespontus, -i (2), m., the Hellespoint, or Dardanelles.

Hercules, -is (3), m., Hercules, hero and demi-god, famous for his feats of strength and endurance.

Hispania, -ae, f., Spain.

Horatius, -i (2), m., (i) Horatius Cocles, early Roman hero who held back the Tuscan invaders, while the bridge over the Tiber was destroyed behind him. (ii) Quintus Horatius Flaccus (‘Horace ’), celebrated Latin poet, friend of Augustus and Vergil.
Icarus, -i (2), m., Icarus, son of Daedalus. The two sought to escape from confinement in Crete by means of wings, fashioned by Daedalus. Icarus flew too near the sun, the wings, fastened with wax, fell from him, and he fell to his death in the sea, afterwards called the Icarian.

Ida, -ae (1), f., Ida, a high mountain near Troy.

Lovis, see Iuppiter.

Italia, -ae (1), f., Italy.

Iuppiter, Iovis (3), m., Jupiter, Jove greatest of the Roman gods.

Iuno, -onis (3), f., Juno, greatest of Roman goddesses, and consort of Jupiter.

Labienus, -i (2), m., Titus Attius Labienus, one of the most successful of Caesar’s legati in Gaul. He afterwards changed his allegiance and fell fighting against Caesar in the Civil War.

Londinium, -i (2), n., London.

Lucius, -i (2), m., a Roman praenomen or first name.

Maecenas, -atis (3), m., Gaius Cilnius Maecenas, friend and minister of Augustus, and patron of Vergil and Horace.

Manlius, -i (2), m., (i) Marcus Manlius consul 392 B.C., who successfully defended the Capitol against the Gauls. (ii) Titus Manlius Torquatus, who in 361 B.C. slew a gigantic Gaul in single combat.

Marcellus, -i (2), m., M. Marcellus, nephew of Augustus Caesar, and his destined heir until his early death at the age of twenty.

Marius, -i (2), m., Gaius Marius, great Roman soldier and statesman, seven times consul, and conqueror of Jugurtha.

Menelaus, -i (2), m., Menelaus, King of Sparta; husband of Helen and brother of Agamemnon.

Minerva, -ae (1), f., Minerva, a Roman goddess of art, culture and war.

Minucius, -a, -um, m., Minucian, the name of a bridge at Rome.

Mornini, -orum (2), m., pl., the Morini, a tribe of Gauls whose territory lay on the Channel.

Mulvius, -a, -um, Mulvian, the name of a bridge at Rome.

Neptunus, -i (2), m., Neptune, Roman god of the sea.

Nero, -onis (3), m., Nero, Roman Emperor, 54-68 A.D., accused of responsibility for the great fire of Rome, 64 A.D.

Numitor, -oris (3), m., Numitor, King of Alba, grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

Octavius, -i (2), m., Gaius Octavius, great-nephew of Julius Caesar, the dictator; adopted by him, became known as Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus, and was
named heir of Julius. Became first Roman Emperor, and received the title Augustus, by which he is most usually known, in 27 B.C.

**Orpheus**, -i (2), m., Orpheus, son of the Muse Calliope, a great musician, and the husband of Eurydice.

**Ostia**, -ae (I), f., town, and sea-port of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber:

**Ovidius**, -i (2), m., Publius Ovidius Naso, famous poet of the Augustan age, banished by the Emperor.


**Paullus**, -i (2), m., Lucius Aemilius Paullus, consul 216 B.C.; defeated and killed at the battle of Cannae.

**Penelope**, -ae (I), f., Penelope, wife of Ulysses, celebrated for her faithfulness to him throughout his absence of twenty years.

**Philippi, -orum** (2), m., pl., Philippi town in Macedonia, near which Brutus and Cassius were defeated by Octavian and Antony.

**Pluto, -onis** (3), m., Pluto, god of the underworld.

**Polyphemus**, -i (2), m., Polyphemus, name of a Cyclops, who slaughtered several of the comrades of Ulysses, and was blinded by him.

**Pyrrhus**, -i (2), m., King of Epirus, who invaded Italy, and was defeated by the Romans, 275 B.C.

**Regulus**, -i (2), m., Marcus Atilius Regulus, consul 256 B.C., invaded Africa, but after some successes was captured by the Carthaginians. Sent to Rome to procure an exchange of prisoners under threat of torture and execution if he failed, Regulus resolutely advised the senate against making the concessions and returned voluntarily to undergo his punishment.

**Remus**, -i (2), m., brother of Romulus.

**Rhea Silvia**, -ae (I), f., Rhea Silvia, also called Iliia, daughter of Numitor and mother of Romulus and Remus.

**Rhodanus**, -i (2), m., the Rhine.

**Rhodanus**, -i (2), m., the Rhone.

**Roma**, -ae (I), f., Rome.

**Romulus**, -i (2), m., Romulus, founder of Rome, traditionally in 753 B.C.

**Rubico –onis** (3), m., the Rubicon, a river of Northern Italy, the crossing of which by Caesar was the first act of hostility to Pompey and the senate in the Civil War.

Samnites (3), m., the Samnites, an Italian tribe living in the centre of the Peninsula. For fifty years, until 290 B.C., they waged a life-and-death struggle with Rome, and as late as 82 B.C. entertained dreams of recovering their independence, only to be exterminated by Sulla in a battle at the gates of Rome.

**Scipio, -onis** (3), m., name of a famous Roman family. The two most celebrated were (i) Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, conqueror of Hannibal at Zama in 202 B.C. (ii) Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus Carthage in 146 B.C.

**Sibylla**, -ae (I), f., the Sibyl, a prophetess who dwelt in a cave near Cumae.

**Socrates**, -is (3), m., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, surnamed Felix, ‘the Fortunate’, leader of the senatorial party, and distinguished general. As dictator 82-79 B.C.
he attempted to undo past reforms and restore the power of the senate and the nobles.

**Tarquinius**, -i (2) m., Lucius Tarquinius Superbus (‘Tarquin the Proud ’), seventh King of Rome, expelled from the city 510 B.C. The attempts he made, with the help of Lars Porsena, King of Etruria, to regain power were unsuccessful.

**Themistocles**, -is (3), m., Themistocles, the statesman who made Athens a sea-power.

**Theseus**, -i (2), m., Theseus, Prince of Athens, who slew the Minotaur.

**Tiberis**, -is (3), m., the Tiber.

**Troia**, -ae (I), f., Troy, city at the south-western end of the Dardanelles, besieged and sacked by the Greeks.

**Ulixes**, -is (3), m., Ulysses, or Odysseus, Greek hero who took part in the siege of Troy, and wandered many years about the Mediterranean before returning to his home in Ithaca. The story of his voyage is told in the Homeric poem, the Odyssey.

**Varro**, -onis (3), m., Gaius Terentius Varro, consul 216 B.C., responsible by his rashness for the disastrous Roman defeat at Gannae.

**Venus**, -eris (3), f., Venus, the goddess of love, mother of Aeneas.

**Vergilius**, -i (2), m., Publius Vergilius Maro (‘Virgil’), 70-19 B.C., greatest of Roman poets. Author of the Eclogues, the Georgics and the Aeneid.

**Zama**, -ae (I), f., Zama, battle in which Scipio defeated Hannibal, 202 B.C.
A **Roman School**: “Magister et discipili – The School Master and Pupils, is a regular expression encountered in Latin studies.

From 753 to 510 B.C. the Romans were governed kings, of whom there were seven. The last of these, Tarquinius Superbus, was expelled because of his harsh and arrogant behaviour. After his expulsion, the annual election of magistrates took place. In this way it was thought no one would become too powerful or try to rule his fellow citizens as a tyrant. During the period of the monarch the kings had held in their hands all the important offices: - The had lead the Army, dispensed justice, and controlled the finances of the states.

**The Roman Army**
The Roman Army – The Roman Soldier: The Roman army right from ancient times had been respected for its courage, endurance and discipline. The Roman army played a very important role in the establishment and maintenance of the greatest empire known in ancient times. The main unit of the army was the Legion, at full strength numbering 6000 soldiers. Each legion was commanded by a legatus, the equivalent perhaps of a brigadier in the army of today, and six officers known as tribunes of the soldiers (tribuni militum). The mainstay of the legion, however, was the centurions (the sergeants and sergeant-majors of more modern days). They controlled the ordinary soldiers and enforced discipline. The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each of which was further sub-divided into three maniples. A maniple consisted of two centuries, and so in a legion there were sixty centuries and
sixty centurions. Attached to each legion was a squadron of three hundred cavalry who fought on the flanks, charging in close order.
were sold and bought. Sources of supply were wars, raids and piracy. The Romans had many slaves that undertook a lot of public and domestic work. It is said that Aemilius Paulus, a famous Roman general of the second century B.C., after one of his victories, sold 150,000 captives, while Julius Caesar himself records that on one occasion he sold 53,000 slaves or captives.